I · C · S

BELLVM HELVETICVM

LOWE AND BUTLER

WALKER

Inter-Collegiate Classical Series

BELLUM HELVETICUM

FOR BEGINNERS IN LATIN

BY

CORNELIUS MARSHAL LOWE, PH. D.

AND

NATHANIEL BUTLER, M. A.

REVISED BY

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER, PH. D.

UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS

CHICAGO

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

1903.

ROBT. O. LAW CO., PRINTERS AND BINDERS, CHICAGO.

CONTENTS

	Page
Preface	5
To Teachers	9
Caesar and the Helvetian War	12
Introductory Lesson	14
Lessons I–XXIII, Chapter 1–Gallic War	19
Lessons XXIV–XXXIII, Chapter 2	58
Lessons XXXIV–XLVII, Chapter 3	78
Lessons XLVIII–LII, Chapter 4	111
Lessons LIII–LIX, Chapter 5	122
Lessons LX–LXIV, Chapter 6	136
Lessons LXV–LXIX, Chapter 7	147
Lessons LXX–LXXIII, Chapter 8	157
Lessons LXXIV–LXXV, Chapter 9	164
Lessons LXXVI–LXXVIII, Chapter 10	167
Lessons LXXIX, LXXX, Chapter 11	173
Lessons LXXXI–LXXXIV, Chapter 12	177
Lessons LXXXIV–LXXXVIII, Chapter 13	181
Lessons LXXXVIII–XCI, Chapter 14	187
Annotated Text, Chapters 15–29	195
Connected Text, Chapters 1–14	232
Appendix	241
Latin-English Vocabulary	333
English-Latin Vocabulary	354
Glossary	364
Index	370

PREFACE

THE experience of many teachers has proved the excellence of the Bellum Helveticum. It has been found interesting and stimulating to both teachers and classes during the actual time of using the book; and the advantage of having used it appears still more clearly when the student advances to the reading of Caesar. The chasm between the beginner's book and Caesar, which often renders advisable the use of some easier intermediate text as a bridge, does not exist when the student has been reading Caesar from his first lesson in Latin.

But these teachers have suggested many improvements which have led to the revision and the rearrangement of the book. As this work has been done by one not connected with the preparation of the original book, the limits of revision proper have been overstepped and the book has in parts been rewritten. Yet in every respect but one, — the use of Latin as the language of the classroom, — the reviser has attempted to hold fast to the original plan and purpose of the book. Its leading features have been retained unchanged, and may be described for the most part in the words of the original preface:

First: The text of the first twenty-nine chapters of Caesar's Gallic War (up to the end of the Helvetian War) is used as presenting a model of perfect Latinity, sufficiently simple in form and structure for the beginner. It affords an illustration of the most important principles of the language, and prepares the student for a further study of Caesar. After thoroughly learning the words and translating into English, the student is advised to memorize the text for a few lessons, for the purpose of securing a model for the order of words and of fixing the pronun-

ciation. This may not be deemed advisable by all teachers; but it is urged, as essential to entire thoroughness, that the student become so familiar with the text that he can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English when pronounced by the teacher. The text of the twenty-nine chapters, given connectedly after the lessons, will be found convenient for reviews.

Second: Immediately after the text of each lesson, the meaning of the Latin words, as they occur in the order of the text, is given in English, and the student should be required to give both the English equivalent for the Latin and the Latin for the English as pronounced by the teacher. Each vocabulary contains an entirely new set of words. It is expected that the pupil will thoroughly master the words of each lesson, so that he will recognize them as they occur again and again in the text. This saves the time of the student — often wasted in repeatedly looking up the same word — strengthens the memory, cultivates the attention, and secures accurate knowledge. The general vocabulary at the end of the book should be unnecessary, except, perhaps, for words which rarely occur.

Third: For the convenience of teachers, and to give definite direction to the student's work, the substance of the text is given in short portions in dictation exercises, which the student is to be required to translate orally as pronounced by the teacher. This gives opportunity to vary forms and constructions, fixes the meaning of words, and insures familiarity with the text. The matter given in these exercises can easily be modified and extended at the pleasure of the instructor.

Fourth: The same text is used as the basis for English sentences to be written in Latin. While the thought of the passage is often retained in these sentences, their structure is so varied from the original as to afford thorough grammatical drill. No new words are introduced in this exercise, that no time may be lost in looking them up. This abundant practice, with Caesarean models fresh in the mind of the student, produces readiness in Latin composition and a correct style.

Fifth: The text is treated a fourth time in questions in Latin to be answered in Latin by the student. These questions promote that mastery of the language which is to be attained only by its use in this way. They are suggestive, and the teacher can vary them and increase their number at pleasure.

Sixth: Paradigms of declensions and conjugations and the principles of syntax are introduced gradually, after the student has acquired words and sentences illustrating these forms and principles. The book is complete without a grammar. Each principle is explained but once, and when illustrations of the same fact appear reference is made by figures to the first example and explanation. The explanations of the text and of many grammatical principles are given in notes in connection with each lesson. These notes are to be carefully learned and recited, to insure thoroughness and prevent waste of time in frequently referring to the same subject.

In the revised form many Latin-English exercises have been inserted. The amount of text in each lesson is necessarily very small at first, and not sufficient to give a proper drill in translating Latin. On the other hand the English-Latin exercises have been shortened, simplified, or rewritten. Some of the new exercises are merely for drill on forms or points of syntax. Some are intended for oral work, some for written, though no separate headings are given to indicate their purpose.

An especial effort has been made to simplify the early lessons and to lead the student on by steps of very gradually increasing difficulty. With this object in view the early lessons have been shortened and the paradigms have been presented much more gradually, in a changed order, and spread out over more lessons.

Many review lessons have been given, perhaps more than some teachers need. If this should be the case two can be combined very easily; or some may even be omitted, since no new principles are given in them. But the reviser would prefer still more rather than less.

The Latin questions in the original book included questions

on grammatical points as well as on the subject matter of the text. In the revised book the questions on grammatical points have been omitted, but the rest have been retained, usually in the original form. If used at all they are for impromptu class-room work, and the teacher can explain new words or constructions. For this reason notes are not given on them, but for the convenience of those who wish to make occasional use of Latin conversation the glossary of unusual words has been retained at the end of the book.

The Appendix has been rewritten almost entirely. What needs to be said of it is said in its introductory note. It is hoped that the student will be encouraged to consult it freely, especially during the later lessons. It is intended to be of especial service in syntactical matters. Only the essential facts of syntax are explained in connection with the lessons. Less important details must be looked for in the Appendix.

Some teachers have preferred to use the book only until those things were learned which were absolutely necessary to the reading of Caesar, and then to take up a complete edition of that author. With this in mind the reviser has made a few changes in the order of presentation and believes that the complete edition of Caesar can be taken up satisfactorily at the end of Lesson LXXII.

A general English-Latin vocabulary has been added at the end of the book. It is believed, however, that no words are used in the exercises which have not previously been given in the vocabularies of the lessons.

The work of revision has been very materially assisted by suggestions from many teachers, for whose kindness hearty thanks are due. It was impossible to carry out all suggestions made, but none were passed over without consideration, and all the changes made are in accord with what seemed to be the general trend of opinion. It would be difficult to overstate the benefit received from the constant and painstaking assistance given by the publishers and by the editors-in-chief of the series.

TO TEACHERS

THE lessons are intended to be studied in the order in which they occur, and in general it will be well to follow the order of the division as laid down. Explain in advance how the lesson should be studied, and direct the student's attention to the special points to be considered.

Insist from the beginning upon a correct pronunciation, and secure a ready and intelligent reading of the Latin text.

Require a thorough mastery of the vocabularies, and of each form and principle as taken up, and then review, *review*, REVIEW. Besides a daily review, have a general examination as often as once a month.

In the recitation of the lesson: —

1. Pronounce the words in the vocabularies, and require the pupil to give not only the English definitions but also the Latin equivalent as the corresponding English is pronounced. If there are English derivatives, or nearly synonymous Latin words, let them be given in connection with each new word.

2. After translation and the recitation of memorized passages, break up the text of the lesson into short passages, and let the pupil answer as the words are pronounced by the teacher. This exercise should be mainly English into Latin, using the exercise presented in the lesson, or abridging, extending, or otherwise varying it, so that the pupil will have such a complete knowledge of the text that he will promptly render English into Latin or Latin into English as soon as the words of either language are pronounced.

3. The writing of the longer sentences of the English-Latin

exercises both in an exercise book and on the blackboard should be required throughout all the lessons. The shorter Latin-English exercises should be translated at hearing as the teacher pronounces the words.

4. The principles and facts of the notes should be thoroughly learned and recited. Although frequent references are made to the same principle, it should not be necessary for the student to occupy his time in turning to the first explanation.

5. Drill thoroughly and constantly on the paradigms. Do not be satisfied until the student can run through them as rapidly as he can the alphabet. The student finds translation more interesting, and sees that it is possible to translate short bits of Latin with the help of the vocabulary, and without much knowledge of paradigms. If for any reason the teacher allows him to neglect the paradigms, he does him an injury from which he can never fully recover. At the end of the first year the student should know the forms perfectly. If he does not he will never learn them and will never handle Latin with accuracy.

6. In translating, the student should be taught to ascertain the thought in the Latin order, and first render the words one by one as they stand in the text, noting the grammatical form of each word and all its possible constructions. Thus, **Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre**, etc., should come to the mind in the order of the original: "By these things led and by the influence of Orgetorix thoroughly roused, they determined those things which to departing pertained to prepare." An excellent exercise for training the student to use the Latin order and preventing his picking out words in the attempt to find an English order, is to take a sentence (the teacher giving the meaning of the first form of unfamiliar words) and write it on the blackboard one word at a time, calling upon the student to give the meaning, word by word, as the sentence progresses. Here the student should be taught to think of the possible constructions of each word and to anticipate the following words, and yet

reserve his decision until the end of the sentence is reached.[1] After the thought has been ascertained in the Latin order, and it is desired to translate into English, teachers should insist that good idiomatic English be used and purely Latin idioms avoided. Thus the frequent use of the perfect passive participle in Latin is not to be imitated in English, but an active participle, or more frequently a clause, should be used instead; the subjunctive must be rendered more frequently by the indicative or infinitive than by the potential, the auxiliaries of the potential are to be employed in the translation of **possum** and **licet**. A translation that fails to transfer the Latin idioms into good idiomatic English is but half a translation. The student's knowledge of his own language and his further mastery of it demand that all translations shall be made in the purest idiomatic English.

[1] This method is explained and illustrated in Professor W. G. Hale's pamphlet "The Art of Reading Latin," published by Ginn & Co., in 1887; and there are valuable suggestions in the same line in the article "On Reading Latin" in Allen's "Latin Method," copyrighted by the same firm in 1876.

CAESAR AND THE HELVETIAN WAR

THE name of Caius Julius Caesar has been called the greatest in history. He was Rome's greatest general. He laid the foundation of an empire which ruled the world for centuries, and from which have sprung, in a large degree, the modern nations of Europe. Although continually occupied with war and politics, he was also great in literature. We possess his two most important works, the "Commentaries on the Gallic War," which describe the conquest of Gaul, and the "Commentaries on the Civil War," which record his struggles with Pompey. The style of his works is characterized by great simplicity, conciseness, and vigor. Written also in the purest Latin, they furnish excellent models for the study of the language.

When Caesar was forty-two years old, — that is, in the year 58 B.C., — he set out for Gaul, ostensibly for the purpose of protecting Roman territory, but as the event showed, for the subjugation of the land. In nine years he subdued the whole of Gaul and converted it into a Roman province. In the campaigns of these nine years he disciplined and attached to himself an army which afterward made him the master of Rome. The first Gallic people which Caesar encountered were the Helvetii, the inhabitants of modern Switzerland. The Helvetii thought their country was too small, and besides were harassed by the neighboring tribes of Germany, and so resolved to seek wider limits and a more peaceful home to the west, on the borders of the ocean. Before leaving their country, they provided themselves plentifully with provisions and burned all their houses, some four hundred villages, and twelve walled towns. By appoint-

ment they met at the southern point of Lake Geneva. There they assembled in the spring of 58 B.C., to the number of three hundred and sixty-eight thousand, of whom ninety-two thousand were men-at-arms. Under modern civilization the same country now supports a population of two millions eight hundred and fifty thousand.

At Lake Geneva the Helvetii found their advance opposed by Caesar. Their most natural course was to cross the Rhone, passing through a corner of the Roman province in southeastern Gaul. They sent a deputation asking permission to pass through the province without damage. To gain time, Caesar put them off to a second conference, spent the interval in constructing a line of fortifications along the Rhone, and then formally forbade their passage.

After vainly endeavoring to force a passage of the Rhone, the Helvetii, by arrangement with the Sequani, their neighbors on the northwest, proceeded to cross the Saone instead of the Rhone and thence to march westward. Caesar added five fresh legions to the one already at his disposal, and after about three-fourths of the Helvetian troops had crossed the Saone, fell upon and cut to pieces the remainder. Efforts on the part of the Helvetii to procure terms of peace satisfactory to themselves proved unavailing, and after some minor contests the final decisive battle was fought at the Aeduan town, Bibracte, now Autun. Caesar acknowledges that the battle was closely contested and for a long time doubtful, but in the end Roman arms and discipline won a victory that ended all the hopes of the Helvetii. At the command of Caesar they returned to their desolated homes, but with the loss of more than two-thirds of their entire number. Remains of skeletons, ornaments, and arms have been unearthed on the field of the great battle near Autun.

INTRODUCTORY LESSON

This lesson is to be read over in class and thoroughly understood, not learned for recitation. It should be referred to continually during the early lessons. But no amount of explanation or rules can teach correct pronunciation. Correct and constant practice, following the accurate pronunciation of the teacher, will do it easily.

The Latin language, the language of the ancient **Romans**, derives its name from the **Latini**, or Latins, who once inhabited Latium in Italy. The modern languages of Italy, France, Spain, and Portugal are mainly derived from the Latin, and about sixty per cent of the words of the English tongue have a similar origin.

1. THE ALPHABET

The alphabet is the same as ours except that there is no *j* or *w*. The letter **i** does duty for both *i* and *j*. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The rest of the letters are consonants.

2. METHODS OF PRONUNCIATION

In the English method the letters are given sounds selected from the many sounds belonging to them in English. The Roman method is now almost universally adopted in this country, and is recommended. It is as close an approximation as can now be made to the pronunciation of the Romans themselves. In ordinary practice we recognize no exceptions in individual words, but follow fixed rules.

3. QUANTITY OF VOWELS

The quantity of a vowel is the length of time given to its pronunciation. Compare the first syllables in *[illegible]* and *[illegible]*. The *a* is short and the [illegible] long. In Latin every vowel is either

short or long. The long vowels take twice as long to pronounce as the short. This is the only difficult point in Latin pronunciation, and it is too likely to be neglected, because we do not make much of quantity (in this sense) in English. In this book every long vowel is marked (–). All unmarked vowels are short. The student should be very careful to give twice as much time to the long vowels as to the short.

4. SOUNDS OF VOWELS

It will be noticed in the following table that in some cases the short and long vowels have the same sound, in others a slightly different sound.

a = first vowel in *aha'*	**ā** = second vowel in *aha'*
e = *e* in *net*	**ē** = *ey* in *they*
i = *i* in *pin*	**ī** = *i* in *machine*
o = *o* in *for* (not as in *got*)	**ō** = *oh*
u = *oo* in *foot*	**ū** = *oo* in *boot*

y = French *u* or German *ü*; it rarely occurs.

5. SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

A diphthong is two vowel sounds run together into one. If the student will pronounce first *a*, then *u*, then will run the two together, he will get the sound of *ow* in *how*, the proper pronunciation of the diphthong **au**. So with the other diphthongs.

ae = *ai* in *aisle*
oe = *oi* in *oil*
au = *ow* in *how*
eu has no English equivalent. Run the two sounds together.
ui occurs in **huic** and **cui**, pronounced *wheek* and *kwee*.

6. SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

The consonants are sounded as in English with the following exceptions:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *can*, *go*
i (consonant, the English *j*) = *y* in *yet*
r pronounced distinctly
s as in *this*, never as in *these*

t as in *tin*, never as in *nation*
v = *w*
x = *ks*
ch, ph, th = *c, p, t*
bs, bt = *ps, pt*
su = *sw* in **suādeō, suāvis, suēscō,** and their compounds.

SYLLABLES

7. There are no silent letters in Latin. Every word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. In English *mane* is one syllable; in Latin **manē** is two syllables, **ma-nē**.

8. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second vowel, as in **ma-nē**.

9. When two consonants stand together as in **iste** and **inde**, the rule usually given is: join both consonants with the following vowel if they can be pronounced together; otherwise they should be divided. So, **i-ste, in-de**. But this rule is seldom observed in practice, and is not theoretically right, since it makes incomprehensible the length of syllables.[1] The better rule is: separate any combination of consonants except a mute followed by a liquid (**b, c, d, g, k, p, q, t, ch, ph, th,** followed by **l** or **r**). This is the natural pronunciation: **is-te** and **doc-tus** are easier than **i-ste** and **do-ctus**; but **pa-tris** is easier than **pat-ris**.

10. A doubled consonant, as in **mittō** and **annus**, is to be divided in the same way, **mit-tō** and **an-nus**, and both parts are to be sounded. No doubled consonants are pronounced in English except in compound words. There is no difference in sound between *n* and *nn* in *any* and *penny*; but in *pen-knife* we hear two *n*'s. The last example illustrates the way in which the Romans pronounced all doubled consonants.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

11. Syllables are long or short, according to the time taken in pronouncing them.

[1] The teacher may consult Bennett's Appendix, 35; Professor Hale in *School Review*, June, 1896, pp. 394–411.

12. A syllable is, of course, long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. Such a syllable is said to be long by *nature.*

13. A syllable is long if its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute followed by a liquid. The reason for this will be clear if the student will compare the first syllables in *penny* and *pen-knife.* In *penny* we pronounce only one *n* and the syllable is short. In *pen-knife* it takes time to pronounce the *n* at the end of the first syllable before the following consonant. This makes the syllable long. So it always takes time to pronounce one consonant before another, except in the case of a mute before a liquid. They run together so easily as to take no appreciable time. Compare the sounds of **duc-tus** and **pa-tris.** A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants is said to be long by *position.*

ACCENT

14. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable. So **om'nis.**

15. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (next to the last syllable) if it is long (by nature or by position); if the penult is short the accent falls on the antepenult (syllable before the penult). So **dīvī'sa, appellan'tur,** but **in'colunt.**

16. When an enclitic is joined to another word the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic. So **Gallia'que,** *and Gaul.*

BELLUM HELVETICUM

LESSON I

17. TEXT

The most important part of the recitation period is that spent by the teacher in preparing the class for studying the next day's lesson. Pronunciation in particular must be learned almost wholly from the teacher, though the pupil should be referred constantly to the Introductory Lesson. Unless the correct pronunciation of each word is firmly fixed in the student's mind before he is allowed to study the lesson by himself, he will surely acquire incorrect habits of pronunciation. A correct pronunciation is easily acquired at the beginning. A few weeks of carelessness will fix incorrect habits almost incurably.

Recite and write this text from memory; translate into English:

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs,

18. PRONUNCIATION

Although the words below are divided into syllables it must be understood that they are to be pronounced smoothly as in English, with no breaks between the syllables.

Gal′-li-a: all vowels short; final **a** as in *Cuba;* both l's sounded. **est**: just as *-est* in *digest*; the syllable is long (**13**), but this does not make the vowel long (compare **3** and **13**). **om′-nis**: **om-**, neither as in *home* nor as in *omnibus*; **o** as the German short *o*, nearly as *o* in *for*, not exactly like any English vowel; **i** as in *pin*. **dī-vī′-sa**: *dee-wee′-sa*; **s** as in *said;* **a** as in *Cuba*. **in**: as *in*. **par′-tēs**: **par-** as in *party*, but with a very clearly sounded *r*; **-tēs** as *tas-* in *taste*. **trēs**: as *trace.*

19. VOCABULARY

Memorize accurately all the vocabularies, so that the Latin equivalent for the English word, or the English equivalent for the Latin word can be instantly named or written. Master one word at a time. In learning a language it is absolutely necessary to learn the words. In the recitation the English word should generally be pronounced, and the pupil required to give the Latin equivalent.

Gallia Gaul
est is
omnis every, all, as a whole
dīvīsa divided
in, *prep.*, into
partēs parts
trēs three

The English words *omnibus* and *omniscient* are derived from **omnis**; *part*, *party*, *partner*, and *partial*, from **partēs.**

Name other English words derived from these and other words in the vocabulary.

20. EXERCISES

Give orally the Latin equivalents for the following:

Gaul — Gaul as a whole — is divided — Gaul is divided — parts — into parts — into three parts — Gaul is divided into parts — Gaul as a whole is divided into parts — Gaul is divided into three parts.

21. LATIN QUESTIONS

The Latin questions are intended as material for impromptu oral practice, not as essential parts of the lessons. The peculiarities of Latin questions and answers are given in App. **209–215**.

Answer in Latin, following the model answers:

Estne Gallia dīvīsa? (Gallia est dīvīsa.) Quōmodo (*how*) est Gallia dīvīsa? (Gallia in partēs est dīvīsa.) Quot in (*into how many*) partēs est Gallia dīvīsa? Nōnne Gallia est omnis dīvīsa?

LESSON II

22. TEXT

Recite and write from memory. Translate at first in the order of the Latin, and then in a good English order, contrasting the different arrangements.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.

23. PRONUNCIATION

quā′-rum: *kwah′-rŏŏm; oo* as in *foot.* **ū′-nam:** *ōō′-nam; oo* as in *boot;* **a**, see **4**. **in′-co-lunt:** for vowels see **4**. **Bel′-gae: bel-** as *bell*; **-gae** as *guy.* **a′-li-am:** for vowels see **4**. **A-quī-tā′-nī:** *a-kwee-tah′-nee;* first **a** short. **ter′-ti-am: e** as in *net;* both **t**'s hard; not the sounds of *e* and the second *t* in *tertiary.* **quī:** *kwee.* **ip-sō′-rum:** for vowels see **4**. **lin′-guā:** *lin′-gwah;* **ā** not as in *Cuba*, but long. **Cel′-tae: -tae** as *tie.* **nos′-trā: ā**, see **linguā**. **ap-pel-lan′-tur:** sound both **p**'s and both **l**'s; the **l**'s should run together, the **p**'s should be distinct.

24. VOCABULARY

quārum of which
ūnam one
incolunt (they) inhabit
Belgae (the) Belgae, Belgians
aliam other, another
Aquītānī (the) Aquitani, Aquitanians
tertiam third
quī who, those who
ipsōrum (of them) selves, their own
linguā (in the) tongue, language
Celtae (the) Celts
nostrā (in) our, (in) ours
Gallī (the) Gauls, Galli
appellantur are called, are named

The English derivatives from words given in the vocabularies should always be called for. In cases of doubt about derivative words a good English dictionary may be consulted advantageously.

25. EXERCISES

Of which — one — one of which — (they) inhabit — the Belgae inhabit — one of which the Belgae inhabit — they

inhabit one part (**partem**) — the Belgae inhabit one part — another — the Aquitani — the Aquitani inhabit another — another part — the Aquitani inhabit another part — who (those who) — language — in their own language — into the parts — three Aquitani.

26. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quot in partēs est Gallia dīvīsa? (Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs.) Quī (*who*) incolunt partem ūnam? Nōnne partem ūnam Belgae incolunt? (Ita [*yes*], Belgae partem ūnam incolunt.) Quī incolunt partem aliam? Estne Gallia dīvīsa? (Dīvīsa est.) Estne Gallia omnis dīvīsa? (Omnis.) Belgaene trēs partēs incolunt? (Nōn [*no*], ūnam partem Belgae incolunt.)

NOTES

The notes to each lesson contain statements of facts and principles absolutely essential in acquiring the elements of Latin, and must be thoroughly learned and recited.

27. **incolu-nt,** *they inhabit:* **-nt** is the ending of the third person, plural number, active voice. When no subject is expressed the personal pronoun of that person and number must be supplied in translation: thus, **incolunt,** *they inhabit,* but **Belgae incolunt,** *the Belgae inhabit.*

28. The Latin has no article. *The*, *an*, or *a* must therefore be supplied by the student in translating, whenever the sense requires it.

29. The modern use of some proper nouns and adjectives permits the employment of either the Latin form or the Anglicized form, as in the designation of tribes; but the Anglicized form, if used, should have some modern sanction.

LESSON III

30. TEXT

Recite and translate:

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā

Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt.

31. PRONUNCIATION

hī: as *he*. **om′-nēs**: **-ēs** as *ace*. **īn-sti-tū′-tīs**: **īn-**, *een*, not *in*; **-tīs**, with **ī** = *ee*, not as in **omnis**. **lē′-gi-bus**: **lē-** as *lay*; **g** hard; **-bus** not as in *omnibus*, but with **u** = *ŏŏ*. **in′-ter**: **e** has its regular sound; English pronounces *er*, *ir*, *ur* all alike, Latin gives the proper sound to each vowel. **sē**: as *say*. **dif′-fe-runt**: both **f**'s are sounded, but are run together.

32. VOCABULARY

hī these
omnēs all (*plural of* **omnis**)
īnstitūtīs (in) customs
lēgibus (in) laws
inter among
sē themselves
differunt differ

DECLENSION

33. In English the form of a noun used as object is not different from that of the same noun used as subject. Examples: *The Celts* (subj.) *praise the Belgians* (obj.); *the Belgians* (subj.) *praise the Celts* (obj.). But in some pronouns there is a nominative case for the subject and an objective case for the object. Examples: *I* (nom.) *praise him* (obj.); *he* (nom.) *praises me* (obj.). In Latin the objective case is called the *accusative*, and its ending is usually different from that of the nominative. Examples: **Celtae** (nom.) **Belgās** (acc.) **laudant**, *the Celts praise the Belgians*; **Belgae** (nom.) **Celtās** (acc.) **laudant**, *the Belgians praise the Celts.* Such change of ending is called *declension.*

34. In English it is necessary to show which word is subject and which is object by the order. In Latin the endings show which is which, no matter what the order may be. One may say **Celtae Belgās laudant, Belgās Celtae laudant,** or **Belgās laudant Celtae,** and yet always show that **Celtae** is the subject, **Belgās** the object.

35. The endings are not the same for all nouns. In **lingua** they are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	**-a** (**lingua** a language)	**-ae** (**linguae** languages)
Accusative	**-am** (**linguam** a language)	**-ās** (**linguās** languages)

Lingua is a noun of the *first declension.* All nouns of this declension have the same endings. The student should learn them thoroughly so that

whenever he sees or hears one of these endings he will *feel* that the noun is subject or object, means one thing or more than one, as the case may be.

Give with these same endings the nominative and accusative singular of **Gallia**, and plural of **Belgae** and **Celtae**.

36. EXERCISES

Who (those who) — Celts — are called — who are called Celts — who are called Gauls — their own language — in our language — in their own language — the Belgae inhabit one part — the Celts inhabit the third part — these — all these — all these differ — they differ in language — they differ from one another.

37. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quō nōmine (*by what name*) appellantur Celtae nostrā linguā? (Celtae nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur.) Quī differunt inter sē? Quōmodo inter sē differunt? Quī differunt linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus? Nōnne Belgae et Gallī inter sē differunt?

NOTES

38. **inter sē differunt,** *differ from one another.*

LESSON IV

39. TEXT

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

40. PRONUNCIATION

The pronunciation should by this time have been made clear enough to obviate the necessity for detailed explanation of every word. The student should learn the rules for accent (**14–16**) if he has not done so already.

Though some teachers give little time to the niceties of pronunciation, a mistake in accent is inexcusable. If the student has not already begun to pronounce Latin sentences with natural expression, as he would English sentences, he should be encouraged to do so.

41. VOCABULARY

Gallōs Gauls	**Belgīs** Belgians
ab, ā, *prep.*, from	**Mātrona** the Marne
Aquītānīs Aquitanians	**et,** *conj.*, and
Garumna the Garonne	**Sēquana** the Seine
flūmen river	**dīvidit** divides, separates

CONJUGATION

42. In some tenses of English verbs there are different forms for the third persons singular and plural; as, *he praises, they praise.* In Latin the forms are always different.

43. Of **laudō,** *I praise*, the forms in the third person, present tense are:

SINGULAR	lauda**t** he, she, or it praises.	ENDING	**-t**
PLURAL	lauda**nt** they praise.	"	**-nt.**

Such change of ending is called *conjugation.* **Laudō** is a verb of the *first conjugation.*

If the subject is expressed, the *he, she,* or *it* must not be used. See **27**.

Give with these same endings the singular and plural of **appellō,** *I call.*

44. The verb must agree with its subject in number, as in English. That is, if the subject is singular, the verb must be singular; if the subject is plural, the verb must be plural. If, however, the Latin verb has two or more singular subjects, it may be either singular or plural, though in English it is always plural.

45. EXERCISES

I. From the Aquitani — from the Belgae — the river divides — the Seine river — the Marne and the Garonne.

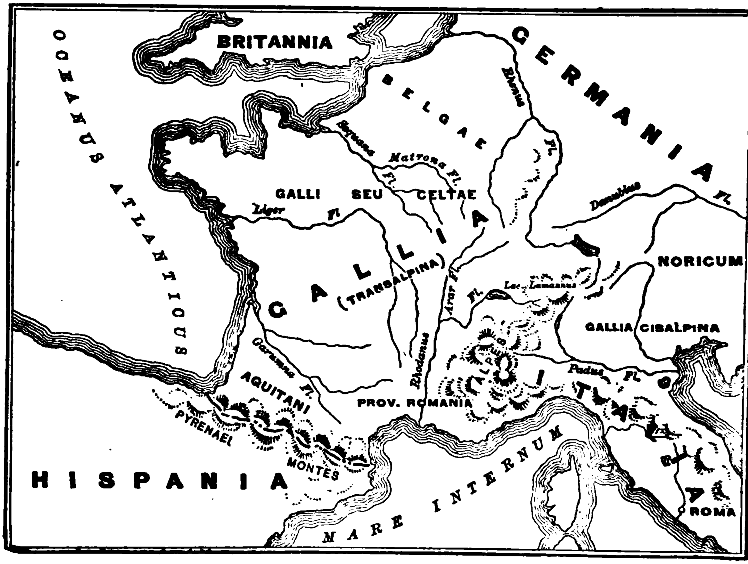
II. 1. Celtae laudant. 2. Appellant. 3. Linguam laudant. 4. Linguās laudat. 5. Mātronam laudant. 6. Gallia Belgās laudat.

III. 1. He calls. 2. They call. 3. The Belgae praise.

4. Gaul praises. 5. He praises the Celts. 6. He praises Gaul.

46. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quod (*what*) flūmen dīvidit Gallōs ab Aquītānīs? Quās (*what*) partēs dīvidit flūmen Garumna? (Garumna dīvidit aliam partem ā tertiā.) Quās partēs Sēquana et Mātrona dīvidit?



NOTES

47. Mātrona et Sēquana: these two rivers really make but one boundary line. Note on the map the position of the three rivers mentioned in this lesson.

48. dīvidi-t, (*he, she, it*) *divides;* **es-t,** (*he, she, it*) *is:* **-t** is the ending of the third person singular, active voice, in all verbs.

49. ā, ab: ā is used before a consonant; as **ā Belgīs; ab,** before vowels or consonants; as **ab Aquītānīs, ab Sēquanīs.**

LESSON V

50. REVIEW

I. Recite the complete text given in the previous lessons. It will be found given connectedly on page 232.

II. Fix firmly in memory the Latin words of the following vocabulary, and their meanings. They will all occur again, and the student will save time by learning them now.

VOCABULARY

ā, ab	**Gallī**	**Mātrona**
aliam	**Gallia**	**nostrā**
appellō	**Garumna**	**omnēs**
Aquītānī	**hī**	**omnis**
Belgae	**in**	**partēs**
Celtae	**incolunt**	**quārum**
differunt	**īnstitūtīs**	**sē**
dīvidit	**inter**	**Sēquana**
dīvīsa	**ipsōrum**	**tertiam**
est	**laudō**	**trēs**
et	**lēgibus**	**ūnam**
flūmen	**linguā**	

III. Give nominative and accusative of the following: singular and plural of **lingua**; singular of **Gallia, Garumna, Mātrona, Sēquana**; plural of **Belgae, Celtae.** Give the third person singular and plural of **appellō, laudō.**

IV. What is the case of the subject? Of the object? With what must the verb agree? If the verb has two or more singular subjects, what will its number be?

51. EXERCISES

1. Gallī partēs trēs incolunt. 2. Celtae nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur. 3. Hī ipsōrum linguā Celtae appellantur. 4. Omnēs Gallī lēgibus inter sē differunt. 5. Hī linguā et īnstitūtīs differunt. 6. Garumna flūmen Gallōs ab Aquītānīs dīvidit. 7. Mātrona et Sēquana Gallōs ā Belgīs dīvidit. 8. Mātrona est flūmen.

LESSON VI

52. TEXT

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae,

53. VOCABULARY

hōrum (of) these
omnium (of) all
fortissimī bravest, most brave
sunt (they) are

INFLECTION AND DECLENSION

54. It has already been shown that Latin changes the forms of nouns to indicate which is subject and which is object, and that these forms are called cases. There are, in all, six cases, each of which shows a different relation to other words in a sentence. Most of these relations can be expressed in English only by the use of such prepositions as *of*, *to*, *from*, *by*, etc. Examples: **linguae partēs,** *the parts of a language;* **linguā differunt,** *they differ in language.*

55. *Inflection* is the process of changing the form of a word to show its relation to other words in a sentence.

56. *Declension* is the special name given to the inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns.

57. Latin nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished from one another by the final letter (characteristic) of their stems, and by the termination of the genitive singular. In the vocabularies the termination of the genitive singular is given after the nominative, and the declension thus readily and certainly made known. In those nouns which have only plural forms, the ending of the genitive plural is placed after the nominative form.

FIRST DECLENSION

58. In the first declension the stem vowel, or characteristic, is **ā**; the genitive singular ends in **-ae**. From the characteristic vowel **ā**, this is sometimes called the **ā** declension.

In learning the paradigm of **lingua**, observe the base, to which the endings are affixed, and the meaning of each case. **The base is that part of the word to which the genitive singular ending is added.**

Lingua, F., *tongue, language*

SINGULAR			ENDING
Nominative	lingua	a language	**-a**
Genitive	lingu**ae**	of a language	**-ae**
Dative	lingu**ae**	to *or* for a language	**-ae**
Accusative	lingu**am**	a language	**-am**
Vocative	lingua	O (*or* thou) language	**-a**
Ablative	lingu**ā**	by, from, in, with a language	**-ā**

CASES ALIKE

Nom., *Voc.* } -a *Gen.*, *Dat.* } -ae

Inflect with the same endings the nouns **Gallia, Garumna, Mātrona, Sēquana.**

Hereafter nouns of the first declension will be given with the nominative form followed by the genitive ending **-ae**, as is done in vocabularies and lexicons.

59. EXERCISES

I. These — of these — all — of all — of all these — the bravest of all — is — are — the Belgae are bravest — they are bravest of all these.

II. 1. Linguae. 2. Galliam. 3. Mātronā. 4. Sēquanae. 5. Gallia. 6. Galliae lingua. 7. Galliae linguā. 8. Galliae partēs. 9. Linguā differunt.

III. 1. Hī Galliae partēs laudant. 2. Celtae sunt Gallī: 3. Belgae appellantur fortissimī. 4. Mātrona ā Belgīs Gallōs dīvidit. 5. Hōrum omnium fortissimī ipsōrum linguā Belgae appellantur.

NOTES

60. **Hōrum** and **omnium** are the genitives of **hī** and **omnēs**.

61. **Sunt** is the plural of **est**.

62. Though the characteristic vowel of the first declension is **ā**, it has been shortened to **a** in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular.

19. VOCABULARY

Memorize accurately all the vocabularies, so that the Latin equivalent for the English word, or the English equivalent for the Latin word can be instantly named or written. Master one word at a time. In learning a language it is absolutely necessary to learn the words. In the recitation the English word should generally be pronounced, and the pupil required to give the Latin equivalent.

Gallia Gaul
est is
omnis every, all, as a whole
dīvīsa divided
in, *prep.*, into
partēs parts
trēs three

The English words *omnibus* and *omniscient* are derived from **omnis**; *part*, *party*, *partner*, and *partial*, from **partēs**.

Name other English words derived from these and other words in the vocabulary.

20. EXERCISES

Give orally the Latin equivalents for the following:

Gaul — Gaul as a whole — is divided — Gaul is divided — parts — into parts — into three parts — Gaul is divided into parts — Gaul as a whole is divided into parts — Gaul is divided into three parts.

21. LATIN QUESTIONS

The Latin questions are intended as material for impromptu oral practice, not as essential parts of the lessons. The peculiarities of Latin questions and answers are given in App. **209–215**.

Answer in Latin, following the model answers:

Estne Gallia dīvīsa? (Gallia est dīvīsa.) Quōmodo (*how*) est Gallia dīvīsa? (Gallia in partēs est dīvīsa.) Quot in (*into how many*) partēs est Gallia dīvīsa? Nōnne Gallia est omnis dīvīsa?

LESSON II

22. TEXT

Recite and write from memory. Translate at first in the order of the Latin, and then in a good English order, contrasting the different arrangements.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.

23. PRONUNCIATION

quā′-rum: *kwah′-rŏŏm; oo* as in *foot*. **ū′-nam**: *ōō′-nam; oo* as in *boot;* **a**, see **4**. **in′-co-lunt**: for vowels see **4**. **Bel′-gae**: **bel-** as *bell*; **-gae** as *guy*. **a′-li-am**: for vowels see **4**. **A-quī-tā′-nī**: *a-kwee-tah′-nee;* first **a** short. **ter′-ti-am**: **e** as in *net;* both **t**'s hard; not the sounds of *e* and the second *t* in *tertiary*. **quī**: *kwee*. **ip-sō′-rum**: for vowels see **4**. **lin′-guā**: *lin′-gwah;* **ā** not as in *Cuba*, but long. **Cel′-tae**: **-tae** as *tie*. **nos′-trā**: **ā**, see **linguā**. **ap-pel-lan′-tur**: sound both **p**'s and both **l**'s; the **l**'s should run together, the **p**'s should be distinct.

24. VOCABULARY

quārum of which
ūnam one
incolunt (they) inhabit
Belgae (the) Belgae, Belgians
aliam other, another
Aquītānī (the) Aquitani, Aquitanians
tertiam third
quī who, those who
ipsōrum (of them) selves, their own
linguā (in the) tongue, language
Celtae (the) Celts
nostrā (in) our, (in) ours
Gallī (the) Gauls, Galli
appellantur are called, are named

The English derivatives from words given in the vocabularies should always be called for. In cases of doubt about derivative words a good English dictionary may be consulted advantageously.

25. EXERCISES

Of which — one — one of which — (they) inhabit — the Belgae inhabit — one of which the Belgae inhabit — they

PREPOSITIONS

71. In **54** it was said that English regularly uses a preposition to show some relations which Latin expresses by the cases. But there are many prepositions in Latin as well as in English. While many relations of words are expressed by the six cases in Latin there are others where prepositions are used.

72. Latin prepositions regularly govern either the accusative or the ablative. When a new preposition is learned, the case which it governs should also be carefully learned. Three prepositions have occurred in the previous lessons: **in,** *into*, governs the accusative; **ā, ab,** *from*, the ablative; **inter,** *among*, the accusative.

73. EXERCISES



GALLIC COIN FIRST CENTURY B.C.

I. Resort to — the merchants resort to them — least often, very seldom — they very seldom resort to them — they resort to the Gauls (**Gallōs**) — the traders import those things — those things which tend to weaken the courage — because — on account of this.

II. (*Use prepositions in all these.*) 1. To the province. 2. From the provinces. 3. Towards the Marne. 4. Into the Garonne. 5. From Gaul. 6. Among the Celts.

III. 1. Ad eōs saepe commeat. 2. Ad Celtās ea importat. 3. Mercātōrēs ā prōvinciā ea important. 4. Ea important propterea quod Gallī longissimē absunt. 5. Minimē saepe Aquītānī ad Belgās commeant propterea quod fortissimī sunt.

74. LATIN QUESTIONS

Ad quōs (*whom*) commeant mercātōrēs? (Mercātōrēs ad Belgās commeant.) Mercātōrēsne ad Belgās saepe commeant? (Nōn, minimē saepe commeant.) Quās rēs (*what things*) important mercātōrēs? Suntne hī mercātōrēs Gallī?

(Nesciō [*I do not know*].) Nōnne mercātōrēs sunt Rōmānī? (Cēnseō [*I think so*].) Suntne mercātōrēs fortissimī? (Nōn, Belgae fortissimī sunt.)

NOTES

75. The three common words for *and*, **et**, **-que**, and **atque**, have now been given. There is no very precise rule for their use. **Et** can be used anywhere; **-que** usually connects things that belong naturally together; **atque** usually adds something of importance.

76. Enclitics are words which are joined in writing and pronunciation to the preceding word. For the accent see **16**. **-que** must always be translated *before* the word to which it is attached. Example: **Belgae Gallīque** is the same as **Belgae et Gallī** and means *Belgians and Gauls*.

77. The figure 1, after the verbs, shows that they belong to the first conjugation, like **laudō**. The pupil can therefore make the singular form for himself.

78. ad effēminandōs animōs, *to weaken the courage*. The peculiar force of the form **effēminandōs** will be explained later in the book.

LESSON IX

79. TEXT

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

80. VOCABULARY

proximī nearest, next to
Germānīs (to) the Germans
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across
Rhēnum the Rhine
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with
quibuscum with whom
continenter, *adv.*, continually
bellum war
gerunt carry on, wage

FIRST CONJUGATION: PRESENT

81. In **43** the singular and plural third person of the present of **laudō** were given. There are three persons in Latin as in English; but a different form of the verb indicates each, so that the pronouns answering to the English *I*, *you*, *he*, *we*, *you*, *they* are not commonly expressed.

82. *Conjugation* is the special name given to the inflection (see **55**) of verbs.

83. Latin inflects its verbs in four conjugations, distinguished by the final vowels of their stems.

84. In the first conjugation the stem vowel is **ā**. This is lost in the ending **-ō**, of the first person, and shortened to **a** in the third persons.

Present Indicative Active

		SINGULAR	ENDING
First Person	laud**ō**	I praise	**-ō**
Second Person	laud**ās**	(thou praisest) you praise	**-s**
Third Person	lauda**t**	he praises	**-t**
		PLURAL	ENDING
First Person	laud**āmus**	we praise	**-mus**
Second Person	laud**ātis**	you praise	**-tis**
Third Person	lauda**nt**	they praise	**-nt**

Inflect in the same way **appellō, commeō, effēminō, importō.**

85. EXERCISES

I. They are — they are nearest — the next to the Germans — with — with whom — they dwell — they dwell across the Rhine — who dwell across the Rhine — who wage war — they wage war continually.

II. 1. Importās. 2. Commeātis. 3. Effēminant. 4. Appellāmus. 5. Effēminātis. 6. Importāmus. 7. Commeās. 8. Importat. 9. Nostrā linguā appellāmus. 10. Ad eōs commeāmus.

III. 1. Belgae proximī sunt Celtīs. 2. Hī omnēs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, bellum continenter gerunt. 3. Belgae et Celtae linguā inter sē differunt. 4. Prōvinciae ab hūmānitāte longissimē absunt.

NOTES

86. With the relative and personal pronouns **cum** is enclitic (see **76**). It stands before other words, as the rest of the prepositions do. Example: **cum Belgīs**, *with the Belgians.*

LESSON X

87. REVIEW

I. Recite and translate the text from the beginning (see page 232).

II. Review the vocabulary in **50**; also review the following list of words.

VOCABULARY

absunt	**eōs**	**prōvincia**
ad	**fortissimī**	**proximī**
animōs	**Germānīs**	**quae**
atque	**gerunt**	**quibuscum**
bellum	**hūmānitāte**	**quod**
commeō	**importō**	**Rhēnum**
continenter	**longissimē**	**saepe**
cultū	**mercātōrēs**	**sunt**
cum	**minimē**	**trāns**
ea	**pertinent**	
effēminō	**propterea**	

III. Decline **lingua** and **prōvincia**. Conjugate the present of **importō** and **commeō**.

IV. Give the prepositions that have been used, and the case each governs. What are cases for? What is inflection? Declension? Conjugation? What is the characteristic of the first declension? Of the first conjugation? How are declensions distinguished? Conjugations? What are enclitics? When is **cum** enclitic?

LESSON XI

88. TEXT

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt,

89. VOCABULARY

causa, -ae, F., cause, reason
dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, concerning, for
quā dē causā for this reason
Helvētiī the Helvetians
quoque, *adv.*, also, likewise, too
reliquōs the rest of, remaining
virtūte (in) valor
praecēdunt go before, precede, surpass

90. SECOND DECLENSION

In the second declension the stem vowel, or characteristic, is **o**; the genitive singular ends in **-ī**. From the characteristic vowel this is also called the **o** declension.

In learning the paradigm of **animus,** *mind*, *spirit*, *courage*, observe the base and give the meaning of the word for each case as in the paradigm of **lingua.**

Animus, M., *mind*

	SINGULAR	ENDING
Nom.	anim**us**	**-us**
Gen.	anim**ī**	**-ī**
Dat.	anim**ō**	**-ō**
Acc.	anim**um**	**-um**
Voc.	anim**e**	**-e**
Abl.	anim**ō**	**-ō**

CASES ALIKE

Dat., *Abl.* } **-ō**

Like **animus** decline **Gallus,** *a Gaul;* **Rhēnus,** *the Rhine.*

Hereafter nouns of the second declension will be given in the manner usually followed in vocabularies and lexicons.

91. EXERCISES

I. Reason — for this reason — the Helvetians too — the Helvetians surpass — in valor — they surpass in valor — they surpass the Gauls — the Helvetians surpass the Gauls — they surpass the rest of the Gauls.

II. 1. Of the mind. 2. O Rhine. 3. For the Rhine.

4. By the mind. 5. To a Gaul. 6. Of a Gaul. 7. For the mind of a Gaul. 8. In the mind of the Belgian. 9. Of the reason. 10. With a reason.

III. 1. Causam laudat. 2. Linguam Gallī laudant. 3. Animum Gallī laudō. 4. Ea ad Rhēnum importās. 5. Ea in prōvinciam importātis. 6. Belgae virtūte differunt. 7. Celtae animō quoque praecēdunt.

NOTES

92. **Quā** is a form of the same word from which come **quī**, **quae**, and **quibus**; so the phrase **quā dē causā** literally means *for which reason*. But, as a new sentence does not begin in this way in English, **quā** must be translated *this*.

93. Nouns in **-us** of the second declension are almost all of the masculine gender. Gender will be explained in **107**.

94. In all other declensions than the second the vocative is like the nominative. The singular of second declension nouns in **-us** is the only exception.

LESSON XII

95. TEXT

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt,

96. VOCABULARY

ferē, *adv.*, almost

cotīdiānīs daily

proeliīs (in) battles

contendunt strive, contend, hasten

97. SECOND DECLENSION

Animus, M., *mind*

	PLURAL	ENDING
Nom.	animī	-ī
Gen.	anim**ōrum**	**-ōrum**
Dat.	anim**īs**	**-īs**
Acc.	anim**ōs**	**-ōs**
Voc.	animī	-ī
Abl.	anim**īs**	**-īs**

CASES ALIKE

Nom. } -ī   *Dat.* } -īs
Voc. }   *Abl.* }

Like **animī** decline **Aquītānī, Gallī, Germānī, Helvētiī.**

98. **EXERCISES**

I. Because they contend — daily — in daily battles — they contend in battles — in almost daily battles — with the Germans — they contend with the Germans.

II. 1. Helvētiōrum. 2. Animōs. 3. Germānīs. 4. Gallōrum. 5. Cum Aquītānīs. 6. Ad Gallōs. 7. Ā Germānīs. 8. Inter Helvētiōs. 9. Animīs Helvētiōrum. 10. Linguā Gallōrum.

III. 1. Helvētiī omnēs reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt. 2. Gallī et Germānī animō inter sē differunt. 3. Germānī, quī ferē fortissimī sunt, trāns Rhēnum incolunt. 4. Helvētiī ad Germānōs saepe commeant. 5. Ea ad Gallōs minimē saepe importāmus. 6. Bellum continenter gerunt propterea quod Gallōrum fortissimī sunt.

99. **LATIN QUESTIONS**

Quā dē causā (*for what reason*) praecēdunt Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs? Quōs (*whom*) praecēdunt Helvētiī? Quī contendunt proeliīs cum Germānīs? Quibuscum contendunt Helvētiī?

LESSON XIII

100. **TEXT**

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt,

101. VOCABULARY

cum, *conj.*, when
aut, *conj.*, or
aut . . . aut either . . . or
suīs their (own)
fīnibus (from) limits, boundaries, territories
prohibent hold from, prohibit, keep away
ipsī (they) themselves
in, *prep. with abl.*, in
eōrum of them, their

102. SECOND DECLENSION

Neuter nouns of the second declension end in **-um** and are declined like masculine nouns in **-us** except that in the singular and plural the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are alike.

Bellum, N., *war*

	SINGULAR	ENDING	PLURAL	ENDING
Nom.	bell**um**	**-um**	bell**a**	**-a**
Gen.	bell**ī**	**-ī**	bell**ōrum**	**-ōrum**
Dat.	bell**ō**	**-ō**	bell**īs**	**-īs**
Acc.	bell**um**	**-um**	bell**a**	**-a**
Voc.	bell**um**	**-um**	bell**a**	**-a**
Abl.	bell**ō**	**-ō**	bell**īs**	**-īs**

CASES ALIKE

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom. *Acc.* *Voc.*	**-um**	*Nom.* *Acc.* *Voc.*	**-a**
Dat. *Abl.*	-ō	*Dat.* *Abl.*	**-īs**

Like **bellum** decline **proelium.**

103. EXERCISES

I. When — them — when they keep them away — they keep them away from their own territories — they either keep them away or wage war — they themselves — they themselves wage war — they wage war in their territories — in their own territories — they themselves keep them away.

II. 1. Proelia. 2. Ad bella. 3. Bellōrum. 4. In proelia.

5. In proeliīs. 6. Ā bellīs. 7. Proeliō contendunt. 8. Bella gerunt. 9. Bellī partēs. 10. Proelia Belgārum.

III. 1. The Belgians, Celts, and Aquitani inhabit the parts of Gaul. 2. The Gauls are next to the Belgae. 3. They wage war for this reason, because they keep away the merchants. 4. The Gauls keep away the Germans by daily battles.

104. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quī praecēdunt Gallōs virtūte? Quibuscum contendunt Helvētiī? Quot (*how many*) proeliīs contendunt? Quī prohibent Germānōs? In quōrum (*whose*) fīnibus gerunt Helvētiī ipsī bellum?

NOTES

105. **Cum** is here a temporal conjunction meaning *when*, and not the preposition meaning *with*. It can usually be distinguished by its position in the clause, for the preposition is regularly followed by a noun in the ablative case.

106. Notice carefully the difference between **in** with the accusative and **in** with the ablative. **In** with the accusative means *into*, as in **17**; **in** with the ablative means *in*.

LESSON XIV

GENDER

107. English nouns have only *natural* gender. Names of males are masculine; of females, feminine; of things without life, neuter. But in Latin, as in French and German, there is a *grammatical* gender. Here too names of males are masculine and names of females feminine; but other nouns are masculine, feminine, or neuter, with no apparent reason for the choice. Thus **ager,** *field*, is masculine; **terra,** *land*, feminine; **solum,** *soil*, neuter. It is absolutely necessary to know the gender of every noun. The nominative form will tell the gender of very many nouns; a few general rules, given in App. **13**, will help about some others; but for the rest memory must be depended upon.

108. The chief reason why the gender of each noun must be known is that Latin adjectives are declined and have special forms to show the gender

as well as the case and number. In English the order alone tells what noun an adjective modifies. In Latin the ending of the adjective shows this even if the order does not. Examples: **Gallus māgnus Germānum laudat,** *the great Gaul praises the German.* **Gallus māgnum Germānum laudat,** *the Gaul praises the great German.*

109. *Rule. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

110. The masculine of these adjectives is declined like masculine nouns of the second declension; the feminine, like nouns of the first declension; the neuter, like neuter nouns of the second declension. In learning and reciting the adjectives below, give all the forms for each case before going on to the next.

Māgnus *great, large*

SINGULAR

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	māgn**us**	māgn**a**	māgn**um**
Gen.	māgn**ī**	māgn**ae**	māgn**ī**
Dat.	māgn**ō**	māgn**ae**	māgn**ō**
Acc.	māgn**um**	māgn**am**	māgn**um**
Voc.	māgn**e**	māgn**a**	māgn**um**
Abl.	māgn**ō**	māgn**ā**	māgn**ō**

Like **māgnus** decline **cotīdiānus, dīvīsus, fortissimus, proximus, suus, tertius.**

Decline together the singular of the following nouns and adjectives: **causa māgna, causae māgnae,** etc.; **animus suus, animī suī,** etc.; **bellum cotīdiānum, bellī cotīdiānī,** etc.

111. A noun and its modifying adjective can not always have the same endings, for they must agree in gender. For instance, **Mātrona** is masculine, though of the first declension, and an adjective modifying it must agree with it, thus:

Nom.	Mātron**a**	māgn**us**
Gen.	Mātron**ae**	māgn**ī**
Dat.	Mātron**ae**	māgn**ō**
Acc.	Mātron**am**	māgn**um**
Voc.	Mātron**a**	māgn**e**
Abl.	Mātron**ā**	māgn**ō**

112. EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī proximī. 2. Linguā suā. 3. Germānō māgnō. 4. Proelium cotīdiānum. 5. Bellō tertiō. 6. Linguam māgnam. 7. In Galliā dīvīsā. 8. In Galliam dīvīsam. 9. Ad proximum Gallum. 10. Ā bellō māgnō. 11. Gallus est fortissimus. 12. Sēquana est māgnus.

II. 1. Of a great war. 2. The battle is great. 3. From divided Gaul. 4. For a daily battle. 5. Into the great Seine. 6. In the great Seine. 7. To the nearest Gaul.

III. 1. Gallia est Germānīs proxima. 2. Bellō cotīdiānō cum Germānīs proximīs contendunt. 3. Bellum Belgārum et Germānōrum est māgnum. 4. Mātrona est flūmen māgnum. 5. Ea ad Gallōs proximōs importāmus.

LESSON XV

113. TEXT

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallī[1] obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō;

114. VOCABULARY

pars, F., part (*sing. of* **partēs**)
quam which
obtinent hold, occupy
initium, **-ī**, N., beginning
capit takes
Rhodanus, **-ī**, M., the Rhone

115. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

PLURAL

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	māgnī	māgnae	māgna
Gen.	māgnōrum	māgnārum	māgnōrum
Dat.	māgnīs	māgnīs	māgnīs
Acc.	māgnōs	māgnās	māgna
Voc.	māgnī	māgnae	māgna
Abl.	māgnīs	māgnīs	māgnīs

[1] It has been thought best to change the text here to avoid dealing with the infinitive construction so early. The true form is given on page 232.

Decline in the same way the plurals of **cotīdiānus, dīvīsus, fortissimus, proximus, suus, tertius.**

Decline together **causae proximae; animī fortissimī; bella cotīdiāna.**

116. As an example of words agreeing in gender but not in endings, decline together:

Nom.	Belgae	māgnī
Gen.	Belg**ārum**	māgn**ōrum**
Dat.	Belg**īs**	māgn**īs**
Acc.	Belg**ās**	māgn**ōs**
Voc.	Belgae	māgnī
Abl.	Belg**īs**	māgn**īs**

117. EXERCISES

I. A part — one part — of these — one part of these — which — they hold — which the Gauls possess — beginning — takes (its) beginning (begins at) — begins at the river — begins at the Rhone — one part begins.

II. 1. Germānōrum proximōrum. 2. Belgārum proximōrum. 3. Partēs proximās. 4. In initiīs māgnīs. 5. In proelia cotīdiāna. 6. Ūna pars. 7. Ūnus Germānus. 8. Proximīs Celtīs. 9. Celtae sunt proximī. 10. Mātrona est proximus.

III. 1. Of the great wars. 2. To the nearest battles. 3. Great beginnings. 4. From great beginnings. 5. The Rhone is nearest. 6. The Rhone is divided.

IV. 1. Ūna Galliae pars est Germānīs proxima. 2. Celtae sunt proximī Aquītānōrum fortissimīs. 3. Pars quam Gallī incolunt est māgna. 4. Ea ad fortissimōs Germānōrum importat. 5. Gallī Celtās laudant quod cum Germānīs bellō contendunt.

NOTES

118. Ūnus, -a, -um, *one,* is declined like **māgnus,** except in the genitive and dative singular, which are: genitive. **ūnīus, ūnīus, ūnīus**; dative, **ūnī, ūnī, ūnī.** It has no vocative.

119. **Initium capit ā** literally means *takes (its) beginning from*, but may be translated *begins at*.

120. **Flūmine** is the ablative of **flūmen**.

LESSON XVI

121. **REVIEW**

I. Recite and translate the text from the beginning (see p. 232).

II. Review the vocabularies in **50** and **87**; also review the following list of words.

VOCABULARY

aut
aut . . . aut
capit
causa, -ae, F.
contendunt
cotīdiānus
cum, *conj.*
dē
eōrum
ferē
fīnibus
Helvētius, -ī, M.
in
initium, -ī, N.
ipsī
obtinent
pars, F.
praecēdunt
proelium, -ī, N.
prohibent
quam
quoque
reliquus, -a, -um
Rhodanus, -ī, M.
suīs
virtūte

III. Decline **Germānus, proelium, proximus, Germānus proximus, proelium proximum, Sēquana māgnus.**

IV. What is the characteristic vowel of the first declension? Of the second? What is the gender of most nouns of the first declension? Of the second, ending in **-us**? Ending in **-um**? Why must the gender of nouns be known? What is the rule for the agreement of adjectives? What are the only nouns whose vocative is not like the nominative? In neuter nouns what cases are always alike? How can **cum** meaning *with* usually be distinguished from **cum** meaning *when?* What is the difference between **in** with the accusative and **in** with the ablative?

LESSON XVII

122. **TEXT**

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum;

123. VOCABULARY

continētur is bounded **Ōceanus, -ī,** M., the ocean

THIRD DECLENSION

124. Nouns of the third declension have **-s** or no case-ending in the nominative singular. The genitive of nouns of the third declension always ends in **-is.** Masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns are declined alike except that in neuters the accusative is like the nominative, and that their nominative, accusative, and vocative plural end in **-a.**

125. In learning a new noun, the nominative and genitive singular and the gender should always be fixed in the memory. This is especially necessary in the third declension for three reasons. First, as has been said, there may be a nominative ending **-s** or none. Second, the stem of the nominative and vocative singular may differ from that of the genitive and the other cases, as in **flūmen, flūminis,** *river*. Third, the gender can not always be told from the nominative ending, as it usually can in the other declensions.

126. The stems of third declension nouns end in a consonant or in **i.** The **i** of the stem makes some slight changes in the endings; and therefore **i**-stems will be given in another lesson. After learning the two following nouns the student should be able to decline any noun with consonant stem, if he knows the nominative, the genitive, and the gender.

Consonant-stems

	Lēx, F., *law* Stem **lēg-**		**Flūmen,** N., *river* Stem **flūmin-**	
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	lēx	**-s**	flūmen	
Gen.	lēg**is**	**-is**	flūmin**is**	**-is**
Dat.	lēg**ī**	**-ī**	flūmin**ī**	**-ī**
Acc.	lēg**em**	**-em**	flūmen	
Voc.	lēx	**-s**	flūmen	
Abl.	lēg**e**	**-e**	flūmin**e**	**-e**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	lēg**ēs**	**-ēs**	flūmin**a**	**-a**
Gen.	lēg**um**	**-um**	flūmin**um**	**-um**
Dat.	lēg**ibus**	**-ibus**	flūmin**ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	lēg**ēs**	**-ēs**	flūmin**a**	**-a**
Voc.	lēg**ēs**	**-ēs**	flūmin**a**	**-a**
Abl.	lēg**ibus**	**-ibus**	flūmin**ibus**	**-ibus**

127. **EXERCISES**

I. One is bounded — is bounded by the river — by the river Garonne — it is bounded by the ocean — the part is bounded by the territories of the Belgians.

II. 1. Lēgibus. 2. Lēgum. 3. Flūminis. 4. Flūmine. 5. Lēgī. 6. Lēge tertiā. 7. Lēgum māgnārum. 8. Flūminī proximō. 9. Flūminibus māgnīs. 10. Lēgēs sunt māgnae. 11. Flūmina sunt māgna. 12. Flūmen est proximum.

III. 1. Of a law. 2. For the laws. 3. In the river. 4. Into the rivers. 5. The law is great. 6. Of the nearest rivers. 7. Of the great law.

IV. 1. Lēgēs Galliae inter sē differunt. 2. Tertia Galliae pars est fortissima. 3. Cotīdiāna Belgārum īnstitūta laudātis. 4. Trāns flūmina māgna Gallī bella cum Germānīs gerunt. 5. Aquītānī hōrum fortissimōs suīs fīnibus prohibent.

128. **LATIN QUESTIONS**

Quī obtinent (*possess*) ūnam partem? Unde (*whence*) capit initium haec (*this*) ūna pars? Quam partem (*what part*) continent Garumna et Ōceanus et fīnēs Belgārum? Nōnne Ōceanus et flūmen trēs partēs continent? (Nōn, ūnam partem continent.)

NOTES

129. The classification of nouns of the third declension given in App. **18–23** will help in determining the nominative form if thoroughly understood and learned. The teacher must decide for himself whether to use it.

130. Some help in determining the gender may be obtained from App. **28** if the teacher thinks best to use it.

131. The **x** in **lēx** stands for **gs**.

132. Remember that the adjective always agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, but not always in ending. See **111**.

LESSON XVIII

THIRD DECLENSION

Masculine and Feminine Stems in i

133. The **i** of the stem unites with the endings, appearing in some of the cases, but apparently lost in others. Theoretically, the **i** should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculines and feminines. This will be seen in the declension of **turris**, F., *tower*, which is given for comparison with the consonant stem **prīnceps**, M., *chief*.

	ENDINGS (con.-stems)	ENDINGS (both stems)	ENDINGS (i- stems)	
		SINGULAR		
prīncep**s**		**-s**		turr**is**
prīncip**is**		**-is**		turr**is**
prīncip**ī**		**-ī**		turr**ī**
prīncip**em**	**-em**		**-im (-em)**	turr**im (-em)**
prīncep**s**		**-s**		turr**is**
prīncip**e**	**-e**		**-ī (-e)**	turr**ī (-e)**
		PLURAL		
prīncip**ēs**		**-ēs**		turr**ēs**
prīncip**um**		**-um**		turr**ium**
prīncip**ibus**		**-ibus**		turr**ibus**
prīncip**ēs**	**-ēs**		**-īs (-ēs)**	turr**īs (-ēs)**
prīncip**ēs**		**-ēs**		turr**ēs**
prīncip**ibus**		**-ibus**		turr**ibus**

134. Notice the accusative singular in **-im**, the ablative in **-ī**, and the accusative plural in **-īs**. But notice, too, that the other forms are used as well. These are the troublesome cases, for there was no fixed rule about them, and in some words the Romans preferred one form, in others the other. It is usually safe to use the forms **-em**, **-e**, and **-ēs** for masculine and feminine **i**-stems.

135. Notice that in the nominative and vocative singular, and the genitive plural, the endings of **prīnceps** and **turris** are really the same, since the **i** in **turris** and **turrium** belongs to the stem. But it is more convenient to speak of the endings as **-is** and **-ium**, and they are so printed in the following paradigms.

136. It is clear that before a third declension noun can be declined it must be known whether or not it is an **i**-stem. This can usually be determined at once if the nominative and genitive singular are known. Most **i**-stems belong to one of the three following classes, which should be thoroughly learned: —

a. Nouns in **-ēs** and **-is** which have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative. So **nūbes, nūbis,** *cloud*, and **turris, turris,** *tower*, are **i**-stems; but **abiēs, abietis,** *fir*, and **cinis, cineris,** *ashes*, are consonant-stems.

b. Neuters in **-e, -al, -ar.** So **mare, maris,** *sea*; **animal, animālis,** *animal*; **calcar, calcāris,** *spur*.

c. Many nouns whose stems apparently end in two consonants; especially monosyllables whose nominative ends in **s** or **x** preceded by a consonant. So **pars, partis,** *part*; **arx, arcis,** *citadel*.

137. **Pars,** F., *part* **Fīnis,** M., *end*

	Pars	Fīnis	
		SINGULAR	ENDINGS
Nom.	pars	fīnis	-s or -is
Gen.	partis	fīnis	-is
Dat.	partī	fīnī	-ī
Acc.	partem	fīnem	-em
Voc.	pars	fīnis	-s or -is
Abl.	parte	fīne (-ī)	-e (-ī)
		PLURAL	
Nom.	partēs	fīnēs	-ēs
Gen.	partium	fīnium	-ium
Dat.	partibus	fīnibus	-ibus
Acc.	partēs (-īs)	fīnēs (-īs)	-ēs (-īs)
Voc.	partēs	fīnēs	-ēs
Abl.	partibus	fīnibus	-ibus

138. VOCABULARY

fīnis, -is, M., end; (*in pl.*) boundaries, territory

hūmānitās, -ātis, F., refinement

mercātor, -ōris, M., merchant, trader

virtūs, -ūtis, F., manliness, courage

139. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fīnis. 2. Fīnī. 3. Hūmānitāte. 4. Partium. 5. Virtūtum. 6. Fīnīs. 7. Ad partēs. 8. In fīnibus. 9. Trāns fīnēs. 10. Cum parte.

II. 1. Of the part. 2. Of the territory. 3. For refinement. 4. In the end. 5. With manliness. 6. To the merchants. 7. With a merchant. 8. Into the territory.

III. 1. Mercātōrēs quī ea important laudāmus. 2. Mātrona est proximus Belgārum fīnibus. 3. Germānī in ūnā fīnium parte bella gerunt. 4. In aliā fīnium parte sunt Celtae, quī cum Belgīs proeliō contendunt. 5. Mercātor ad Gallōs ea saepe importat quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent.

IV. 1. The parts of Gaul are divided. 2. We praise the parts of the territory. 3. You bring those things into the territory. 4. They weaken the courage of the Gauls. 5. The merchants are very brave.

NOTES

140. The declension of neuters is given in the next lesson.

141. The words in the vocabulary are repeated from preceding lessons in order that the nominative and genitive singular may be learned.

LESSON XIX

142. **TEXT**

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs.

143. **VOCABULARY**

attingit touches upon, extends to, reaches

etiam, *conj.*, even, also

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, by, on the side of

vergit inclines, slopes

septentriōnēs, -um; *or* **septentriō, -ōnis,** M., the seven stars (*of the Great Bear*), the north

THIRD DECLENSION

Neuter Stems in i

144. Neuter stems retained the **i** better than masculine and feminine. In the ablative singular the ending **-ī** is used instead of **-e**. The nominative, genitive, accusative, and vocative plural endings are the same as those of consonant-stems, but preceded by the **i** of the stem; but for the sake of convenience the endings are printed as **-ia** and **-ium**.

Animal, N., *animal*

	Singular	Ending	Plural	Ending
Nom.	animal		animā**lia**	**-ia**
Gen.	animāl**is**	**-is**	animāl**ium**	**-ium**
Dat.	animāl**ī**	**-ī**	animāl**ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	animal		animāl**ia**	**-ia**
Voc.	animal		animāl**ia**	**-ia**
Abl.	animāl**ī**	**-ī**	animāl**ibus**	**-ibus**

145. EXERCISES

I. One part is bounded — a part is bounded by the ocean — one part is bounded by the territory of the Belgians — one part touches upon the river Rhine — one part is bounded by the river — the part slopes towards the north.

II. 1. Ūna pars māgnīs flūminibus continētur. 2. Alia pars fīnēs Germānōrum attingit. 3. Tertia pars vergit ad Ōceanum. 4. Mercātōrēs ea in fīnēs Helvētiōrum important. 5. Hī omnēs in fīnibus Germānōrum bellum gerunt propterea quod fortissimī sunt. 6. Flūmen māgnum partem quam Gallī obtinent dīvidit. 7. Fīnēs Germānōrum, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, māgnī sunt.

III. 1. One part extends to the river Marne. 2. The territory of the Celts is large. 3. The Belgians inhabit a part of the territory. 4. The territory of the Gauls slopes towards the north.

146. LATIN QUESTIONS

Unde capit initium ūna pars? Quōmodo continētur? Quō (*by what*) flūmine continētur? Quid attingit? Quō vergit? Nōnne ad septentriōnēs vergit? (Ita, ad septentriōnēs vergit.) Sumusne (*are we*) Belgae? (Minimē, nōn [*not*] sumus Belgae: sumus Americānī.) Habitāsne (*do you live*) in septentriōne (*at the north*)? (Ita est, in septentriōne habitō [*I live*].)

NOTES

147. **Ab** denotes position as well as separation and in the phrase **ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs**, etc., may be rendered, *on the side of*. Compare its use in previous lessons.

LESSON XX

148. TEXT

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur;

149. VOCABULARY

extrēmus, -a, -um farthest, extreme, most remote
fortis, -e strong, brave
oriuntur arise, rise, begin

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

150. Adjectives of the third declension are called adjectives of *one*, *two*, or *three terminations* according as they have the same termination for all genders in the nominative singular (*of one termination*), or the same form for the masculine and feminine and another for the neuter (*of two terminations*), or a different form for each gender (*of three terminations*). But except in the nominative singular (and the corresponding vocative and neuter accusative) the forms of the cases are the same in all three classes, and it will be sufficient to learn the paradigm of **omnis**, *all*, *every*, an adjective of *two terminations*. For paradigms of the others see App. **33–38**.

151. All adjectives of the third declension, except comparatives (which will be given in the next lesson) and a few others, are declined like nouns with **i**-stems. But notice that they are like neuter **i**-stems in retaining **-ī** for the ablative singular.

Stem **omni-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas., Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas., Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**omnis**	**omne**	**omnēs**	**omnia**
Gen.	**omnis**	**omnis**	**omnium**	**omnium**
Dat.	**omnī**	**omnī**	**omnibus**	**omnibus**
Acc.	**omnem**	**omne**	**omnēs (-īs)**	**omnia**
Voc.	**omnis**	**omne**	**omnēs**	**omnia**
Abl.	**omnī**	**omnī**	**omnibus**	**omnibus**

Like **omnis** decline **fortis, -e**, *brave.*

152. Remember that the adjective does not always agree with its noun in ending, but always agrees in gender, number, and case. Decline together the following.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	**animus**	**omnis**	**animī**	**omnēs**
Gen.	**animī**	**omnis**	**animōrum**	**omnium**
Dat.	**animō**	**omnī**	**animīs**	**omnibus**
Acc.	**animum**	**omnem**	**animōs**	**omnēs (-īs)**
Voc.	**anime**	**omnis**	**animī**	**omnēs**
Abl.	**animō**	**omnī**	**animīs**	**omnibus**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	**causa**	**omnis**	**causae**	**omnēs**
Gen.	**causae**	**omnis**	**causārum**	**omnium**
Dat.	**causae**	**omnī**	**causīs**	**omnibus**
Acc.	**causam**	**omnem**	**causās**	**omnēs (-īs)**
Voc	**causa**	**omnis**	**causae**	**omnēs**
Abl.	**causā**	**omnī**	**causīs**	**omnibus**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	**bellum**	**omne**	**bella**	**omnia**
Gen.	**bellī**	**omnis**	**bellōrum**	**omnium**
Dat.	**bellō**	**omnī**	**bellīs**	**omnibus**
Acc.	**bellum**	**omne**	**bella**	**omnia**
Voc.	**bellum**	**omne**	**bella**	**omnia**
Abl.	**bellō**	**omnī**	**bellīs**	**omnibus**

Decline also **pars omnis, fīnis omnis, flūmen omne.**

153. EXERCISES

I. 1. Forte bellum. 2. Fortium Gallōrum. 3. Partibus omnibus. 4. Belgās omnēs. 5. Proelium omne. 6. Flūmina omnia. 7. Animālī fortī. 8. Trāns flūmen omne. 9. Cum fortibus Celtīs. 10. Inter Gallōs omnēs. 11. In bellīs omnibus. 12. In initiō fortī.

II. 1. Of all the Gauls. 2. Of every river. 3. For the brave German. 4. With the brave Celts. 5. To every beginning. 6. Into all rivers. 7. Of all causes. 8. In every river.

III. 1. Belgae extrēmās Galliae partēs incolunt. 2. Belgae ab Mātronā flūmine oriuntur. 3. Omnēs Gallī cum Germānīs fortibus bellō contendunt. 4. Germānī omnēs trāns flūmen Rhēnum incolunt. 5. Mercātōrēs quī ea important sunt Gallōrum omnium fortissimī.

NOTES

154. **extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus**: notice this order — adjective, genitive, noun. It is not invariable, but usual.

LESSON XXI

155. TEXT

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem.

156. VOCABULARY

īnferior, -ius lower
spectō look, face
oriēns, orientis rising
sōl, sōlis, M., sun
oriēns sōl the east

COMPARATIVE DEGREE OF ADJECTIVES

157. The comparative degree of adjectives is formed by adding **-ior** to the base of the positive for the masculine and feminine gender, and **-ius** for the neuter. Thus **īnferus**, *low*, *base*, **īnfer-** + **-ior** = **īnferior**, *lower*.

158. With the nominative, thus formed, as a stem, comparatives are inflected with endings of the third declension.

Learn thoroughly the paradigm of **īnferior**, *lower*, observing (1) that the masculine and feminine genders are alike (as in **omnis**), (2) that the endings are those already learned in the third declension, (3) as the neuter singular has the accusative and vocative like the nominative it does not show the stem **īnferior-** in these cases, and (4) the genitive plural ends in **-um**, the neuter plural ends in **-a**, and the ablative singular usually ends in **-e**. Compare the other endings with those of **omnis**.

Stem **īnferior-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas., Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas., Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	īnferior	īnferius	īnferiōr**ēs**	īnferiōr**a**
Gen.	īnferiōr**is**	īnferiōr**is**	īnferiōr**um**	īnferiōr**um**
Dat.	īnferiōr**ī**	īnferiōr**ī**	īnferiōr**ibus**	īnferiōr**ibus**
Acc.	īnferiōr**em**	īnferius	īnferiōr**ēs** (**-īs**)	īnferiōr**a**
Voc.	īnferior	īnferius	īnferiōr**ēs**	īnferiōr**a**
Abl.	īnferiōre (-ī)	īnferiōre (-ī)	īnferiōr**ibus**	īnferiōr**ibus**

Like **īnferior** inflect the comparative of **fortis**, *brave*; **fortior, fortius**, etc.

Inflect together **pars īnferior**; **Gallia īnferior**; **animus īnferior**; **flūmen īnferius**: thus, **animus īnferior, animī īnferiōris, animō īnferiōrī**, etc.

APPOSITIVE AND PREDICATE NOUNS

159. Such phrases as **Garumna flūmen, ā flūmine Rhodanō**, have already occurred. In the text of this lesson is **flūminis Rhēnī**. Notice that in every instance both nouns refer to the same thing and are in the same case. If one had to say "the Rhine is a river," the nouns would still refer to the same thing and be in the same case, **Rhēnus est flūmen**.

160. ***Rule: A noun which explains another noun and refers to the same thing is put in the same case.***

If the explaining noun is connected with the other by some part of such a verb as *to be*, either expressed or understood, it is called a *predicate noun*; so **flūmen** in **Rhēnus est flūmen**.

Otherwise it is called an *appositive*. In **flūmen Rhēnus** it makes little difference which is called the appositive noun. Perhaps it is better to say that **Rhēnus** explains what **flūmen** is meant. Then **Rhēnus** is the appositive of **flūmen**. Pick out all the cases of apposition in the preceding text.

161. EXERCISES

I. The Belgians begin — they begin from (at) the boundary — from the farthest boundary of Gaul — they extend — they extend to a part of the river — to the lower part of the river Rhine — they face — toward the north — toward the east — toward the north and east — the Belgae face toward the east and north.

II. 1. Īnferiōrī partī. 2. Īnferiōrum partium. 3. Gallōrum fortiōrum. 4. Inter Celtās fortiōrēs. 5. Cum Germānīs fortiōribus. 6. Ad bellum fortius. 7. Spectat in septentriōnem. 8. Spectātis ad Belgās. 9. In flūmen Rhēnum spectāmus. 10. In flūmine Rhēnō. 11. Flūminum Mātronae et Sēquanae. 12. Mātrona et Sēquana sunt flūmina.

III. 1. To the brave Gauls. 2. In the lower part. 3. Of the east. 4. In the east. 5. The Rhone is a river. 6. The Rhine and the Rhone are rivers. 7. The Celts are Gauls. 8. To the river Marne.

162. LATIN QUESTIONS

Unde oriuntur Belgae? Quō pertinent Belgae? Ad quod (*what*) flūmen dīxistī (*did you say*)? Quam ad partem flūminis? Quō spectant Belgae? Quam in partem (*in what direction*) dīxistī?

NOTES

163. **Oriēns** is declined like an adjective of the third declension with one termination, thus; nominative, **oriēns, oriēns**; genitive, **orientis, orientis**; etc. See App. **38**.

LESSON XXII

164. **TEXT**

Recite and translate with the preceding text:

Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

165. **VOCABULARY**

Aquītānia, -ae, F., (*see map*) Aquitania
Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um Pyrenean, Pyrenees
mōns, montis, M., mountain
eam this, that
Hispānia, -ae, F., Spain
occāsum falling, setting
occāsum sōlis the setting of the sun, the west

166. **EXERCISES**

I. Aquitania extends to the mountains — to the mountains and the ocean — the part which is near Spain — (it) extends to that part — between the west and north — the mountain — the mountains — the mountains are called Pyrenean — Aquitania faces the ocean.

II. 1. Aquītānia, quae est ad Ōceanum, ad īnferiōrem flūminis partem pertinet. 2. Flūmen Garumna inter Aquītānōs et Gallōs est. 3. Flūmen Aquītāniae inter montēs est. 4. Montēs Pȳrēnaeī appellantur. 5. Aquītānia Hispāniā, Ōceanō, Garumnā flūmine continētur. 6. Pȳrēnaeī montēs inter Aquītāniam et Hispāniam sunt. 7. Omnēs Gallī fortēs sunt. 8. Garumna flūmen Aquītānōs ab Celtīs dīvidit et Ōceanum attingit. 9. Aquītānī suīs fīnibus Germānōs prohibent et ad nostram prōvinciam saepe commeant. 10. Aquītānia ad occāsum sōlis spectat. 11. Hī ad īnferiōrem partem pertinent.

III. Aquitania is separated (**dīvisa**) from Spain by the Pyrenees mountains. 2. For this reason the merchants very

seldom visit Spain. 3. One part, which extends to the ocean, is bounded by the mountains and rivers. 4. The Pyrenees mountains are very far distant from the Belgae. 5. The Aquitani possess that part which is toward Spain. 6. The lower parts of the river extend to the great mountains.

167. LATIN QUESTIONS

Ā quō flūmine (*from what river*) et ad quōs montēs pertinet Aquītānia? Ad quem Ōceanum? Nōnne Aquītānia ad (*near*) Hispāniam est? (Ita, vērō [*yes, indeed*].) Quō (*whither*) vergit Aquītānia?

LESSON XXIII

168. REVIEW

I. Recite and translate the entire text of the first chapter.

This chapter is the general geographical introduction to Caesar's narrative of his extraordinary campaigns in Gaul. Such a chapter was especially necessary at the time he wrote, because the Romans then knew almost nothing of the geography of Gaul, except the parts nearest to Italy and the Mediterranean. Gaul was to them only a vast unknown country whose inhabitants had once taken and sacked Rome, and had several times defeated Roman armies with fearful slaughter. If the student has not yet mastered the general outlines of its geography he should do so now with the aid of this chapter and the map on page 26. Note especially the position of the Helvetians and what Caesar has to say of them; for it is with them that the narrative is now most concerned. Read pages 12 and 13.

II. Review the vocabularies in **87** and **121**.

VOCABULARY

ā, ab	**fortis, -e**	**oriēns sōl**
Aquītānia, -ae, F.	**Hispānia, -ae, F.**	**oriuntur**
attingit	**īnferior, -ius**	**Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um**
continētur	**mōns, montis, M.**	**septentriō, -ōnis, M.**
eam	**occāsum**	**sōl, sōlis, M.**
etiam	**occāsum sōlis**	**spectō**
extrēmus, -a, -um	**Ōceanus, -ī, M.**	**vergit**
fīnis, -is, M.	**oriēns, -entis**	

III. Decline **lēx, flūmen, fīnis, pars, fortis, fortior.** Decline together **Germānus fortis, prōvincia fortis, bellum forte.**

IV. What two kinds of stems are found in the third declension? How can the **i**-stems be distinguished? Why is it necessary to know both the nominative and genitive forms? Why the gender? Name all the cases in which the declension of **i**-stems *may* differ from that of consonant-stems. Name those cases in which there is a difference regularly from consonant-stems, in masculine and feminine **i**-stems; in neuter **i**-stems; in adjectives of the third declension; in comparatives. What classes of adjectives are there in the third declension? How do they differ? How is the comparative degree formed in Latin? What is the usual order when a noun is modified by both an adjective and a genitive? What is an appositive? A predicate noun? Give an original example of each. What rule determines the case of both?

LESSON XXIV

A rapid recitation of the first chapter (see page 232) each day is strongly recommended. This need not occupy more than two minutes, and is invaluable in furnishing models and fixing in the mind the exact order of the words. Hereafter the memorizing of the text need not be required, though it will be helpful if time can be spared for it; but the student should be so familiar with the text as to be able to render the Latin into English or the English into Latin when either is pronounced in short sentences by the teacher.

169. TEXT

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx.

170. VOCABULARY

apud, *prep. with acc.,* among
longē, *adv.,* far, by far
nōbilis, -e noted, well known
fuit was
dīves, dīvitis (*sup.* **dītissimus**) rich, wealthy
Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgis, M., Orgetorix (*a chieftain of the Helvetii*)

THE PERFECT TENSE

171. The *present* tense of the first conjugation has been given. The present tense is used, as in English, to express an act or state as going on at the present time.

The *perfect* tense is used to express a past act or state, and corresponds to the English *past* tense.

172. The endings of the perfect indicative active are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	**-ī**	**-imus**
2d person	**-istī**	**-istis**
3d person	**-it**	**-ērunt**

173. All verbs of all conjugations use these same endings in the perfect, though they do not all form their perfect stems in the same way. Hereafter the perfect of any verb can be inflected when the stem is given. For instance, the perfect stem of the verb *to be* is **fu-**. The tense is inflected as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.	**fuī,**	I was	**fuimus,**	we were
2.	**fuistī,**	you were	**fuistis,**	you were
3.	**fuit,**	he, etc., was	**fuērunt,**	they were

174. Verbs of the first conjugation regularly form the perfect stem by adding **v** to the present stem. Remember that in this conjugation the present stem ends in **ā**, though the first person ends in **ō**. So, **laudā** + **v** = **laudāv-**, the perfect stem.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.	**laudāvī,**	I praised	**laudāvimus,**	we praised
2.	**laudāvistī,**	you praised	**laudāvistis,**	you praised
3.	**laudāvit,**	he, etc., praised	**laudāvērunt,**	they praised

Inflect the perfects of **commeō, importō, spectō.**

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

175. The degrees of comparison are the same as in English — positive, comparative, and superlative. In **157** it was said that the comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior, -ius,** to the base of the positive. The superlative is regularly formed by adding **-issimus, -issima, -issimum,** to the base. Examples:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fortis, brave	**fortior,** braver	**fortissimus,** bravest
nōbilis, noble	**nōbilior,** nobler	**nōbilissimus,** noblest

176. But just as in English *good* is compared irregularly, *good, better, best,* so in Latin a few common adjectives are compared irregularly. **Māgnus** is one of them. See App. **42.**

177. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Spectāvimus. 2. Commeāvistī. 3. Fuērunt. 4. Orgetorīgem laudāvī. 5. Germānōs laudāvērunt. 6. Fortissimōs laudāvit. 7. Fortissimī fuērunt. 8. Nōbilissimī fuistis. 9. Dītissimus fuistī. 10. Germānus Gallōs laudāvit. 11. Pars fuit nōbilis. 12. Flūmina fuērunt māgna.

II. 1. We imported. 2. He praised. 3. I was. 4. You were. 5. I praised the German. 6. They praised the rivers. 7. They were the most wealthy. 8. He was the best known.

III. 1. Gallōrum omnium dītissimus fuit Orgetorīx. 2. Dītissimus est propterea quod ea in prōvinciās importat. 3. Helvētiī fuērunt fortissimī omnium quī in Galliā incolunt. 4. Germānōs laudāvērunt quī continenter cum Gallīs bella gerunt. 5. Rhodanus et Rhēnus fuērunt flūmina nōbilissima.

NOTES

178. The perfect tense is sometimes translated by *have;* as, **laudāvī**, *I have praised.* But as this meaning is not common in Caesar, practice on it may be postponed.

179. **Longē** is an adverb from the adjective **longus**. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base instead of the nominative ending **-us**. Example: **longus**, *long*, base **long-** + **ē** = **longē**, *far*. See **longissimē** and **minimē**, **69**.

180. **Dītissimus** is contracted from **dīvitissimus**.

LESSON XXV

181. **TEXT**

Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit,

182. VOCABULARY

is, ea, id he, she, it; this, that
Mārcus, -ī, (*abbr.* **M.**) M., Marcus
Messāla, -ae, M., Messala
Pīsō, Pīsōnis, M., Piso
cōnsul, cōnsulis, M., consul
rēgnum, -ī, N., sovereignty, kingly *or* royal power
cupiditās, -ātis, F., desire
inductus, -a, -um led on, influenced, induced
coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F., swearing together, conspiracy
nōbilitās, -ātis, F., the nobility, nobles
fēcit (*perfect*) made

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *IS*

183. The demonstrative (from **dēmōnstrō,** *I point out*) pronouns are so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer. They are used either alone, as substantives, or with nouns, as adjectives. They have no vocative forms.

184. Is, *he, this, that,* is the weakest of the demonstratives, and refers to some object just mentioned or to one to be explained by a relative. The Latin has no personal pronouns of the third person, and the forms of **is** are frequently used instead; but the English *he* and *they,* used as subjects, are not often expressed in Latin, for they are implied in the endings of the verb.

185. Learn thoroughly the singular forms of **is,** observing when its stem **i-** is changed to **e-**, and when its terminations differ from those of **māgnus.**

Is, *he, this, that,* **ea,** *she, this, that,* **id,** *it, this, that*

SINGULAR

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**is**	**ea**	**id**
Gen.	**ēius**	**ēius**	**ēius**
Dat.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**
Acc.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**
Abl.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**

Note the singular forms of **is** in the preceding lessons.

Inflect the nouns **lingua, animus, lēx, flūmen,** in each case modified by the appropriate form of **is**: thus, **ea lingua, ēius linguae, eī linguae,** etc.

186. EXERCISES

I. Helvetians — among the Helvetians — Orgetorix was wealthiest — Orgetorix was by far the most noted — a con-

sul — consuls — in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso — royal power — a desire of royal power — influenced by a desire of royal power — he made a conspiracy of the nobles.

II. 1. Ēius flūminis. 2. Eī Gallō. 3. Cum eō cōnsule. 4. Ad eam cupiditātem. 5. Apud cōnsulēs. 6. In eā coniūrātiōne. 7. In id proelium. 8. Trāns eam partem. 9. Pars ēius bellī. 10. Coniūrātiōnēs fēcērunt. 11. Eum laudāvī. 12. Eam laudāvistī.

III. 1. They praised it. 2. We praised her. 3. Of that mind. 4. To that language. 5. In that law. 6. With that merchant. 7. Into that beginning.

IV. 1. That Helvetian was the most noted of the Gauls. 2. In that battle were the wealthiest of the Celts. 3. The bravest of the Gauls made conspiracies. 4. The Germans influenced by that desire made war.

187. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quis (*who*) fuit apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus? Nōnne Orgetorīx fuit dīves? (Ita, dītissimus fuit.) Quis fēcit coniūrātiōnem? Cūr fēcit coniūrātiōnem? Quī (*who*) fuērunt cōnsulēs? Fuitne Orgetorīx Helvētius (*an Helvetian*)? Fuēruntne M. Messāla et M. Pīsō Helvētiī? (Minimē vērō [*no, indeed*], fuērunt Rōmānī.) Fuitne Orgetorīx nōbilis? Ita (*yes*), vērō, nōbilissimus.

NOTES

188. M. in **181** stands for **Mārcō**, the ablative, to agree with **Messālā**.

189. The phrase **M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus** means literally *Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso being consuls.* English uses the *nominative* absolute; Latin, the *ablative* absolute. But Latin uses its absolute construction so very much more than English does, that it must not usually be translated literally. Here translate, *in the consulship of Marcus,* etc. See App. **150**.

190. The Romans had two consuls at the same time, who corresponded somewhat to American presidents. New consuls were elected every year, and the Romans regularly gave dates by naming the consuls for the year, instead of counting the years from some important event as modern nations do from the birth of Christ.

191. Nouns of the third declension ending in **-tās, -tātis,** and **-iō, -iōnis,** are always feminine.

192. The demonstrative regularly stands before the noun with which it agrees.

LESSON XXVI

193. TEXT

Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.[1]

194. VOCABULARY

cīvitās, -ātis, F., state, citizens (*of the state*)
persuāsit (*perfect*) persuaded
ut or **utī,** *conj.*, that, so that
cōpia, -ae, F., abundance, supply; (*in pl.*) forces, troops
exīrent (they should) go forth, leave

195. *IS* (continued)

PLURAL

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**eī (iī)**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**
Acc.	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Abl.	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**	**eīs (iīs)**

Note the plural forms of **is** in the preceding lessons.

Inflect the plurals of **lingua, lēx, flūmen,** in each case modified by the appropriate form of **is.**

Inflect together **Mārcus Pīsō, fīnis suus, omnis cōpia.**

[1] It is thought best to omit the words of the original text, **perfacile . . . potīrī,** and thus to postpone the accusative and infinitive construction.

196. EXERCISES

I. 1. Ea flūmina. 2. Eīs cōnsulibus. 3. Eōrum animōrum. 4. Eārum cōpiārum. 5. In eīs coniūrātiōnibus. 6. Ad ea bella. 7. Trāns eās partēs. 8. Ab eīs prōvinciīs. 9. Apud eōs Germānōs. 10. Nōbilitātī persuāsērunt. 11. Germānīs persuāsimus. 12. Eīs persuāsī.

II. 1. You persuaded them. 2. I persuaded the Helvetians. 3. Of those states. 4. Of those battles. 5. With those desires. 6. In those laws. 7. To those customs.

III. 1. M. Messālā cōnsule Orgetorīx cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē Galliā exīrent. 2. Eīs persuāsimus, quod omnium fortissimī sunt. 3. Eī Germānī sunt dītissimī omnium quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt. 4. Cōnsulēs M. Pīsō et M. Messāla fuērunt in Galliā. 5. Eī mercātōrēs saepe ad cōnsulēs commeāvērunt.

IV. 1. We persuaded the citizens to go out. 2. You persuaded him because he is braver. 3. The consul Messala persuaded all the troops. 4. You imported all those things among the Germans.

NOTES

197. A direct object would be expected with **persuāsit** to express the person persuaded, but Latin uses a dative, *he persuaded* (i.e., *used persuasive arguments*) *to the citizens*. See App. **115**.

198. Ut . . . exīrent means, literally, *that they should go*; but is better translated *to go*.

LESSON XXVII

199. TEXT

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō,

200. VOCABULARY

hīc, haec, hōc, *dem. pron.*, this
facile, *adv.*, easily
undique, *adv.*, on all sides
locus, -ī, M., place, position
nātūra, -ae, F., nature, character
ē (*before consonants*), **ex** (*before vowels and consonants*), *prep. with abl.*, from, out of, on
ūnā ex parte on one side

201. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *HĪC*

The demonstrative **hīc**, *this*, is used of what is near in time, thought, or position, very much as is the English *this*. Learn the declension of **hīc**, comparing its forms with those of **is** and **māgnus**.

Hīc, *this*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**hīc**	**haec**	**hōc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**hūius**	**hūius**	**hūius**	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hōc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

Note the forms of **hīc** employed in the text of the preceding lessons. Inflect together **hīc animus, haec lingua, hōc bellum.**

202. EXERCISES

I. He persuaded— he persuaded the citizens (state) — he persuaded the citizens to go forth — to go forth from their territory — easily — more easily — he persuaded them more easily — he persuaded them [to do] this more easily on this account — nature — by the nature — by the nature of the place — is bounded — are bounded — the Helvetians are bounded by the nature of the place — on one side — by the river Rhine.

II. 1. Huic bellō. 2. Hūius animī. 3. Hōc bellō. 4. Hīs causīs. 5. Hunc Pīsōnem. 6. Hārum coniūrātiōnum. 7. Hae cīvitātēs. 8. Hīs cīvitātibus persuāsit. 9. Ex hīs locīs. 10. Ex hōc flūmine.

III. 1. Of this battle. 2. In this place. 3. Of these forces. 4. With these Helvetians. 5. To this custom. 6. Out of this state. 7. I persuaded the Gauls.

IV. 1. Hōc facilius Belgīs persuāsērunt, quod mercātōrēs minimē saepe ad eōs commeant. 2. Undique continentur, quod flūmina sunt māgna. 3. Hīc locus est dīvīsus in trēs partēs. 4. Hīs Germānīs persuāsistis ut dē eō locō exīrent. 5. Ūnā ex parte Belgae hōc flūmine continentur.

NOTES

203. **Id** is the *direct* object of **persuāsit**; **eīs**, the *indirect* object. Latin says, *he persuaded this to them.* See **197**.

204. **Hōc** is the *ablative of cause*, meaning *on this account*. See App. **138**.

205. **Nātūrā** is the *ablative of means*, meaning *by (means of) the nature*, etc. See App. **143**.

206. **Continentur** is the plural of **continētur** and may be translated *are shut in*.

207. The comparative degree of adverbs formed from adjectives is the accusative singular neuter of the adjective in the comparative degree. Thus **facilius**, the comparative of the adverb **facile**, is the accusative neuter singular comparative of the adjective **facilis**, from which the adverb **facile** is derived.

LESSON XXVIII

208. TEXT

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs;

209. VOCABULARY

lātus, -a, -um broad, wide
altus, -a, -um high, deep
ager, agrī, M., field, country, territory
Helvētius (Helvēticus), -a, -um Helvetian, of the Helvetians
alter, altera, alterum the other (*of two*), second
Iūra, -ae, M., Jura, *the mountain range extending from the Rhine to the Rhone*

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN *-ius*

210. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in **-īus** (in **alter** usually **-ĭus**) and the dative singular in **-ī**, in all genders, but are otherwise regular. These are **alius,** *another;* **sōlus,** *only;* **ūllus,** *any;* **ūnus,** *one;* **tōtus,** *whole;* **nūllus,** *no;* **alter,** *the other;* **uter,** *which* (of two); **neuter,** *neither.*

211. Learn the declension of **ūnus, alius, tōtus,** and **alter,** comparing, in the singular, the genitive and dative forms with those of **is,** and other forms with those of **māgnus.** Note the ending **-ud** in the neuter of **alius.**

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
	Mas.	*Fem*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**	**tōtus**	**tōta**	**tōtum**
Gen.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**tōtīus**	**tōtīus**	**tōtīus**
Dat.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**tōtī**	**tōtī**	**tōtī**
Acc.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**	**tōtum**	**tōtam**	**tōtum**
Abl.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**	**tōtō**	**tōtā**	**tōtō**

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterius	alterius	alterius
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in **māgnus.**

212. SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN *-er*

Most nouns of the second declension whose stem ends in **ro** do not form the nominative in **-us** but drop the stem vowel and insert **e** (if not already present) before the **r**, as in the paradigm of **ager** given below.

The vocative is the same as the nominative. In other respects the terminations are as in **animus.** These nouns are all masculine.

Ager, M., *field*

Stem **agro-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	ager	agrī
Gen.	agrī	agrōrum
Dat.	agrō	agrīs
Acc.	agrum	agrōs
Voc.	ager	agrī
Abl.	agrō	agrīs

213. EXERCISES

I. He persuaded them — persuaded them easily — the Helvetians are shut in by nature — on one side — on a second side — high, deep — a very high mountain — very high mountains — a deep river — by the very broad and deep river — the Rhine is broad and deep — the Rhine which separates — the Helvetian territory — between — the river is between the Sequani and the Helvetians.

II. 1. Partis ūnīus. 2. Montī alterī. 3. Agrō tōtī. 4. Causae alterius. 5. Flūminis alterius. 6. Locō aliī. 7. Bellō aliō. 8. Agrōrum aliōrum. 9. Eum laudāvistī. 10. Eī persuāsērunt. 11. Alia bella gerunt.

III. 1. He easily persuaded them of this. 2. It is bounded on the second side by Mount Jura. 3. The river Rhone separates our province from the Helvetians. 4. For this reason they wage war with the Germans. 5. Led on by a desire of supreme power they contend in almost daily battles.

214. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quis persuāsit eīs ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent? Quod flūmen est ūnā ex parte? Quod flūmen dīvidit agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs? Quī mōns (*what mountain*) est alterā ex parte? Quī lacus est tertiā ex parte? Quī mōns est inter

Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs? Estne mōns Iūra altus? (Est altissimus.) Quod flūmen prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit?

NOTES

215. Flūmine and **monte** are *ablatives of means*. See **205.**

LESSON XXIX

216. TEXT

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

217. VOCABULARY

lacū (by the) lake

(**lacus**) **Lemannus, -ī,** M., (lake) Lemannus *or* Geneva

noster, nostra, nostrum, *genitive* **nostrī,** etc., our, ours

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

218. Learn the inflection of the relative pronoun **quī**, comparing its forms with those of **māgnus, alius,** and **is.**

Quī, *who, which*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cūius**	**cūius**	**cūius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

219. Since a relative pronoun always means the same person or thing as its antecedent, it must have the same gender and number. For example: in *the German who praises*, *who* means the same person as *German*, and

must be masculine singular like it; in *the Germans who praise, who* must be masculine plural. But in *the German who praises, who* is the subject of the verb; in *the German whom I praise, whom* is the object. In both sentences the relative in Latin must be masculine singular, but in one it will be nominative, in the other, accusative.

*RULE. **A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of its own clause.***

Examine all the uses of the relative found so far, and see how this rule applies.

220. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Germānus quī laudāvit. 2. Germānus quem laudāvī. 3. Germānus quī persuāsit. 4. Germānus cui persuāsimus. 5. Flūmina quae dīvidunt. 6. Flūmina quae laudātis. 7. Celtae quī important. 8. Celtae ad quōs importātis. 9. Nostra prōvincia, quae est māgna. 10. Germānōs laudāvit quī fortēs sunt. 11. Belgīs persuāsērunt quōs laudāvērunt. 12. Eī quī dītissimī sunt bellum gerunt. 13. Eōs laudāvit quī bellum gerunt. 14. Eī Germānī quī nōbilissimī sunt bella gerunt.

II. 1. The war which you praise. 2. The wars which you praised. 3. Those who persuaded. 4. Those whom you persuaded. 5. The place which is bounded. 6. The mountains which are highest. 7. The rivers which are deepest. 8. Lake Geneva, which is very deep. 9. The Helvetians, who are shut in.

NOTES

221. **Tertiā** is in the same construction as **ūnā** and **alterā**. **Ex parte** is understood with it.

222. Adjectives of the first and second declensions (like **noster**) whose stems end in **ro** form the nominative and vocative masculine like noun stems in **ro** (**212**). The other terminations are as in **māgnus**. See App. **31**.

223. Remember that **is** is the demonstrative most used as the antecedent of a relative. See **184**.

LESSON XXX

224. TEXT

Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent;

225. VOCABULARY

rēbus, *abl.*, things
fīēbat it happened, the result was
et . . . et both . . . and
minus, *comp. adv.* [*compare* **minimē,** least], less
lātē, *adv.* [**lātus,** wide], widely, extensively
vagārentur (they) roamed, wandered
fīnitimī, -ōrum, M. [**fīnēs**], neighbors
īnferre to bring, make, *or* wage upon
possent could, were able

IMPERFECT TENSE

226. It has been seen that the *perfect* expresses simply a past act or state. The *imperfect* is also a past tense, but besides telling that the act or state was past, it also tells that it was *still going on* at the past time. For example: **laudāvit** means *he praised;* it simply tells a past fact: **laudābat** means *he was praising;* it tells that the act is past, and also that it was still going on at the past time one is thinking about. Sometimes **laudābat** must be translated by *he praised,* because English is not as precise in the use of tenses as Latin is.

227. The first conjugation forms the imperfect indicative active by adding **-bā-** to the present stem, as a tense-sign, and using the same endings as in the present, except that the first person ends in **-m.**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.	laudā**bam**	I was praising	laudā**bāmus**	we were praising
2.	laudā**bās**	you were praising	laudā**bātis**	you were praising
3.	laudā**bat**	he was praising	laudā**bant**	they were praising

228. The imperfect of the verb *to be* uses the same endings, but a different tense-sign.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.	er**am**	I was	er**āmus**	we were
2.	er**ās**	you were	er**ātis**	you were
3.	er**at**	he was	er**ant**	they were

Notice that the meanings given are the same as for the perfect (see **173**); but the distinction given in **226** holds good in Latin.

229. All other verbs are inflected in the imperfect with **-bam, etc.**, like **laudō.** The student can not yet be sure of forming the imperfect correctly from the present, but if he is given any imperfect form he can inflect the whole tense.

230. EXERCISES

I. Things — these things — from these things — it happened — the result was that they wandered — that they wandered widely — less widely — the result was that they could make war upon — to make war upon their neighbors.

II. 1. Commeābāmus. 2. Importābant. 3. Spectābātis. 4. Effēminābās. 5. Importābam. 6. Eī quī laudābant. 7. Germānī quī importābant. 8. Partēs quae erant māgnae. 9. Erātis fortissimī. 10. Fīnitimīs quī erant dītissimī persuāsērunt.

III. 1. You were importing. 2. They were looking. 3. He was praising. 4. Those who were importing. 5. Those who were best known were importing. 6. They persuaded those whom they were praising.

IV. 1. Helvētiī, quī erant omnium Gallōrum fortissimī, fīnitimīs persuāsērunt. 2. Et Helvētiī et Belgae, quī fortissimī erant, coniūrātiōnēs fēcērunt. 3. Omnibus mercātōribus quī apud Gallōs erant persuāsit ut dē Galliā exīrent. 4. Omnēs quī cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt et fortissimī et nōbilissimī sunt.

NOTES

231. hīs rēbus, *because of (from, in consequence of,* or *on account of) these things.* See **204.**

232. Although **fīēbat** might be translated by *it happened,* it really means *the resulting condition of things was.* The perfect would have meant simply *it happened.* Notice that Caesar is *describing the condition* of things which led to the plan of leaving home. Compare the perfects **fēcit** and **persuāsit** in **193.** They simply state past facts.

233. Fīnitimīs is the dative, the *indirect* object of **īnferre**; **bellum** being the *direct* object. See **203**. Translate, *to make war upon their neighbors*. Most verbs compounded with the preposition **in** take such a dative. See App. **116**.

LESSON XXXI

234. TEXT

Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur,

235. VOCABULARY

homō, -inis, M., man
bellandī, 1, of making war, fighting
cupidus, -a, -um desirous, eager, fond
dolor, dolōris, M., pain, grief, vexation
afficiēbantur were affected, filled, seized (with)
prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, for, in proportion to, considering
multitūdō, -inis, F., great number, multitude
autem, *conj.*, moreover, but, yet
glōria, -ae, F., glory, renown
fortitūdō, -inis, F. [**fortis**], courage, bravery
angustus, -a, -um limited, narrow
sē themselves
habēre to have, hold, possess
arbitrābantur (they) thought

236. EXERCISES

I. From this consideration — men — men fond of warring — a man fond of war — great vexation — they were filled with great vexation — in proportion to, considering — considering the great number of men — considering [their] renown in (of) war and [their] courage — they thought they had.

II. 1. Bellātis. 2. Bellābās. 3. Bellāvimus. 4. Dolor erat māgnus. 5. Multitūdō erat māgna. 6. Hominēs fu-

ērunt bellandī cupidī. 7. Hominibus persuāsērunt. 8. Bellum hominibus īnferre. 9. Glōriae cupidus. 10. Fīnēs erant angustī. 11. Fortitūdō hominum. 12. Fīnitimī erant glōriae cupidissimī.

III. 1. They fought. 2. He was fighting. 3. The glory was great. 4. They were eager for (of) glory. 5. I persuaded the men. 6. They were most fond of fighting. 7. A man influenced by grief.

IV. 1. From this consideration the men were filled with great vexation. 2. The Gauls, who are fond of making war, were seized with the desire for royal power. 3. Those who make war often contend with great valor. 4. The man who made this conspiracy was influenced (**inductus est**) by the laws of the state. 5. The Belgae, who are bravest of all the Gauls, often contend in battle with their neighbors.



TROPHY OF GALLIC ARMS, COIN OF CAESAR

NOTES

237. Quā ex parte, literally *from which part,* may be translated *from which* (or *this*) *consideration,* or *on this account.*

238. Bellandī is the genitive of the verbal noun. **Cupidus** is regularly followed by the genitive in Latin, though it may be translated by either *desirous of fighting* or *eager to fight.*

239. In **afficiēbantur** notice the passive sign **-ur** added to the imperfect. This imperfect, like the preceding **flēbat** and the following **arbitrābantur,** is part of the description of things at the time in mind. See **226**.

240. *Considering their renown of war and of bravery* is Latin, not English. Translate freely, for example: *considering their renown in war and their reputation for bravery.*

241. Habēre is the infinitive; **sē** is the accusative, subject of the infinitive (see App. **123**); **fīnēs** is the accusative, object of **habēre.** The literal meaning is *thought themselves to have narrow limits.* But this is not English: it must be translated *thought that they had,* etc.

242. Notice that although **arbitrābantur** has a passive ending it is translated like an active verb. A good many Latin verbs have passive forms and active meanings. They are called *deponents.*

LESSON XXXII

243. TEXT

Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

244. VOCABULARY

longitūdō, -inis, F. [**longus,** long], length
mīlia, -ium, N., thousands
passus, -ūs, M., pace
mīlia passuum miles
ducentī, -ae, -a (*abbr.* **CC**) two hundred
quadrāgintā (*abbr.* **XL**), *indecl. numeral,* forty
lātitūdō, -inis, F. [**lātus**], width, breadth
centum (*abbr.* **C**), *indecl. numeral,* a hundred
octōgintā (*abbr.* **LXXX**), *indecl. numeral,* eighty
patēbant extended

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

245. Masculine and feminine nouns of the fourth declension form the nominative by adding **s** to the stem vowel **u.** The genitive singular ending is **-ūs.** Most nouns in **-us** are masculine. For exceptions see App. **29,** *a.*

246. The stem vowel (characteristic) **u** appears in all the cases, except in the dative and ablative plural where it is generally changed to **i.**

	Passus, M., *pace*	**Lacus,** M., *lake*	**Cornū,** N., *horn*
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	**passus**	**lacus**	**cornū**
Gen.	**passūs**	**lacūs**	**cornūs (-ū)**
Dat.	**passuī**	**lacuī**	**cornū**
Acc.	**passum**	**lacum**	**cornū**
Voc.	**passus**	**lacus**	**cornū**
Abl.	**passū**	**lacū**	**cornū**
		PLURAL	
Nom.	**passūs**	**lacūs**	**cornua**
Gen.	**passuum**	**lacuum**	**cornuum**
Dat.	**passibus**	**lacubus**	**cornibus**
Acc.	**passūs**	**lacūs**	**cornua**
Voc.	**passūs**	**lacūs**	**cornua**
Abl.	**passibus**	**lacubus**	**cornibus**

Like **passus** inflect **cultus, occāsus.** Inflect together **māgnus cultus.**

247. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Occāsuī. 2. Cultūs. 3. Trēs passūs. 4. Quadrāgintā mīlia passuum. 5. Fīnēs quōs incolunt. 6. Lacus quī dīvidit. 7. Pars māgnī lacūs. 8. Ab occāsū sōlis. 9. Ad occāsum sōlis. 10. Longitūdō lacuum omnium. 11. In lacū māgnō. 12. In lacūs nōbilēs.

II. 1. Of the west. 2. For cultivation. 3. Of these lakes. 4. Of that lake. 5. The lake which is well known. 6. Forty paces. 7. The length of a pace. 8. The breadth of this lake.

III. 1. Hīc lacus in longitūdinem octōgintā mīlia passuum patēbat. 2. Eī quī Helvētiī appellantur angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quod bellandī cupidī erant. 3. Helvētiī et Celtae fortitūdine differunt propterea quod Helvētiī saepe cum Germānīs bellum gerunt. 4. Eī quī trāns lacum erant hīs persuāsērunt ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent. 5. Hī omnēs bellandī cupiditāte inductī saepe cum Helvētiīs contendunt.

248. **LATIN QUESTIONS**

Quid fīēbat hīs rēbus? Quī vagābantur (*wandered*) minus lātē? Poterantne (*could*) Helvētiī fīnitimīs bellum facile īnferre? Quī arbitrābantur angustōs fīnēs sē habēre? Quam longē (*how far*) patēbant fīnēs Helvētiōrum? Quot mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēbant fīnēs Helvētiōrum? Quis Helvētiīs persuāsit? Nōnne Helvētiōrum fīnēs angustī erant? Fuitne multitūdō Helvētiōrum māgna? Habēbantne hī glōriam bellī? Habēsne (*have you*) māgnam fortitūdinem?

NOTES

249. **Mīlia** is an accusative. See App. **130**. There is the same use of the objective in English.

250. Longitūdō is formed of the adjective **longus,** *long*, and the ending **-tūdō.** Nouns with this ending are of the feminine gender. By means of this ending, form nouns from **sōlus,** *alone;* **grātus,** *pleasing*, *grateful;* **fortis,** *brave;* **lātus,** *wide;* **altus,** *high.*

251. The Roman foot (**pēs**) was a little less than 11⅔ inches in length. The **passus** consisted of five **pedēs,** and was therefore about 4 feet and 10 inches in length. The **passus** was the measure of the stride made from the place where the foot is lifted to the point where the same foot is again put down. As no English measure represents its length, the Roman term may be used in translating, or *pace* may be used, remembering that it is really a double pace. The Roman mile (**mīlle passuum**) consisted of one thousand **passūs.**

252. The cardinal numerals from **quattuor** (*four*) to **centum** are indeclinable. The cardinals for hundreds (e.g., **ducentī**) are declined like the plural of **māgnus.**

LESSON XXXIII

REVIEW

253. In order to explain why he had to fight with the Helvetians Caesar begins his narrative by telling of things that happened about three years before he went to Gaul. Although the Gauls were a partially civilized people, having walled towns, roads, and bridges, they were not yet settled enough to have forgotten the habits of their ancestors, who had wandered about in vast hordes with their wives and children and all their property, ravaging the country and settling where they liked. This chapter and a few which follow tell how the Helvetians decided to renew this old habit.

I. Write a good English translation of Chap. II. (p. 233). Beware of "translation English." That is, do not use words or arrangements of words which are borrowed from the Latin and which would not be used ordinarily in writing English. Do not make men always "wage war," instead of "fight." Do not say "Messala being consul," instead of "in the consulship of," etc.

II. Review the vocabularies in **121** and **168**.

VOCABULARY

afficiēbantur	**apud**	**cīvitās, -ātis,** F.
ager, -grī, M.	**arbitrābantur**	**coniūrātiō, -ōnis,** F.
alter, -a, -um	**autem**	**cōnsul, -ulis,** M.
altus, -a, -um	**bellō**	**cōpia, -ae,** F.
angustus, -a, -um	**centum**	**cultus, -ūs,** M.

cupiditās, -ātis, F.
cupidus, -a, -um
dīves, dīvitis
dolor, -ōris, M.
ducentī, -ae, -a
ē, ex
et . . . et
exīrent
facile
fēcit
fīēbat
fīnitimī, -ōrum, M.
fortitūdō, -inis, F.
fuit
glōria, -ae, F.
habēre
Helvētius, -a, -um
hīc
homō, -inis, M.
inductus, ā, -um
īnferre
is
lacus, -ūs, M.
lātē
lātitūdō, -inis, F.
lātus, -a, -um
locus, -ī, M.
longē
longitūdō, -inis, F.
mīlia, -ium
minus
multitūdō, -inis, F.
nātūra, -ae, F.
nōbilis, -e
nōbilitās, -ātis, F.
noster, -tra, -trum
octōgintā
passus, -ūs, M.
patēbant
persuāsit
possent
prō
quadrāgintā
rēbus
rēgnum, -ī, N.
sum
undique
ut, utī
vagārentur

III. Decline **is, hīc, quī, ager tōtus, multitūdō alia, cornū aliud, passus.**

Inflect the present, imperfect, and perfect of **importō.**

Compare **fortis, nōbilis, lātus, altus.**

IV. Stem vowel of fourth declension? Gender of fourth declension nouns? What numerals are not declined? Meanings of comparative and superlative? Endings of each? Declension of each? Comparison of adverbs? How are adverbs formed from adjectives in **-us**? Gender of nouns in **-tās, -tātis**; **-iō, -iōnis**; **-tūdō, -tūdinis**? Why are demonstrative pronouns so called? Meaning and use of **is**? Latin for *he?* Meaning of **hīc**? Position of demonstratives? Rule for the agreement of relatives? Formation of perfect tense? Meaning of perfect tense? Formation of imperfect tense? Meaning of imperfect tense? What are deponent verbs? Make up an English example to illustrate the ablative absolute; the ablative of cause; the ablative of means. What case is used with **persuāsī**? With verbs compounded with **in**? With **cupidus**? What construction is used after a verb meaning *think?* Tell about the Roman consuls; the Roman foot, pace, and mile.

LESSON XXXIV

254. **TEXT**

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre,

255. VOCABULARY

adductus, -a, -um influenced
auctōritās, -ātis, F., authority, advice
permōtus, -a, -um moved, aroused
cōnstituērunt they decided, determined
proficīscendum, *acc. of verbal noun,* departing, leaving
pertinērent pertained to
comparāre, 1, to prepare, get ready

FIFTH DECLENSION

256. The stem ends in **ē,** nominative in **s.** The **e** is short in the accusative singular of all nouns and in the genitive and dative singular of **fidēs, spēs,** and **rēs.** Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except **diēs,** which is usually masculine. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension which are fully declined in the plural.

	Diēs, M., *day*		**Rēs,** F., *thing, affair*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**diēs**	**diēs**	**rēs**	**rēs**
Gen.	**diēī**	**diērum**	**reī**	**rērum**
Dat.	**diēī**	**diēbus**	**reī**	**rēbus**
Acc.	**diem**	**diēs**	**rem**	**rēs**
Voc.	**diēs**	**diēs**	**rēs**	**rēs**
Abl.	**diē**	**diēbus**	**rē**	**rēbus**

257. EXERCISES

I. These things — by these things — influenced by these things — aroused — aroused by the authority — they determined — they determined to prepare those things — those things which — which were necessary for (pertained to) the departure.

II. 1. Three days. 2. Of all days. 3. To this day. 4. Of that thing. 5. Of those things. 6. The things which they were preparing. 7. Influenced by this thing. 8. The glory of all these things. 9. Eager for those things.

III. 1. Hāc rē adductus Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem fēcit et cōnstituit ea quae ad bellandum pertinērent comparāre.

2. Helvētiīs persuāsit ut dē eō locō quī trāns lacum Lemannum est exīrent. 3. Helvētiī arbitrābantur sē angustōs fīnēs habēre quod undique monte et flūmine et lacū continentur. 4. Hīs rēbus inductī et bellandī cupidī cōnstituērunt cum Orgetorīge exīre (*to go out*) et cum Gallīs bellum gerere (*to make*). 5. Quā dē causā Helvētiī appellantur omnium fortissimī quī Galliam incolunt.

258. LATIN QUESTIONS

Cūius auctōritāte (*by whose advice*) permovēbantur Helvētiī? Quid cōnstituērunt facere (*to do*)? Quis fuit Orgetorīx? Nōnne Orgetorīx nōbilis Helvētius fuit?

NOTES

259. Caesar has finished the description of conditions and begins again to tell what the Helvetians did; so he stops using the imperfect and uses the perfect.

260. **Ea** means *those things*. **Eās rēs** would have meant the same thing. The neuter plural of pronouns and of some adjectives is often used in the sense of *things*.

261. **Ad-ductus,** *led to*, and **in-ductus** (see **181**), *led into*, mean about the same thing.

LESSON XXXV

FIRST CONJUGATION: INDICATIVE ACTIVE

262. The indicative mode has six tenses, three of which have already been given. The *present* means that the action or state of the verb is going on at the present time: **laudō,** *I praise, I am praising, I do praise.*

The *imperfect* means that the action was going on at a past time: **laudābam,** *I was praising, I praised.*

The *future* means that the action will take place in the future: **laudābō,** *I shall* (or *will*) *praise, I shall be praising.*

The *perfect* has two uses:

a. It means that the action is completed at the present time (*perfect definite*): **laudāvī,** *I have praised.*

b. Or it means that the action took place in the past (*perfect indefinite*): **laudāvī**, *I praised.*

The *pluperfect* means that the action was already completed at a past time, or that it took place before another past act: **laudāveram,** *I had praised.*

The *future perfect* means that the action will be completed in the future, **laudāverō,** *I shall* (or *will*) *have praised.*

263. All the personal endings that are used in this mode have already been given.

For all tenses except the perfect they are:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.	**-ō** or **-m**	(I)	**-mus**	(we)
2.	**-s**	(thou, you)	**-tis**	(you)
3.	**-t**	(he, she, it)	**-nt**	(they)

For the perfect they are:

1.	**-ī**	(I)	**-imus**	(we)
2.	**-istī**	(thou, you)	**-istis**	(you)
3.	**-it**	(he, she, it)	**-ērunt** or **-ēre**	(they)

264. The *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* are formed on the *present stem*, which in **laudō** is **laudā-**.

The *present* is formed by adding the personal endings directly to this present stem.

The *imperfect* is formed by adding the endings to the present stem + the tense sign **-bā-**: **laudābā-**.

The *future* is formed by adding the endings to the present stem + the tense sign **-bi-**: **laudābi-**.

265. The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* are formed on the *perfect stem*, which in the first conjugation is made by adding **v** to the present stem: **laudāv-**.

The *perfect* is formed by adding the endings directly to this stem.

The *pluperfect* is formed by adding the endings to the perfect stem + the tense sign **-erā-**: **laudāverā-**.

The *future perfect* is formed by adding the endings to the perfect stem + the tense sign **-eri-**: **laudāveri-**.

266. The *infinitive* is formed by adding **-re** to the present stem: **laudāre,** *to praise.* So **comparāre,** *to prepare.* The infinitive is not part of the indicative mode, but is usually called a separate mode.

267. From the first person present it is not possible to be sure whether a verb belongs to the first conjugation or not. But if it is known that the

infinitive ends in **-āre** one may be sure that it does belong to the first conjugation. All but a very few verbs form their tenses regularly on the present and perfect stems, but many form the perfect stem in a different way from **laudō**. Both the present and perfect stems must be known. So in learning every new verb the first person singular present, the infinitive, and the first person singular perfect must be learned. In a later lesson will be found the reason for learning one more form, the *supine*. These four forms are called the *principal parts*. The principal parts of **laudō** are **laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum.**

268. Learn the paradigm of **laudō**. Although the endings are as given above, yet they sometimes combine with the preceding vowel and sometimes change it; so it is more convenient to print the endings as if they were, for instance, **-ō, -ās, -at, -āmus, -ātis, -ant,** including the vowel of the stem or tense sign with the personal ending.

Laudō, *I praise*

Principal parts: **laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum**

ACTIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MODE

Present

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.	laud**ō**	I praise	laud**āmus**	we praise
2.	laud**ās**	you praise	laud**ātis**	you praise
3.	laud**at**	he praises	laud**ant**	they praise

Imperfect

1.	laud**ābam**	I was praising	laud**ābāmus**	we were praising
2.	laud**ābās**	you were praising	laud**ābātis**	you were praising
3.	laud**ābat**	he was praising	laud**ābant**	they were praising

Future

1.	laud**ābō**	I shall praise	laud**ābimus**	we shall praise
2.	laud**ābis**	you will praise	laud**ābitis**	you will praise
3.	laud**ābit**	he will praise	laud**ābunt**	they will praise

Perfect

1.	laudāv**ī**	I praised	laudāv**imus**	we praised
2.	laudāv**istī**	you praised	laudāv**istis**	you praised
3.	laudāv**it**	he praised	laudāv**ērunt**	they praised

Pluperfect

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.	**laudāveram**	I had praised	**laudāverāmus**	we had praised
2.	**laudāverās**	you had praised	**laudāverātis**	you had praised
3.	**laudāverat**	he had praised	**laudāverant**	they had praised

Future Perfect

1.	laudāverō	I shall have praised	laudāverimus	we shall have praised
2.	laudāveris	you will have praised	laudāveritis	you will have praised
3.	laudāverit	he will have praised	laudāverint	they will have praised

Learn the principal parts of the following verbs:

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum call
bellō, -āre,-āvī, -ātum make war
commeō, -āre,-āvī, -ātum go back and forth
comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum prepare
effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum weaken
importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum import
laudō, -āre, -āvī,-ātum praise
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum look

Conjugate the indicative of each of these.

269. EXERCISES

I. 1. Importātis. 2. Importābitis. 3. Importāverimus. 4. Commeāvimus. 5. Commeāverāmus. 6. Commeābam. 7. Appellābis. 8. Appellāverant. 9. Appellāverint. 10. Effēminābunt. 11. Effēminābant. 12. Effēmināverās. 13. Comparāvistis. 14. Comparās. 15. Comparāverō. 16. Importātis. 17. Importābit. 18. Importāre. 19. Spectābitis. 20. Spectāre.

II. 1. I had imported. 2. He will weaken. 3. You will have fought. 4. They have prepared. 5. I shall look. 6. I had gone back and forth. 7. They were importing. 8. He imported. 9. We had fought. 10. We shall call. 11. They will have called. 12. He has called.

LESSON XXXVI

270. TEXT

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere,

271. VOCABULARY

iūmentum, -ī, N., yoke *or* pack animal, beast of burden
carrus, -ī, M., cart
quam, *adv.*, as, how (*for translation with superlative see* **276**)
māgnus, -a, -um (*comp.* **māior**; *sup.* **māximus**) great, large
numerus, -ī, M., number
coëmere to buy up, purchase
sēmentis, -is, F., sowing, planting
facere [*see* **fēcit**] to make, do

SECOND CONJUGATION

272. The characteristic of the second conjugation is **ē**. This **ē** does not unite with the ending **-ō** as the **ā** of the first conjugation does. Otherwise a simple substitution of **ē** for the stem vowel **ā** makes the only difference between the tenses based on the present stem (see **264**) in the second conjugation and the same tenses in the first conjugation.

The infinitive ends in **-ēre.** When this is given in the principal parts the verb is known to be of the second conjugation.

273. The perfect stem is usually formed by substituting **u** for the final vowel of the present stem; as in **moneō,** *I warn:* present stem, **monē-**, perfect stem, **monu-**. But this is not true of all words; therefore the principal parts must be learned so well that they will come to mind without effort. In all verbs of all conjugations the tenses based on the perfect stem (see **265**) are formed exactly as in **laudō.**

274. **Moneō,** *I warn*

Principal parts: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**

ACTIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
moneō	**monēmus**
monēs	**monētis**
monet	**monent**

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monēbam	**monēbāmus**
monēbās	**monēbātis**
monēbat	**monēbant**

Future

monēbō	**monēbimus**
monēbis	**monēbitis**
monēbit	**monēbunt**

Perfect

monuī	**monuimus**
monuistī	**monuistis**
monuit	**monuērunt** *or* **-ēre**

Pluperfect

monueram	**monuerāmus**
monuerās	**monuerātis**
monuerat	**monuerant**

Future Perfect

monuerō	**monuerimus**
monueris	**monueritis**
monuerit	**monuerint**

Learn the principal parts of the following verbs:

contineō, continēre, continuī, contentum bound
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum have
obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum hold, possess
pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open, extend
permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum move thoroughly, rouse
persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum persuade
pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —— tend, extend
prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum keep from, prevent

275. EXERCISES

I. They determined to prepare — they determined to purchase — to purchase a number of carts — to purchase a number of pack animals — to purchase the greatest possible number of carts and beasts of burden — they determined to make — to plant (**sēmentēs facere**) — to plant as much as possible.

II. 1. Monuerō. 2. Monēbis. 3. Monēbant. 4. Pertinent. 5. Obtinēbāmus. 6. Continuerat. 7. Prohibueritis. 8. Persuāsistī. 9. Habēbit. 10. Patuerant. 11. Permōvērunt. 12. Habuerāmus. 13. Continēbit. 14. Pertinuerit. 15. Patēbunt. 16. Persuādēbās. 17. Persuāserit. 18. Habētis. 19. Permovet. 20. Permōvit. 21. Prohibuerant.

III. 1. You persuaded. 2. They had. 3. They had had. 4. You will persuade. 5. You will have persuaded. 6. I had prevented. 7. They were persuading. 8. It extended. 9. We shall warn. 10. They warned.

NOTES

276. Quam with a superlative strengthens the superlative and may be translated by *possible*, or *as* —— *as possible*. **Quam māximum,** *the greatest possible*, or *as great as possible.*

277. comparāre, coëmere, facere: the infinitive is used with many verbs (as **cōnstituērunt,** *they determined*), which require another action of the same subject to complete their meaning. This is called the complementary infinitive. Thus **comparāre, coëmere,** and **facere** are the complements of the verb **cōnstituērunt.**

LESSON XXXVII

278. TEXT

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre.

279. VOCABULARY

iter, itineris, N., way, road, journey, march
frūmentum, -ī, N., grain
suppeteret, might be ready, on hand
pāx, pācis, F., peace
amīcitia, -ae, F., friendship
cōnfīrmō, 1, make firm, establish, assure, promise

280. EXERCISES

I. That a supply might be on hand — that a supply of grain might be on hand — they determined to make plantings in order that a supply might be on hand — way — of the way — on the way — influenced by the authority of Orgetorix — they determined to establish peace — to establish friendship — a state — states — with a state — with states — with the nearest states.

II. 1. Auctōritās Orgetorīgis Helvētiōs permōvit. 2. Germānī, quī quoque bellandī cupidī sunt, iūmenta et carrōs habent. 3. Mercātōrēs ea quae ad animōs effēminandōs pertinent comparābunt. 4. Orgetorīx cōnstituerat quam māximās cōpiās comparāre. 5. Sēmentēs quās Helvētiī fēcerant quam māximae erant. 6. Cum Germānīs contendunt proptereā quod cum Aquītānīs pācem cōnfīrmāvērunt. 7. Eae cīvitātēs quae trāns Rhēnum incolunt cōpiam frūmentī habēbunt.

III. 1. The fields of these are bounded on one side by this river. 2. It happened that they wandered widely and went forth (**exīrent**) from their country. 3. They thought they had (**241**) brave men and great glory. 4. Their fields extended forty miles in length. 5. There is a large number of beasts of burden in the country of the Helvetii. 6. The Helvetians had a very great supply of grain.

281. LATIN QUESTIONS

Cūius auctōritāte (*by whose advice*) permovēbantur Helvētiī? Quid cōnstituērunt facere (*to do*)? Quis fuit Orgetorīx? Nōnne Orgetorīx nōbilis Helvētius fuit? Quī cōnstituērunt sēmentēs facere? Cūr sēmentēs fēcērunt? Habēbantne Helvētiī multōs carrōs?

LESSON XXXVIII

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

282. In the third conjugation the present stem ends in a consonant or in **u**. Its characteristic is a variable vowel which appears as **e, i,** or **u**. When the present stem ends in a consonant, the perfect stem is generally formed by adding **s**; when the present stem ends in **u**, the perfect stem is generally the same as the present. Examples: **dūcō,** *I lead*, present stem **dūc-**, perfect stem **dūx-** (for **dūcs**); **cōnstituō,** *I decide*, present stem **cōnstitu-**, perfect stem **cōnstitu-**.

283. In the fourth conjugation the present stem ends in **ī**, which is its characteristic. The perfect stem is regularly formed by adding **v** to the present stem. Example: **audiō,** *I hear*, present stem **audī-**, perfect stem **audīv-**.

284. The most striking difference between these two conjugations and the first two is in the formation of the future. Instead of using the tense-sign **-bi-** they have the endings **-am, -ēs, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.**

285. Notice that in almost all forms the only difference between the third and fourth conjugations consists in the insertion of **i** (shortened from **ī** before a vowel; see App. **1,** *a*) in the fourth conjugation. In three forms of the present the fourth conjugation has **ī** where the third has **i**. Notice too the characteristic vowels appearing in the infinitive.

286. THIRD CONJUGATION

Dūco, *I lead*

Principal parts: **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**

ACTIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcō	dūci**mus**
dūci**s**	dūci**tis**
dūci**t**	dūc**unt**

Imperfect

dūc**ēbam**	dūc**ēbāmus**
dūc**ēbās**	dūc**ēbātis**
dūc**ēbat**	dūc**ēbant**

Future

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcam	**dūcēmus**
dūcēs	**dūcētis**
dūcet	**dūcent**

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūxī	**dūximus**
dūxistī	**dūxistis**
dūxit	**dūxērunt** *or* **-ēre**

Pluperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūxeram	**dūxerāmus**
dūxerās	**dūxerātis**
dūxerat	**dūxerant**

Future Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūxerō	**dūxerimus**
dūxeris	**dūxeritis**
dūxerit	**dūxerint**

287. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Audiō, *I hear*

Principal parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum**

ACTIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiō	**audīmus**
audīs	**audītis**
audit	**audiunt**

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiēbam	**audiēbāmus**
audiēbās	**audiēbātis**
audiēbat	**audiēbant**

Future

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiam	**audiēmus**
audiēs	**audiētis**
audiet	**audient**

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audīvī	**audīvimus**
audīvistī	**audīvistis**
audīvit	**audīvērunt** *or* **-ēre**

Pluperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audīveram	**audīverāmus**
audīverās	**audīverātis**
audīverat	**audīverant**

Future Perfect

audīverō	**audīverimus**
audīveris	**audīveritis**
audīverit	**audīverint**

Learn the principal parts of the following verbs, and be ready to inflect the indicative of any of them :

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum influence
cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum decide
contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum contend
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum divide, separate
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum carry, wage
incolō, -colere, -coluī, —— inhabit
indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum induce
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum surpass

288. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dūcis. 2. Audītis. 3. Addūcēbās. 4. Cōnstitueris. 5. Praecessistī. 6. Audiēbant. 7. Incolent. 8. Prohibent. 9. Audiet. 10. Gesserant. 11. Contendit. 12. Dīvīserint. 13. Audīvimus. 14. Cōnstituēbant. 15. Incoluerās. 16. Indūxerimus. 17. Gerētis. 18. Dīvidēbant. 19. Contenderitis. 20. Audiēmus.

II. 1. We shall hear. 2. We shall have. 3. They inhabit. 4. They call. 5. They prevent. 6. They hear. 7. I shall have waged. 8. You will hear. 9. We divided. 10. He was tending. 11. He was hearing. 12. He was importing. 13. They had contended. 14. He decides. 15. He decided. 16. We had influenced. 17. They inhabited. 18. He will surpass.

LESSON XXXIX

289. TEXT

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant.

290. VOCABULARY

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum do thoroughly, complete, accomplish

ad eās rēs cōnficiendās for accomplishing these things

biennium, -ī, N. [**bis,** twice + **annus,** year], two years, period of two years

sibi for themselves

satis, *adv. and adj.*, enough, sufficiently, sufficient

esse (*infinitive of* **sum**) **to be**

annus, -ī, M., year

profectiō, -ōnis, F., starting, setting out, departure

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *-iō*

291. Such verbs as **capiō, capere,** *take*, have fourth conjugation forms where the fourth conjugation endings have two successive vowels. Elsewhere they have third conjugation forms. For example : **audiō, audiēbam, audiam** have two successive vowels, and **capiō, capiēbam, capiam** are used ; **audīs. audīre,** have not, and **capis, capere** are used.

292. **Capiō,** *I take*

Principal parts : **capiō, capere, cēpī, captum**

ACTIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiō	**capimus**
capis	**capitis**
capit	**capiunt**

Imperfect

capiēbam	**capiēbāmus**
capiēbās	**capiēbātis**
capiēbat	**capiēbant**

Future

capiam	**capiēmus**
capiēs	**capiētis**
capiet	**capient**

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
cēpī	**cēpimus**
cēpistī	**cēpistis**
cēpit	**cēpērunt** *or* **-ēre**

Pluperfect

cēperam	**cēperāmus**
cēperās	**cēperātis**
cēperat	**cēperant**

Future Perfect

cēperō	**cēperimus**
cēperis	**cēperitis**
cēperit	**cēperint**

Learn the principal parts of the following verbs and conjugate each :

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum affect
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum make

293. EXERCISES

I. For accomplishing these things — a year — two years — I consider — they considered — they considered that two years were sufficient — were sufficient for themselves — the third year — for the third year — I establish — they establish peace and friendship — they will determine a departure — a law — laws — by laws — in laws.

II. 1. Capiunt. 2. Cēpistī. 3. Capiēbātis. 4. Faciēs. 5. Fēceris. 6. Faciēbant. 7. Cōnficiēbat. 8. Cōnfēcit. 9. Cōnficit. 10. Afficiunt. 11. Afficient. 12. Afficitis. 13. Cōnficiēmus. 14. Fēcērunt. 15. Affēcerant.

III. 1. We took. 2. They affected. 3. You will make. 4. I had accomplished. 5. He will have made. 6. They were accomplishing. 7. You will call. 8. You will hear. 9. You will lead. 10. You will take. 11. They make. 12. They prevent. 13. They praise. 14. They had made. 15. He makes.

NOTES

294. biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt: dūxērunt has here its less usual meaning of *thought*. A verb meaning *to think* has been used before, followed by the infinitive (see **234** and **241**). **Biennium** is the accusative, subject of **esse**. **Satis** is a predicate adjective. The literal meaning is *thought two years to be enough for themselves*. Translate, *thought that two years were enough for them.*

295. in tertium annum: translate, *for the third year.*

296. confirmant: notice that although this is a present tense it is used of past time. This is called the *historical present*. In English a present is sometimes used in the same way, but not nearly as often as in Latin. It is, therefore, better to translate by a past tense.

LESSON XL

297. TEXT

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit.

298. VOCABULARY

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum choose, select

lēgātiō, -ōnis, F., embassy

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**sub,** under + **capiō,** take] undertake, take up *or* upon one's self

299. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

A reflexive pronoun is one which refers to the subject, as *himself* in *he praises himself.* In the third person Latin has a special pronoun for this purpose. As this pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject, it can never be a nominative or a vocative, so these cases are lacking. (*Himself* in *he himself praises him* is quite another word in Latin, for it only emphasizes *he;* it would be nominative.) As the reflexive pronoun refers to the subject one can always be sure of its number and gender, so that the same forms are used for both numbers and all genders. Examples: **homō sē laudat,** *the man praises himself;* **mulier sē laudat,** *the woman praises herself;* **Gallī sē laudant,** *the Gauls praise themselves.*

Gen. **suī**, of himself, herself, itself, themselves
Dat. **sibi**, to *or* for himself, etc.,
Acc. **sē** (**sēsē**), himself, etc.,
Abl. **sē** (**sēsē**), from, with, by himself, etc.,

With **sē**, as with **quibus** (see **86**), **cum** is enclitic.

300. EXERCISES

I. 1. Germānī sē laudant. 2. Hī omnēs sē dūcent. 3. Helvētiī sē fortissimōs appellāvērunt. 4. Helvētiī eōs fortissimōs appellāvērunt. 5. Orgetorīx sibi persuāserat. 6. Orgetorīx eī persuāserat. 7. Helvētiī sibi persuādēbunt. 8. Gallī inter sē bella gerēbant. 9. Helvētiī iūmenta sēcum dūxerint. 10. Gallī carrōs inter sē dīvīsērunt.

II. 1. Orgetorix praised himself. 2. Orgetorix praised him. 3. The Gauls have persuaded themselves. 4. The Celts will lead the merchants with them. 5. They will divide the parts among themselves.

III. 1. Hīs rēbus inductī cōnstituerant ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīgem dēligere. 2. Hī Helvētiī, quibus Orgetorīx persuāserant, ad montem Iūram incoluērunt. 3. Is facile eīs persuāsit quod fīnēs esse angustōs arbitrābantur. 4. Orgetorīx eās rēs facile cōnficiet quod longē dītissimus est.

IV. 1. Led on by these things they determined to establish peace and friendship with the state. 2. They determined to purchase carts and to make plantings. 3. They thought that three parts were sufficient for them. 4. A departure was established by their laws. 5. They selected Orgetorix for accomplishing those things.

301. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quot annōs dūxērunt sibi satis esse? Quem in annum cōnfīrmant profectiōnem? Quōmodo cōnfīrmant profectiō-

nem? Quis dēligitur? Cūr Orgetorīx dēligitur? Orgetorīxne ad eās rēs cōnficiendās dēligitur?

NOTES

302. Remember that the reflexive pronoun is to be used only if the subject is referred to. It has already been learned that the ordinary pronoun of the third person is **is**. **Orgetorīx eum laudat** means *Orgetorix praises him;* i.e., some one not mentioned in the sentence.

LESSON XLI

303. TEXT

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat

304. VOCABULARY

Casticus, -ī, M., (*a Sequanian chief*) Casticus
Catamantāloedis, -is, M., (*a Sequanian chief*) Catamantaloedes
fīlius, -ī, M., son
Sēquanus, -ī, M., a Sequanian, one of the Sequani
pater, patris, M., father
multus, -a, -um much, many

305. THE VERB *TO BE*

Sum, *I am*

Principal parts: **sum, esse, fuī**

INDICATIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
sum	I am	**sumus**	we are
es	you are	**estis**	you are
est	he is	**sunt**	they are

Imperfect

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
eram	I was	**erāmus**	we were
erās	you were	**erātis**	you were
erat	he was	**erant**	they were

Future

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
erō	I shall be	**erimus**	we shall be
eris	you will be	**eritis**	you will be
erit	he will be	**erunt**	they will be

Perfect

fuī	I have been, I was	**fuimus**,	we have been, we were
fuistī	you have been, you were	**fuistis**,	you have been, you were
fuit	he has been, he was	**fuērunt** *or* **-ēre**,	they have been, they were

Pluperfect

fueram	I had been	**fuerāmus**	we had been
fuerās	you had been	**fuerātis**	you had been
fuerat	he had been	**fuerant**	they had been

Future Perfect

fuerō	I shall have been	**fuerimus**	we shall have been
fueris	you will have been	**fueritis**	you will have been
fuerit	he will have been	**fuerint**	they will have been

306. EXERCISES

I. An embassy — of an embassy — Orgetorix undertook an embassy — he took on himself an embassy to the states — journey — on the journey — on that journey — he persuades Casticus — he persuades the son of Catamantaloedes — he persuades Casticus the Sequanian — father — whose father — whose father had held — had held the royal power — the royal power among the Sequanians — had possessed for many years.

II. 1. Es. 2. Estis. 3. Fuit. 4. Fuerant. 5. Māgnus fuerit. 6. Casticus erat Sēquanus. 7. Partēs erunt multae. 8. Carrī sunt multī. 9. Catamantāloedis fuerat fortissimus. 10. Sēmentēs fuerint māximae.

III. 1. You will be. 2. They will have been. 3. I had been. 4. He will be. 5. We were. 6. You have been. 7. He had been rich. 8. The rivers were large.

IV. 1. The father of Casticus had possessed the royal power many years. 2. The Helvetians, aroused by Orgetorix, determined to purchase many carts. 3. Casticus the Sequanian, whose father was holding the royal power, undertook an embassy to Gaul.

307. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quis dēligitur ad eās rēs cōnficiendās? Quid suscēpit Orgetorīx? Nōnne lēgātiōnem suscēpit? Cūr sibi lēgātiōnem suscēpit? Cui persuāsit Orgetorīx? Cūius fīlius erat Casticus? Quot annōs obtinuit pater ēius rēgnum? (Nesciō.) Obtinuitne rēgnum multōs annōs?

NOTES

308. Casticō: construction? **197.**

309. fīliō, Sēquanō: these nouns are in apposition with **Casticō**, and therefore in the dative. See **160.**

310. multōs annōs, *for many years.* The accusative is used to denote duration of time. See App. **130.**

LESSON XLII

311. TEXT

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat,

312. VOCABULARY

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, by
senātus, -ūs, M., senate (*especially the administrative council of Rome*)
populus, -ī, M., people
Rōmānus, -a, -um of Rome, Roman
amīcus, -ī, M., friend

THE PASSIVE VOICE

313. In the active voice the subject is represented as acting. Example: **fīlius laudat**, *the son praises.* In the passive voice the subject is represented as acted on. Example: **fīlius laudātur**, *the son is praised.*

314. In the passive voice the tenses formed on the present stem (264), have the following personal endings:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
-or, -r	(I)	**-mur**	(we)
-ris, -re	(thou, you)	**-minī**	(you)
-tur	(he, she, it)	**-ntur**	(they)

315. By employing these terminations instead of the active forms (263), the present, imperfect, and future tenses in the passive are formed exactly as the corresponding tenses in the active are (264), except that the vowel changes before the passive endings are not always the same as before the active endings.

316. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive are made up of the perfect passive participle and the present, imperfect, and future of **sum**. This perfect passive participle can always be formed by changing to **s** the final **m** in the supine (the last of the four principal parts). Example: supine, **laudātum**; perfect participle, **laudātus**. **Laudātus** means *having been praised.* **Laudātus sum**, therefore, means *I am having been praised*, i.e., *I have been praised, I was praised;* **laudātus eram**, *I was having been praised*, i.e., *I had been praised;* etc. The participle is declined like an adjective of the first and second declensions, and must, of course, agree with the subject. Examples: **fīlius laudātus est**, *the son was praised;* **fīliī laudātī sunt**, *the sons were praised;* **lēgātiō laudāta est**, *the embassy was praised.*

317. The principal parts in the passive are the first person singular present indicative, the present infinitive, the first person singular perfect indicative. But these parts need not be learned when the verb has active forms.

318. FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal parts: **laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum**

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MODE

Present

I am praised

SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudor	laudāmur
laudāris	laudāminī
laudātur	laudantur

Imperfect

I was being praised, *or* I was praised

laudābar	**laudābāmur**
laudābāris, *or* **-re**	**laudābāminī**
laudābātur	**laudābantur**

Future

I shall be praised

laudābor	**laudābimur**
laudāberis, *or* **-re**	**laudābiminī**
laudābitur	**laudābuntur**

Perfect

I have been praised, *or* I was praised

laudātus (-a, -um) sum	**laudātī (-ae, -a) sumus**
laudātus es	**laudātī estis**
laudātus est	**laudātī sunt**

Pluperfect

I had been praised

laudātus eram	**laudātī erāmus**
laudātus erās	**laudātī erātis**
laudātus erat	**laudātī erant**

Future Perfect

I shall have been praised

laudātus erō	**laudātī erimus**
laudātus eris	**laudātī eritis**
laudātus erit	**laudātī erunt**

In the same way conjugate the passive indicative of **appellō, comparō, cōnfirmō, importō.**

319. EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudābantur. 2. Laudāberis. 3. Laudātī sumus. 4. Laudātae eritis. 5. Appellābātur. 6. Appellāminī. 7. Appellābiminī. 8. Appellāta sunt. 9. Appellāta est. 10. Appellātī erunt. 11. Ea importāta sunt. 12. Carrī importātī erant. 13. Iūmentum importātum est. 14. Cōpia comparāta erit. 15. Coniūrātiō comparābātur. 16. Pāx cōnfirmā-

tur. 17. Pāx cōnfīrmāta erat. 18. Amīcitiae cōnfīrmātae erunt. 19. Gallī laudātī erant. 20. Sēquanus laudātus erat.

II. 1. They were being praised. 2. You will be praised. 3. He had been praised. 4. She will have been praised. 5. They were imported. 6. They will be called. 7. I shall be called. 8. We had been called. 9. It had been prepared. 10. It was being prepared. 11. Wagons were prepared. 12. Pack animals were being prepared.

NOTES

320. ā senātū: with the passive voice the *person by whom* a thing is done is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**; this is called the *ablative of the agent*. It has already been learned (**205**) that the ablative without a preposition expresses the *thing by means of which* something is done. In English *by* is commonly used with both persons and things. Do not confuse them in Latin.

321. amīcus: construction? See **160**.

LESSON XLIII

322. TEXT

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī (persuādet),

323. VOCABULARY

occupō, 1, seize upon, hold, possess

ante, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, before

item, *adv.*, also, in like manner

Dumnorīx, -īgis, M., Dumnorix (*a chief of the Aedui, brother of Diviciacus*)

Dīviciācus, -ī, M., Diviciacus (*a chief of the Aedui, brother of Dumnorix, friendly to the Romans*)

324. EXERCISES

I. Senate — by the senate — the friend of the Roman people — a friend — he had been called friend — I call a friend — they had called a friend — he persuades — he persuades Casticus — I seize — to seize the royal power — he persuades Casticus to seize the royal power — the royal power in his state — which — which he had had — which his father had had — his father had had formerly — also — he also persuades — he also persuades Dumnorix — he persuades Dumnorix the Aeduan — he persuades the brother — brothers — the brother of Diviciacus — he persuades the brother of Diviciacus.

II. 1. Catamantāloedis rēgnum multōs annōs in suā cīvitāte obtinuit. 2. Quam māximus iūmentōrum numerus ab Helvētiīs comparātus erat. 3. Ea carrīs ab mercātōribus importāta sunt. 4. Pāx et amīcitia ab Helvētiīs cum proximīs cīvitātibus cōnfīrmābantur. 5. Cōnstituērunt dē fīnibus suīs exīre, quod Orgetorīx eīs persuāserat. 6. Populus Rōmānus Catamantāloedem amīcum appellābit.

III. 1. He persuaded Casticus the Sequanian, whose brother was a friend to the Helvetians. 2. Casticus will seize the royal power in his own state. 3. He persuades Dumnorix, the brother of Diviciacus, who was a friend of the Roman people. 4. On these journeys they were establishing peace with many peoples. 5. The father of Casticus had held the royal power among the Sequani for many years.

325. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quis persuāsit Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret? Quis erat Casticus? Quis erat ēius (*his*) pater? Quis erat amīcus appellātus? Ā quō erat amīcus appellātus? Senātusne Dīviciācum amīcum appellābat? Quī sunt amīcī tuī (*your*)?

NOTES

326. Just as **suī** is used to refer to the subject of the sentence (299), so the possessive adjective **suus,** *his, hers, its, theirs*, is used to refer to the subject. It must agree with its noun, like any other adjective; but whether it shall be translated by *his* or *hers* or *theirs* depends on the subject.

327. persuādet . . . ut . . . occupāret: *persuaded that he seize upon*, or better, *persuaded to seize*, etc.

LESSON XLIV

328. TEXT

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

329. VOCABULARY

tempus, temporis, N., time
prīncipātus, -ūs, M., chief place *or* authority, leadership
āc (*shortened form of* **atque**) and
māximē, *sup. adv.*, (*cf.* **māgnus**) very greatly, most, especially
plēbs, plēbis, F., populace, common people
acceptus, -a, -um acceptable, beloved, popular
idem the same thing
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum attempt, try
ut cōnārētur to attempt
fīlia, -ae, F., daughter
mātrimōnium, -ī, N., marriage
dō, dare, dedī, datum give (*for inflection see* App. 85)

330. SECOND CONJUGATION

If the conjugations have been learned thoroughly up to this point, there will be no trouble with the passives of the other conjugations. In the present, imperfect, and future only the same changes from the active forms have

to be made as in the first conjugation. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of all verbs are formed as in **laudō**. The supines of most of the verbs so far given have been learned, and so the perfect participles can easily be made.

Principal parts: **moneō, monērī, monitus sum**

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
moneor	**monēmur**
monēris	**monēminī**
monētur	**monentur**

Imperfect

monēbar	**monēbāmur**
monēbāris, *or* **-re**	**monēbāminī**
monēbātur	**monēbantur**

Future

monēbor	**monēbimur**
monēberis, *or* **-re**	**monēbiminī**
monēbitur	**monēbuntur**

Perfect

monitus **sum**	monitī **sumus**
monitus **es**	monitī **estis**
monitus **est**	monitī **sunt**

Pluperfect

monitus **eram**	monitī **erāmus**
monitus **erās**	monitī **erātis**
monitus **erat**	monitī **erant**

Future Perfect

monitus **erō**	monitī **erimus**
monitus **eris**	monitī **eritis**
monitus **erit**	monitī **erunt**

In the same way inflect the passives of **contineō, habeō, permoveō, prohibeō.**

331. EXERCISES

I. Time — that time — at that time — he persuades Dumnorix — the leadership — was holding — was holding the

leadership — beloved — beloved by the common people — especially beloved by the common people — Dumnorix was especially beloved by the common people — that he attempt the same — he persuades Dumnorix to attempt the same — I give — you give — she gives — he gives to him — he gives to him his daughter — he gives his own daughter — we give — the friends gave — the leadership was given.

II. 1. Continentur. 2. Continēbantur. 3. Continēbitur. 4. Prohibitus est. 5. Prohibēbāmur. 6. Prohibēbor. 7. Prohibitae sumus. 8. Habēmur. 9. Habēberis. 10. Habēbāris. 11. Cōnābantur. 12. Cōnātī sumus. 13. Arbitrāminī. 14. Arbitrābuntur. 15. Cōnātae erātis. 16. Cōnābāris. 17. Arbitrāberis. 18. Arbitrātī erunt. 19. Cōnantur. 20. Arbitrātus es.

III. 1. We are being warned. 2. We were being warned. 3. We shall be warned. 4. He had been warned. 5. She will have been warned. 6. They had been prevented. 7. You will be prevented. 8. I was prevented. 9. We shall attempt. 10. They were attempting. 11. They attempted. 12. We had thought. 13. You will think. 14. He thinks. 15. We thought.

NOTES

332. eō tempore, *at that time.* Time *at* or *within which* is expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition. This construction is called the *ablative of time.* Compare the accusative in expressions of time *how long* (**310**).

333. It has already been learned (**242**) that certain verbs, called deponents, have only the passive forms, but with the active meanings. The principal parts of these verbs are, of course, those given for the passive (**317**). The parts of **cōnor** are given in the vocabulary. Those of **arbitror,** *I think,* are **arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum.**

LESSON XLV

334. THIRD CONJUGATION

Principal parts: **dūcor, dūcī, ductus sum**

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MODE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	
dūcor	dūcimur
dūceris	dūciminī
dūcitur	dūcuntur
Imperfect	
dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris, *or* -re	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur
Future	
dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēris, *or* -re	dūcēminī
dūcētur	dūcentur
Perfect	
ductus sum	ductī sumus
ductus es	ductī estis
ductus est	ductī sunt
Pluperfect	
ductus eram	ductī erāmus
ductus erās	ductī erātis
ductus erat	ductī erant
Future Perfect	
ductus erō	ductī erimus
ductus eris	ductī eritis
ductus erit	ductī erunt

In the same way inflect **addūcō, dīvidō, gerō, indūcō,** and the deponent **proficīscor,** *I set out, depart.*

335. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Principal parts: **audior, audīrī, audītus sum**

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MODE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	
audior	audīmur
audīris	audīminī
audītur	audiuntur

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbāris, *or* -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Future

audiar	audiēmur
audiēris, *or* -re	audiēminī
audiētur	audientur

Perfect

audītus sum	audītī sumus
audītus es	audītī estis
audītus est	audītī sunt

Pluperfect

audītus eram	audītī erāmus
audītus erās	audītī erātis
audītus erat	audītī erant

Future Perfect

audītus erō	audītī erimus
audītus eris	audītī eritis
audītus erit	audītī erunt

336 THIRD CONJUGATION IN *-iō*

Principal parts: **capior, capī, captus sum**

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capior	capimur
caperis	capiminī
capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect

capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbāris, *or* -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future

capiar	capiēmur
capiēris, *or* -re	capiēminī
capiētur	capientur

Perfect

captus sum	captī sumus
captus es	captī estis
captus est	captī sunt

Pluperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
captus **eram**	captī **erāmus**
captus **erās**	captī **erātis**
captus **erat**	captī **erant**

Future Perfect

captus **erō**	captī **erimus**
captus **eris**	captī **eritis**
captus **erit**	captī **erunt**

Inflect in the same way the passive of **afficiō** and **cōnficiō**. **Faciō** is not regular in the passive.

337. **EXERCISES**

I. 1. Dūcitur. 2. Ducta est. 3. Ducta sunt. 4. Audītur. 5. Audītus erat. 6. Capiētur. 7. Afficiēmur. 8. Affectī erant. 9. Audītus erit. 10. Cōnficiēris. 11. Cōnficeris. 12. Addūcēbātur. 13. Indūcēmur. 14. Inductī erint. 15. Geritur. 16. Gerētur. 17. Dīvīsa sunt. 18. Dīviditur. 19. Afficiēbāminī. 20. Audiēminī. 21. Adducta erit.

II. 1. We shall be led. 2. We shall have been heard. 3. It was accomplished. 4. They were affected. 5. We were being heard. 6. You will be induced. 7. They are being taken. 8. They had been taken. 9. It is being divided. 10. It was divided. 11. They have been heard.

LESSON XLVI

338. **REVIEW**

The situation, so far, is this. Orgetorix has formed a conspiracy to make himself king of the Helvetians. He has also induced the Helvetians to leave their country. The Helvetians, in ignorance of his designs upon the throne, have delegated him to secure the good will of the neighboring states, because they do not wish to be obliged to fight their way through other countries. Orgetorix has gone to the Sequani and the Aedui (look

up these peoples on the map), but instead of simply carrying out his instructions has persuaded a nobleman in each country to aspire to the throne. Most of the rest of the chapter will be omitted. In it Orgetorix tells these noblemen that he will first become king of the Helvetii, then assist them to become kings of their own people; then the three will unite their forces and make themselves masters of all Gaul.

I. Write out a good English translation of Chap. III. as far as read.

II. Review the vocabulary in **253**.

VOCABULARY

(Give the principal parts of the verbs as well as the meanings.)

acceptus, -a, -um
addūcō, -ere
amīcitia, -ae, F.
amīcus, -ī, M.
annus, -ī, M.
ante
appellō, -āre
auctōritās, -ātis, F.
biennium, -ī, N.
coëmō, -ere
comparō, -āre
cōnficiō, -ere
cōnfīrmō, -āre
cōnor, -ārī
cōnstituō, -ere
cōpia, -ae, F.
dēligō, -ere
dīvidō, -ere
dō, dare
dūcō, -ere
faciō, facere
fīlia, -ae, F.
fīlius, -ī, M.
frūmentum, -ī, N.
gerō, -ere
habeō, -ēre
idem
incolō, -ere
item
iter, itineris, N.
lēgātiō, -ōnis, F.
mātrimōnium, -ī, N.
māximē
māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um
obtineō, -ēre
occupō, -āre
pater, patris, M.
pāx, pācis, F.
permoveō, -ēre
persuādeō, -ēre
pertineō, -ēre
plēbs, plēbis, F.
populus, -ī, M.
prīncipātus, -ūs, M.
profectiō, -ōnis, F.
proficīscor, -ī
quam
satis
sēmentis, -is, F.
senātus, -ūs, M.
suī
suppetō, -ere
suscipiō, -ere
tempus, temporis, N.

III. Inflect the indicative active and passive of **dō, habeō, gerō, audiō, afficiō.** Inflect the indicative of **sum, cōnor, proficīscor.** Decline **rēs māgna** and **suī.**

IV. What is the stem vowel in the fifth declension? The gender? What is the characteristic of each conjugation? What is the use of each of the principal parts? What difference in meaning between active and passive? What are deponent verbs? What are the principal parts of deponents? How are third conjugation verbs in **-iō** inflected? Give the meanings of each tense. What is the historical present? What is a complementary infinitive? What construction is used after verbs of thinking? What is a reflex-

ive pronoun? What difference in meaning between the accusative and the ablative in expressions of time? What is the difference between an ablative of means and an ablative of agent?

LESSON XLVII

339. **TEXT** [1]

Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs āc fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

340. **VOCABULARY**

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F., speech, language, address
fidēs, -eī, F., faith, assurance, pledge
iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, N., oath
per, *prep. with acc.*, through, by means of
potēns, -entis powerful
fīrmus, -a, -um strong, vigorous
tōtus, -a, -um entire, the whole of (*for declension see* **211**)
potior, -īrī, -ītus sum get control of
posse to be able
spērō, 1, hope

341. **EXERCISES**

I. Speech — this speech — of this speech — influenced by this speech — they give — they give to one another — they gave an oath and a pledge — they will give a pledge — having seized the royal power — they hope — they hope to be able — they hope to be able to get possession — to get



GALLIC HORSEMAN

[1] A few lines have been omitted from the text here, to avoid the indirect discourse. The full text will be found on p. 234. The substance of the omitted portion is given in 338.

possession of entire Gaul — people — peoples — through three very strong peoples.

II. 1. Dīviciācus et Casticus et Dumnorīx tōtīus Galliae potīrī cōnātī sunt. 2. Casticus et Dumnorīx ōrātiōne Dīviciācī adductī sunt. 3. Casticus et Dumnorīx ā Dīviciācō addūcēbantur. 4. Dīviciācus arbitrātus est sēsē rēgnī potīrī posse (294). 5. Quod inter sē iūsiūrandum dederant, spērāvērunt sē potentissimōrum populōrum potīrī posse. 6. Quod Dumnorīgī persuāserat, suam fīliam eī in mātrimōnium dedit.

III. 1. Influenced by these speeches they gave a pledge and an oath to each other. 2. They hoped that, when they had seized the royal power, they could (**posse**) get possession of all Gaul. 3. Aroused by this speech they determined to get possession of as great a number of carts as possible. 4. They hoped to be able to establish peace and friendship with the nearest state. 5. At this time the chief power is held by Dumnorix.

NOTES

342. hāc ōrātiōne, *by (means of) this speech.* **What construction?** See **205.**

343. Iūsiūrandum, *oath,* is a compound noun, composed of **iūs,** a neuter noun of the third declension, and **iūrandum,** declined like a neuter noun of the second declension. Both parts are inflected. Use in the singular only.

344. rēgnō occupātō, *after they have seized the royal power* (in their own nations). Literally, *the royal power having been seized.* Observe that the ablative absolute is here (as frequently) best rendered by a temporal clause. See on **M. Messālā,** etc., **189. Occupātō** is from the perfect passive participle.

345. Potīrī, *to get the control of,* here takes its object, **Galliae,** in the genitive. It more often governs the ablative.

346. sēsē posse spērant, *they hope they can.* Literally, *hope themselves to be able.*

LESSON XLVIII

347. TEXT

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt: damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut ignī cremārētur.

348. VOCABULARY

indicium, -ī, N., report, information
ēnūntiō, 1, report, announce
mōs, mōris, M., character, custom; (*in pl.*) morals, customs
vinculum, -ī, N., chain, bond
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum say, tell, speak
causam dīcere to plead a case
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum bring together, compel
damnō, 1, condemn
poena, -ae, F., punishment, penalty
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum follow
oportēbat it was proper *or* necessary, it behooved
ignis, -is, M., fire
cremō, 1, burn, burn to ashes

349. TENSES IN NARRATION

Review what was said of the imperfect and perfect in **226**. Now read over Chapter III. and notice the indicative tenses, for they are typical of Caesar's general usage. Notice that in every sentence the principal verb tells a new point in the story and is a perfect or the equivalent historical present. The dependent clauses do not tell new points in the story, but either tell of something that had happened before the time of the principal verb (pluperfect tense) or describe something as going on or existing at the time of the principal verb (imperfect tense). *They determined — they decided — they set the date — Orgetorix was chosen — he accepted — he persuaded:* all these are perfects or presents. But now in a subordinate clause it is learned that before this time some one *had held — had been called* (pluperfects). Again in the historical present *Orgetorix persuaded*, and in a subordinate clause it is learned that at that time some one *was in power — was dear* (imperfects).

No fixed rule can be given. The tenses are always used to express the shade of meaning wanted. But this is a good principle to work on: in dealing with past time, unless the meaning clearly calls for some other tense,

all principal verbs will be perfects, all subordinate verbs **imperfects** and pluperfects. The imperfect is used for something still going on, the pluperfect for something already past. Some exceptions to this principle will be noticed in the following lessons.

In the text of this lesson **oportēbat** is an imperfect used as the principal verb of its sentence. The thought is that the punishment was hanging over the head of Orgetorix all the while the main events of the story were going on.

350. EXERCISES

I. This thing — this thing was reported — was reported to the Helvetians — was reported through (**per**) informers — the Helvetians reported — customs — in accordance with their customs — they compelled — they compelled Orgetorix — they compelled Orgetorix to plead his case — to plead his case from chains — I condemn — to condemn — I have condemned — condemned — it behooved — it behooved that the punishment follow the condemned [man] — that — that he be burned to ashes — that he be burned to ashes by fire — they condemned — they condemned Orgetorix.

II. 1. Quod coniūrātiōnem fēcerat, Orgetorīgem causam dīcere coēgērunt. 2. Orgetorīgem, quī Casticō persuāserat, ex vinculīs dīcere coēgērunt. 3. Helvētiī, quī sē angustōs fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, profectī sunt. 4. Helvētiī, quī fortissimī erant, ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Sēquanīs contendērunt. 5. Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant, ā Sēquanīs amīcī appellātī sunt. 6. Quod populus erat firmissimus, Orgetorīx sē rēgnum occupāre posse spērāvit.

III. 1. These things were reported to the Helvetians. 2. According to their customs they gave a pledge to one another. 3. They burned the wagons which they had prepared. 4. They determined to burn Orgetorix because he had formed a conspiracy.

351. **LATIN QUESTIONS**

Quid dant inter sē? Nōnne fidem et iūsiūrandum dant? Quī dant inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum? Quōmodo est ea rēs ēnūntiāta? Quibus est ea rēs ēnūntiāta? Quōmodo coēgērunt Orgetorīgem causam dīcere? Quam poenam (*what penalty*) oportēbat sequī?

NOTES

352. per indicium, literally, *through information;* translate, *through informers.*

353. mōribus suīs, *in accordance with their customs.* The phrase *in accordance with* is expressed in Latin by simply putting the noun in the ablative case. See App. **142**, *a*.

354. damnātum . . . cremārētur, literally, *it was necessary for the punishment to follow (him) condemned that he should be burned with fire.* The perfect passive participle **damnātum** is here equivalent to a condition. Translate, *if condemned it was necessary that the punishment of being burned be inflicted upon him.*

LESSON XLIX

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

355. The subjunctive has only four tenses, — present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. Of these the present and imperfect are formed on the present stem. The present subjunctive is formed by changing the final vowel of the present stem, or by adding **ā** to the present stem, and adding the personal endings (**263** and **314**); as **laudā-, laudē-**, present subjunctive, **laudem**. The imperfect subjunctive is formed by adding **rē** to the unchanged present stem, and to this the personal endings; as, **laudā- + rē**, imperfect subjunctive, **laudārem.**

356. The meanings of the subjunctive mode must be learned in connection with the constructions in which it is used. No satisfactory meanings can be given with the paradigms.[1]

[1] Although it is hoped that the explanation of the uses of the subjunctive given in the appendix may be found helpful, it has not seemed best to give them at this point as a necessary part of the lesson. It is recommended that App. 182–184 be studied in connection with this lesson. Otherwise the teacher must give such explanation of the meanings as he thinks proper.

357. FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE: SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
laud**em**	laud**ēmus**
laud**ēs**	laud**ētis**
laud**et**	laud**ent**

Imperfect

laud**ārem**	laud**ārēmus**
laud**ārēs**	laud**ārētis**
laud**āret**	laud**ārent**

PASSIVE VOICE: SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present

laud**er**	laud**ēmur**
laud**ēris** *or* **-re**	laud**ēminī**
laud**ētur**	laud**entur**

Imperfect

laud**ārer**	laud**ārēmur**
laud**ārēris** *or* **-re**	laud**ārēminī**
laud**ārētur**	laud**ārentur**

358. PURPOSE CLAUSES

The commonest English expression of purpose is the infinitive; as, *I do this to praise him.* This is never used by Caesar, and it must never be used in writing Latin. The common Latin expression is the subjunctive with **ut** or a relative, or with **nē** if a negative is wanted. See App. **225**. The relative is commonly used if there is a convenient antecedent in the main clause; otherwise **ut**. Examples: **hōc facit ut eum laudet**, *he does this to praise him;* **hominem mittit quī eum laudet**, *he sends a man to praise him;* **hōc facit nē eum laudet**, *he does this in order not to praise him*, or *to keep from praising him.*

359. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)

These are somewhat like clauses of purpose, but are used as objects of such verbs as *order* or *persuade*. See App. **228**. **Ut** is used in affirmative clauses, **nē** in negative. Examples: **eī persuādeō ut laudet**, *I persuade him to praise;* **eī persuādeō nē laudet**, *I persuade him not to praise.*

360. USE OF TENSES

Ut laudet means *that he may* or *shall praise;* **ut laudāret,** *that he might* or *should praise.* Just as English says *he does this that he may praise* and *he did this that he might praise,* so Latin says **hōc facit ut laudet** and **hōc fēcit ut laudāret.** If the student will stop to think in every case whether *to praise* etc. means *may* or *might* he will know whether the Latin should be present or imperfect.

361. EXERCISES

I. 1. Cōnstituunt ea comparāre ut rēgnum occupent. 2. Cōnstituērunt pācem cōnfīrmāre ut rēgnum occupārent. 3. Orgetorīgem causam dīcere coēgērunt nē rēgnum occupāret. 4. Cum Germānīs contendunt ut fortissimī appellentur. 5. Cum Sēquanīs bella gessērunt ut fortēs appellārentur. 6. Orgetorīgem dēlēgērunt quī pācem cōnfīrmāret. 7. Helvētiīs persuāsit ut amīcitiam cōnfīrmārent. 8. Sēquanīs persuādēbit nē iūmenta comparent. 9. Senātuī persuāserat ut Orgetorīgem amīcum appellāret. 10. Mercātōribus persuāsit nē ad Germānōs commeārent.

II. 1. They dwell across the Rhine in order not to contend with the Helvetii. 2. They persuaded the merchants not to import those things. 3. They decided to set out in order to seize upon the royal power. 4. He will seize upon the royal power in order to condemn Orgetorix. 5. He will persuade the Roman people not to call Dumnorix friend.

LESSON L

362. TEXT

Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit.

363. VOCABULARY

dictiō, -ōnis, F. [**dīcō**, speak], speaking, pleading

iūdicium, -ī, N., judgment, decision, court, trial

familia, -ae, F., retinue, body of servants

decem, *indecl. numeral,* ten

cliēns, clientis, M. F., follower, retainer

obaerātus, -ī, M., debtor

eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [**cum** + **dūcō**, lead] lead together, bring together

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum [**ē**+**rapiō**, seize] tear away, break away

364. EXERCISES

I. Day — on the day — on the day appointed — cause (*or* case) — of the case — of the pleading of the case — trial — to the trial — brought together to the trial — he brought together all his retinue — he brought together about ten thousands of men — Orgetorix brought — he led together — he led together all his retainers — all his retainers and debtors — who — of whom — he had — he had a number — he had a great number — I have a great number — he led together to the same place — through — through them — lest (that not) — that he might not plead — that he might not plead his case — Orgetorix broke away.

II. 1. Per amīcōs, nē ignī cremārētur, Orgetorīx sē ēripuit. 2. Diē cōnstitūtā Casticum et Dumnorīgem eōdem condūcet ut inter sē iūsiūrandum dent. 3. Per clientēs et obaerātōs, quōs ad iūdicium condūxerant, sē ēripuērunt. 4. Diem cōnstituet ut populō Rōmānō eam rem ēnūntiet. 5. Quod coniūrātiōnem fēcerat quam māximam familiam habuit ut rēgnum occupāret.

III. 1. On the day appointed for the pleading (of the pleading) of the case he will bring to the same place all his retinue and ten thousands of his debtors. 2. They determined to lead together from all sides about ten thousand

debtors. 3. They had a great number of retainers. 4. In accordance with their customs they led together a great number of men.

365. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quō diē coēgit Orgetorīx familiam suam ad iūdicium? Quī coāctī sunt ad iūdicium praeter eōs? Quot hominēs erant in familiā Orgetorīgis? Cūr eōs condūxit? Nōnne Orgetorīx sē ēripuit?

NOTES

366. **diē cōnstitūtā**, *on the day appointed.* **Diēs**, in the singular, is often feminine when referring to a fixed time (or to an indefinite period). Compare **256**. Construction? (**332**.)

367. **ad mīlia decem**, *to the number of ten thousand.* **Ad** with numerals is rendered *about* or *to the number of.*

368. **dīceret**: imperfect subjunctive in a purpose clause (**358**).

369. What do the tenses of **habēbat** and **dīceret** mean?

LESSON LI

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued)

370. The present subjunctives of the second and fourth conjugations use the same endings as that of the first, but add the vowel **ā** to the present stem instead of changing its final vowel (see **355**). The present subjunctive of the third conjugation changes its final vowel to **ā**. The imperfects of all conjugations are formed just as that of the first is (see **355**). It is convenient to notice that the first person of the active imperfect may always be found by adding **m** to the present infinitive active.

371. SECOND CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE: SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
mone**am**	mone**āmus**
mone**ās**	mone**ātis**
mone**at**	mone**ant**

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

PASSIVE VOICE: SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monear	moneāmur
moneāris *or* -re	moneāminī
moneātur	moneantur

Imperfect

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris *or* -re	monērēminī
monērētur	monērentur

372. THIRD CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE: SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcam	dūcāmus
dūcās	dūcātis
dūcat	dūcant

Imperfect

dūcerem	dūcerēmus
dūcerēs	dūcerētis
dūceret	dūcerent

PASSIVE VOICE: SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcāris *or* -re	dūcāminī
dūcātur	dūcantur

Imperfect

dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēris *or* -re	dūcerēminī
dūcerētur	dūcerentur

373. FOURTH CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE: SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

Imperfect

audīrem	audīrēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīret	audīrent

PASSIVE VOICE: SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris *or* -re	audiāminī
audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris *or*-re	audīrēminī
audīrētur	audīrentur

374. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō

ACTIVE VOICE: SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiam	capiāmus
capiās	capiātis
capiat	capiant

Imperfect

caperem	caperēmus
caperēs	caperētis
caperet	caperent

PASSIVE VOICE: SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiar	**capiāmur**
capiāris *or* **-re**	**capiāminī**
capiātur	**capiantur**

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
caperer	**caperēmur**
caperēris *or* **-re**	**caperēminī**
caperētur	**caperentur**

375. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hōc facit ut moneās. 2. —ut dīcātis. 3. —ut cōnficiātur. 4. —nē audiāris. 5. —nē dīvidātur. 6. —ut obtineant. 7. —ut cōnentur. 8. Hōc fēcit nē dēligerent. 9. —ut persuādēret. 10. —nē habērēminī. 11. —nē proficīscerēris. 12. —ut coëmerēmus. 13. —ut dēligerēmur. 14. —nē audīrēminī. 15. — nē caperer.

II. 1. He does this in order to warn. 2. —that you may be warned. 3. —that they may be heard. 4. —that we may hear. 5. —that you may be affected. 6. —that you may divide. 7. —that they may not persuade. 8. He did this to warn. 9. —to persuade. 10. —that they might persuade. 11. —that they might set out. 12. —that you might possess. 13. —to hear. 14. —that they might not be chosen. 15. —that we might be taken.

LESSON LII

376. TEXT

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

377. VOCABULARY

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of
incitō, 1, urge on, incite, rouse
arma, -ōrum, N., (*pl.*) arms
iūs, iūris, N., right, justice, law
exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum follow out, assert, execute
magistrātus, -ūs, M., magistracy, magistrate
morior, morī, mortuus sum die
neque, *conj.*, and not, nor
absum, abesse, āfuī be absent, be wanting
suspīciō, -ōnis, F., mistrust, suspicion
ut, *adv.*, as
quīn, *conj.*, that
ipse himself
mors, mortis, F., death
cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum decree, appoint
sibi mortem cōnscīscere (*to appoint death to one's self*) to commit suicide

378. EXERCISES

I. When the state — when the state was attempting — was attempting to assert — to assert its rights — to assert its rights by arms — when the magistrates were collecting — were collecting a multitude of men — were collecting from the country — I die — to die — he died — she died — they died — Orgetorix died — is wanting — nor is the suspicion wanting — as they think — as the Helvetians think — he himself — death — to appoint death — to commit suicide — Orgetorix committed suicide.

II. 1. Cum Orgetorīx rēgnum occupāre cōnārētur coniūrātiō Helvētiīs ēnūntiāta est. 2. Magistrātūs quam māximam multitūdinem hominum coēgērunt ut iūs suum exsequerentur. 3. Orgetorīx ex vinculīs causam dīcere coāctus est nē sē ēriperet. 4. Helvētiī magistrātibus persuāsērunt ut multōs hominēs ex agrīs cōgerent. 5. Orgetorīx sibi mortem cōnscīvit nē īgnī cremārētur.

III. 1. When the states were attempting to assert their rights by arms, Orgetorix died. 2. The states were roused on account of this thing and attempted to assert their rights.

3. Suspicions were not wanting that they committed suicide.
4. The magistrates, who had collected a multitude of men, were hoping to be able to assert their rights.

379. LATIN QUESTIONS

Cūr cōnābātur cīvitās iūs suum armīs exsequī? Quī cōgēbant ex agrīs hominum multitūdinem? Quis est mortuus? Quae erat suspīciō? Quid arbitrābantur Helvētiī? Quis sibi mortem cōnscīvit?

NOTES

380. As **cum** is not followed by an ablative it is evidently **the temporal** conjunction *when* (**105**). When **cum** is followed by an imperfect or pluperfect, the subjunctive is the usual mode (App. **240**), but in such clauses the subjunctive is translated just like the indicative (App. **184**, *c*).

381. armīs: construction? **205.**

382. exsequī: what use of the infinitive? **277.**

383. Ut is followed by the indicative (**arbitrābantur**) and is therefore the adverb *as*. What part of speech is it when followed by the subjunctive?

384. Ipse is the *intensive* (emphatic) pronoun, but need not be translated in this sentence.

385. Cōnscīverit is a perfect subjunctive, to be translated like a perfect indicative.

LESSON LIII

386. TEXT

Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant.

387. VOCABULARY

post, *prep. with acc.*, after — **nihilō**, *adv.*, none, by no means

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

388. The English *himself*, *herself*, etc., are used in two entirely distinct ways. Latin uses two words to express these meanings, and unless one is accustomed to think carefully what the English means he will make mistakes

their use. One of the best reasons for studying a foreign language is that makes one think accurately about his own. Compare *he himself strikes* nd *he strikes himself*. In the former sentence *himself* is the *intensive* pronoun; it emphasizes the idea that *he* rather than any one else does the striking. In the latter sentence *himself* is the *reflexive* pronoun, and shows that he striker receives his own blow. **Ipse** is the intensive pronoun. It is lready known (**299**) that **suī** is the reflexive.

389. Learn the following paradigm, and notice that the declension is lmost identical with that of **alius** (**211**).

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
Gen.	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
Dat.	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**
Acc.	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**	**ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsa**
Abl.	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**

390. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON

It has already been learned (**326**) that the possessive pronoun corresponding to **suī** is **suus, -a, -um.** But **suī** can be used only to refer to the subject, and so also **suus**. **Suus** is the right word in *they leave their* (*own*) *territory*; but **post suam mortem** at the beginning of the text would have meant *after the death of the Helvetians*. Whenever the *his*, *hers*, *its*, or *their* does not refer to the subject, the Latin must use the genitive of a demonstrative pronoun, usually **is**. Examples: **arma ēius laudō,** *I praise his arms;* **arma eōrum laudō,** *I praise their arms.*

391. EXERCISES

I. After his death — none the less — that which — that which they had determined — they attempt to do — they attempt to do that which they had determined [upon] — they attempt to go forth — to go forth from their territory.

II. 1. Gallī suōs fīnēs habent. 2. Gallī eōrum fīnēs habēbunt. 3. Gallī ipsī Germānōs laudāvērunt. 4. Gallī sē laudāvērunt. 5. Helvētiī cōnstituerant ē fīnibus suīs exīre. 6. Helvētiī in fīnēs eōrum profectī sunt. 7. Orgetorīx ipse suam familiam eōdem condūxerat. 8. Magistrātūs ēius fa-

miliae persuāsērunt nē proficīscerētur. 9. Ipse eī **persuādēbit** ut pācem cōnfīrmet. 10. Sibi persuādēre cōnā**bitur** ut pācem cōnfīrmet.

III. 1. The Sequani are in their own territory. 2. The Helvetians too are in their (the Sequanians') **territory**. 3. Orgetorix himself condemned him. 4. Orgetorix condemned himself. 5. The Helvetians call themselves the bravest. 6. The Helvetians themselves are called the bravest.

NOTES

392. ut . . . exeant, *to leave their country.* A substantive clause of desire (purpose) in apposition with **id.** See **359.**

393. Notice the tenses in this text. For **cōnstituerant** see **349**; for **cōnantur, 296**; **exeant** is a present subjunctive used for an imperfect, just as **cōnantur,** a present indicative, is used for a perfect.

LESSON LIV

394. TEXT

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt;

395. VOCABULARY

ubi, *conj.*, where, when
iam, *adv.*, now, already
parātus, -a, -um (*p. p. of* **parō**) prepared, ready
oppidum, -ī, N., a fortified town, town
duodecim, *indecl. numeral*, twelve
vīcus, -ī, M., village, settlement
quadringentī, -ae, -a four hundred
prīvātus, -a, -um private
aedificium, -ī, N., building
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsum set fire to, burn, rouse

PARTICIPLES

396. There are three participles in Latin; — a present active, as **laudāns**, *praising;* a future active, as **laudātūrus**, *about to praise;* and a perfect passive, as **laudātus**, *having been praised.* Notice that this makes no provision for the English form *having praised.* Latin has no perfect active participle, except of course in deponent verbs, where the perfect passive form has an active meaning, so that **cōnātus** means *having attempted.*

397. The present active participle is formed by adding **-ns**, or **-ēns** to the present stem. Example: **laudā- + ns, laudāns,** *praising;* **audi- + ēns, audiēns,** *hearing.* Deponent verbs have this form, though it is active. For declension see App. **38.**

398. The future active participle is formed by adding **-ūrus** to the supine stem. Examples: **laudāt- + ūrus, laudātūrus,** *about to praise;* **dīvīs- + ūrus, dīvīsūrus,** *about to divide.* Deponent verbs have this form also. It is declined like **māgnus.**

For the perfect passive participle see **316.**

399.

FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION	
Pres. Act.	laudāns, -antis	*Pres. Act.*	monēns, -entis
Fut. Act.	laudātūrus, -a, -um	*Fut. Act.*	monitūrus, -a, -um
Perf. Pass.	laudātus, -a, -um	*Perf. Pass.*	monitus, -a, -um

THIRD CONJUGATION		FOURTH CONJUGATION	
Pres. Act.	dūcēns, -entis	*Pres. Act.*	audiēns, -ientis
Fut. Act.	ductūrus, -a, -um	*Fut. Act.*	audītūrus, -a, -um
Perf. Pass.	ductus, -a, -um	*Perf. Pass.*	audītus, -a, -um

THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō	
Pres. Act.	capiēns, -ientis
Fut. Act.	captūrus, -a, -um
Perf. Pass.	captus, -a, -um

400. EXERCISES

I. When they thought — they thought they were prepared — for this thing — for these things — they set fire to — they set fire to their towns — all their towns — twelve in number — about twelve in number — villages — they set fire to the

villages — about four hundred villages — buildings — all the private buildings — they set fire to the remaining private buildings.

II. 1. Dīvidentēs. 2. Cōnfirmātūrī. 3. Factum. 4. Dīvīsūra. 5. Cōnfirmantem. 6. Cōnfectōrum. 7. Obtinentium. 8. Appellātūrō. 9. Appellantibus. 10. Spērātīs. 11. Cōnantibus. 12. Cōnātae. 13. Profectus. 14. Profectūra. 15. Secūtus.

III. 1. The Helvetians will attempt that which they have determined [upon]. 2. They were attempting to go forth from their territories. 3. Because they think they are prepared for these things, they burn to ashes all their private buildings. 4. The towns were about ten in number, and the villages about forty.

401. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quid sunt cōnātī Helvētiī facere? Quandō (*when*) incendērunt sua oppida? Quot oppida habēbant Helvētiī? Quot vīcōs habēbant? Ubi habitant (*live*) Helvētiī? Nōnne Helvētiī incolēbant Galliam?

NOTES

402. ubi . . . arbitrātī sunt: ubi and some similar temporal conjunctions are regularly followed by the perfect or historical present indicative, contrary to the general principle given in **349**.

403. sē . . . esse, *that they were.* Compare **241**.

404. numerō, *in number.* The *ablative of specification* is used to show *in what respect* the statement is true. Compare **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt**. App. **149**.

405. ad: for the translation with numerals see **367**.

LESSON LV

406. TEXT

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent;

407. VOCABULARY

frūmentum, -ī, N., grain

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, except, besides

portō, 1, (*compare* **important**) carry, bring

combūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum (*compare* **cremō, incendō**) burn up, consume

domus, -ūs, F. (*abl.* **domō**), house, home

reditiō, -ōnis, F. [**re** + **eō,** go], a return, a going back

spēs, speī, F., hope

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum lift up, carry away, take away

perīculum, -ī, N., trial, danger

subeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum [**sub,** under + **eō**] undergo, endure

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

408. Corresponding in translation to the English verbal noun in *-ing*, Latin has two forms, the *gerund* and the *gerundive*. The gerund is an active verbal and corresponds closely to the English verbal noun. It may in some uses govern an object just as the English verbal noun does, but almost never in Caesar. So, for the present, never use a gerund with a direct object. Examples: **bellandī cupidī** (**234**), *desirous of fighting*; **parātus ad proficīscendum,** *ready for setting out.* But in *ready for praising him* the gerundive, not the gerund, must be used. The gerund has no nominative or vocative.

409. The gerundive construction seems less natural. The gerundive is really a passive adjective; remember this by the common termination *-ive*. **Laudandus, -a, -um** means *to-be-praised.* Where English says *desirous of praising the Gaul*, Latin says *desirous of the Gaul to-be-praised*, **cupidus Gallī laudandī.** The English object goes into the Latin case required by the governing word, and the gerundive agrees with it. So *of praising the Gauls* is **Gallōrum laudandōrum.**

410. Both gerund and gerundive are formed on the present **stem**. Notice that the forms of the gerund are the same as those of the **genitive**, dative, accusative, and ablative neuter singular of the gerundive.

	Gerund	Gerundive
First Conjugation	laud**andī**, -ō, -um, -ō	laud**andus**, -a, -um
Second Conjugation	mon**endī**, -ō, -um, -ō	mon**endus**, -a, -um
Third Conjugation	dū**cendī**, -ō, -um, -ō	dū**cendus**, -a, -um
Fourth Conjugation	aud**iendī**, -ō, -um, -ō	aud**iendus**, -a, -um
Third Conjugation in -iō	cap**iendī**, -ō, -um, -ō	cap**iendus**, -a, -um

Look back to and explain **ad effēminandōs animōs (69), ad proficīscendum (278), ad eās rēs cōnficiendās (289)**.

411. EXERCISES

I. Grain — all the grain — they burn up the grain — except that which — except that which they intended to carry with them — the hope taken away — the hope of a return taken away — the hope of a returning — of returning home — in order that they might be better prepared — better prepared for enduring all dangers — they were better prepared — the Helvetians were prepared — I am prepared.

II. 1. Ad eam rem cōnficiendam. 2. Cupidus ēius reī cōnficiendae. 3. Cupidus eārum rērum cōnficiendārum. 4. Cupidus perīculōrum subeundōrum. 5. Parātus ad id perīculum subeundum. 6. Ad commeandum dēligitur. 7. Cupidus proficīscendī. 8. Cupidī frūmentī portandī. 9. Parātus ad frūmentum portandum. 10. Parātī ad aedificia incendenda.

III. 1. Ready to burn a village. 2. Ready to burn the villages. 3. Eager to burn the village. 4. Eager to burn the villages. 5. Ready to fight. 6. For seizing upon the royal power. 7. He is chosen to plead the case. 8. They will be chosen to plead the cases.

412. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quantum frūmentī (*how much grain*) combūrunt? Cūr combūrunt omne frūmentum? Quī erant parātiōrēs? Nōnne spēs sublāta est? Quōrum (*whose*) spēs est sublāta? Nōnne Orgetorīx ante haec (*before these things*) mortuus est? (Certē, Orgetorīx ante haec mortuus est.)

NOTES

413. **sēcum**: see **299**.

414. **portātūrī erant**, *they were about to carry*; translate *they intended to carry*. The future active participle with a form of the verb *to be* is called the *active periphrastic conjugation*. It usually expresses *intention*, as here.

415. **Domum** is the accusative expressing the *place to which*. See App. **131**, *a*. For declension see App. **29**, *d*.

416. **spē sublātā**, *when the hope should be taken away*. See **344**.

417. **Subeunda** is the gerundive of the irregular verb **subeō**.

418. **ut . . . essent**: see **358**. **Essent** is the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**.

LESSON LVI

419. TEXT

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

420. VOCABULARY

trēs, tria three
mēnsis, -is, M., month
molō, molere, moluī, molitum grind
cibāria, -ōrum, N., provisions, rations
molita cibāria ground grain, flour
quisque, quidque every one, each one, each (*for declension see App.* **62**)
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum [**ex-** + **ferō**] bring out, carry away
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum order, command

421. DECLENSION OF *TRĒS*

Trēs, *three*, is declined like the plural of adjectives of the third declension.

Nom.	**trēs**	**tria**
Gen.	**trium**	**trium**
Dat.	**tribus**	**tribus**
Acc.	**trēs**	**tria**
Voc.	**trēs**	**tria**
Abl.	**tribus**	**tribus**

422. EXERCISES

I. Three — of three months — provisions for three months — they order each one — they order each one to bring from home — to bring for himself — to bring from home flour for three months — they order each one to burn his house — they intend to carry flour with them — the hope of returning home.

II. 1. Quemque suam domum incendere iubent, ut domum reditiōnis spem tollerent. 2. Quod trium mēnsium cibāria sēcum portātūrī erant, omne reliquum frūmentum combūssērunt. 3. Ad cibāria portanda quam māximum numerum carrōrum comparāvērunt. 4. Ubi quemque suum frūmentum combūrere iussērunt parātī erant ad proficīscendum. 5. Cuique persuāsērunt ut reliquō frūmentō combūstō decem mēnsium cibāria sēcum portāret. 6. Quod Dumnorīx rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupātūrus erat, Orgetorīx eī fīliam in mātrimōnium dedit.

III. 1. They will carry all the grain with them. 2. He intended to carry all the grain with him. 3. The Helvetians thought they were prepared for enduring all dangers. 4. They will carry with them flour for one month. 5. Each one is ordered to burn the buildings. 6. I bring from home all the grain.

NOTES

423. **trium mēnsium,** *for three months*, literally, *of three months.* For this *descriptive genitive*, or *genitive of measure*, see App. **100.**

424. **domō**: ablative of *place from which.* See App. **134**, *a*, 2.

425. **Efferō** is inflected irregularly in some tenses. See **ferō**, App. **81.**

426. Notice that **iubeō** is regularly followed by the accusative and infinitive.

LESSON LVII

427. TEXT

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur;

428. VOCABULARY

Rauracī, -ōrum, M., the Rauraci (*a tribe on the upper Rhine*)

Tulingī, -ōrum, M., the Tulingi (*a German tribe on the Rhine, east of the Rauraci*)

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, M., the Latobrigi (*a German tribe, north of the Tulingi*)

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum use, employ, adopt

cōnsilium, -ī, N., counsel, measure, plan

exūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum burn up, consume

ūnā *adv.* [**ūnus**], in company, together

429. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *ĪDEM*

Review the declension of **is** (**185**). **Īdem,** *the same*, is formed of the demonstrative **is** and the suffix **-dem.** Note the changes undergone by **is** before the suffix.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	**īdem**	**eadem**	**idem**	**eīdem**	**eaedem**	**eadem**
Gen.	**ēiusdem**	**ēiusdem**	**ēiusdem**	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīsdem**	**eīsdem**	**eīsdem**
Acc.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**idem**	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eadem**
Abl.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**	**eīsdem**	**eīsdem**	**eīsdem**

In the plural, **īdem** and **īsdem** are sometimes used instead of **eīdem** and **eīsdem.**

430. EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōdem tempore. 2. Eīsdem temporibus. 3. Eōrundem cōnsiliōrum. 4. Eārundem mēnsium. 5. Eīdem coniūrātiōnī. 6. Eīdem carrō. 7. Eaedem coniūrātiōnēs. 8. Eīdem carrī. 9. Eiusdem vīcī. 10. Eadem oppida. 11. Eādem domō. 12. Eōdem diē.

II. 1. On the same days. 2. Across the same mountains. 3. Of the same beasts of burden. 4. By the same plan. 5 For the same house. 6. For the same river. 7. In the same territory. 8. Into the same territory.

III. 1. They ordered all to bring from home ground grain for a month. 2. He persuades the Rauraci, the Tulingi, the Latobrigi, and the rest of the neighbors to set out together with him. 3. The Rauraci used the same plan. 4. When they had burned up their own towns they were better prepared for undergoing danger.

NOTES

431. Rauracīs, etc. : for the case see **197**.

432. fīnitimīs: relation to the preceding nouns ? See **160**.

433. Utī is another form for **ut**. It can be distinguished from **ūtī**, *to use*, by the quantity of the first vowel, and by the connection.

434. utī . . . proficīscantur, *to set out, to depart*, a substantive clause of desire (purpose) the direct object of **persuādent**. See **359**.

435. eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, *adopting* (or *having used*) *the same plan:* **ūtor** has its object (here **cōnsiliō**) in the ablative. Remember that **potior** also regularly governs the ablative. See **345**, and App. **145**.

436. oppidīs . . . exūstīs, *having burned*, or *when they had burned*, etc. See **344**.

LESSON LVIII

437. TEXT

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

438. VOCABULARY

Bōiī, -ōrum, M., the Boii (*a powerful tribe in Central Gaul*)

Nōricus, -a, -um of the Norici, Norican

trānseō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum [**eō,** go] go across *or* over, cross

Nōrēia, -ae, F., Noreia (*a town of Noricum, now* Neumarkt)

oppūgnō, 1 [**ob + pūgnō,** fight], fight against, assault, storm

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**capiō**] take back, receive

socius, -ī, M., associate, ally

adscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum approve, admit, receive, adopt

439. EXERCISES

I. They persuade their neighbors — the Rauraci and Latobrigi adopted the same plan — to set out from their towns — the Boii dwelt across the Rhine — we had crossed into the Norican territory — let us storm Noreia — they receive the Boii as allies.

II. 1. Bōiī ad oppidum oppūgnandum dēliguntur. 2. Ubi oppida sua exūssērunt Helvētiī profectī sunt. 3. Helvētiī fīnitimīs persuāsērunt ut omnia sua oppida exūrerent. 4. Helvētiī Rauracīs persuādent ut ūnā sēcum proficīscantur, quod eōrum oppidōrum exūrendōrum cupidī erant. 5. Bōiīs ad sē receptīs Helvētiī cōnstituērunt in agrum Sēquanum trānsīre. 6. Aeduōs, quī ā populō Rōmānō amīcī appellātī erant, sociōs sibi adscīvērunt.

III. 1. They receive to themselves as allies the **Boii,** who had dwelt across the river. 2. They persuade the **Boii,** who have crossed into the territory of the Rauraci. 3. The Helvetians intended to storm (**414**) Noreia. 4. The Helvetians think that the Boii are storming Noreia. 5. When the Helvetians were attempting to storm the town they ordered the men to go forth.

440. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quibus populīs persuādent Helvētiī? Quī erant Rauracī et Tulingī et Latobrīgī? Nōnne erant fīnitimī Helvētiīs? Quō cōnsiliō (*what plan*) ūsī sunt? Quōrum exūssērunt oppida? Ubi habitāverant Bōiī? In quem agrum trānsierant? Quod oppidum oppūgnāverant Bōiī? Quī Bōiōs sociōs sibi adscīscunt?

NOTES

441. Oppūgnārant is contracted from **oppūgnāverant.** In the tenses formed from the perfect stem the **v** is sometimes dropped, and the vowel following it then unites with the preceding vowel.

442. Bōiōsque . . . receptōs, etc. The perfect participle, **receptōs,** may be here translated as a coördinate clause; *they admitted among their people* (**ad sē**) *and associated with themselves as allies, the Boii, who had,* etc. Literally, *they associated with themselves as allies the Boii, received,* etc.

LESSON LIX

443. REVIEW

I. Give an account of the events narrated in Chapters IV and V. Translate those chapters.

II. Review the vocabulary in **338.**

VOCABULARY

absum, -esse	**arma, -ōrum,** N.	**cōgō, -ere**
adscīscō, -ere	**cibāria, -ōrum,** N.	**combūrō, -ere**
aedificium, -ī, N.	**cliēns, -entis,** M., F.	**condūcō, -ere**

cōnscīscō, -ere
cōnsilium, -ī, N.
cremō, -āre
damnō, -āre
decem
dīcō, -ere
dictiō, -ōnis, F.
domus, -ī (-ūs), F.
duodecim
efferō, efferre
ēnūntiō, -āre
eōdem
ēripiō, -ere
exsequor, exsequī
exūrō, -ere
familia, -ae, F.
fidēs, -eī, F.
fīrmus, -a, -um
frūmentum, -ī, N.
iam
ignis, -is, M.
incendō, -ere
incitō, -āre
indicium, -ī, N.
iubeō, -ēre
iūdicium, -ī, N.
iūs, iūris, N.
iūsiūrandum, -ī, N.
magistrātus, -ūs, M.
mēnsis, -is, M.
minus
molō, -ere
morior, morī
mors, mortis, F.
mōs, mōris, M.
neque
nihilō
ob
obaerātus, -ī, M.
oportēbat
oppidum, -ī, N.
oppūgnō, -āre
ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.
parātus, -a, -um
per
perīculum, -ī, N.
poena, -ae, F.
portō, -āre
posse
post
potēns, -entis
potior, -īrī
praeter
prīvātus, -a, -um
quadringentī, -ae, -a
quīn
quisque
recipiō, -ere
reditiō, -ōnis, F.
sequor, sequī
socius, -ī, M.
spērō, -āre
spēs, speī, F.
subeō, -īre
suspīciō, -ōnis, F.
tollō, -ere
tōtus, -a, -um
trānseō, -īre
ubi
ūnā
ūtor, ūtī
vīcus, -ī, M.
vinculum, -ī, N.

III. Inflect the present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of **portō, habeō, cōgō, audiō, ēripiō.** Give the participles, gerunds, and gerundives of the same verbs and of **proficīscor.** Decline **iūsiūrandum, domus, trēs, ipse, īdem.**

IV. What case expresses place to which? Place from which? Quality or measure? That in respect to which (specification)? What verbs govern the ablative? In what ways may the ablative absolute be translated? What is the gender of **diēs**? What is the meaning of **ad** with numerals? What is the difference between an intensive and a reflexive pronoun? How are the tenses of the indicative generally used in narration? What tense with **ubi**? How are the tenses of the subjunctive used? Explain the tenses in Chap. V. How is purpose expressed? A substantive clause of desire (purpose)? The subjunctive of what tenses generally follows **cum,** *when?* **Iubeō** governs what constructions? What is the active periphrastic conjugation? When is the gerundive used instead of a gerund? Explain the gerundive construction.

LESSON LX

444. TEXT

Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent:

445. VOCABULARY

omnīnō, *adv.* [**omnis**], altogether, in all

duo, -ae, -o two (*for declension see App.* **49**)

angustus, -a, -um [**angō**, squeeze] narrow, straitened

difficilis, -e [**dis** + **facilis**, easy] hard, difficult

vix, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely, with difficulty

quā, *adv.*, where

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. numeral*, one by one, one at a time

impendeō, -ēre (*other parts wanting*) impend, overhang

perpaucī, -ae, -a very few

nōn, *adv.*, not

446. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM*

Present		Imperfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim	**sīmus**	**essem**	**essēmus**
sīs	**sītis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
sit	**sint**	**esset**	**essent**

447. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *POSSUM*

Possum, *I am able, I can*

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

Present		Imperfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
possim	**possīmus**	**possem**	**possēmus**
possīs	**possītis**	**possēs**	**possētis**
possit	**possint**	**posset**	**possent**

448. RESULT CLAUSES

It has already been learned that **ut** with the subjunctive may express *purpose*. It may also express *result*. The name *purpose* implies that something is willed or intended. In *I do this that he may be rich*, I express my will or intention, my purpose, that he be rich. This is therefore a purpose clause. But in *a mountain overhangs so that you can not pass* it would be absurd to say that the mountain has any will or intention. This is a result clause. In affirmative clauses both purpose and result are expressed by **ut.** But in negative clauses purpose is expressed by **nē**, while result is expressed by **ut nōn**.

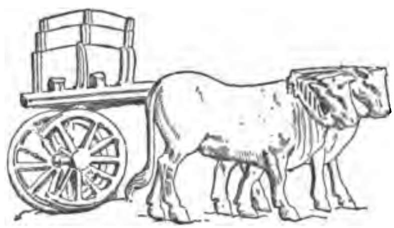
449. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE OF FACT (RESULT)

A substantive clause of desire (purpose) is also an expression of some one's will, or intention. *I persuade him to go* shows that I will or intend him to go. But in *it followed that he went* there is no expression of any one's will, but simply of a resulting fact. Here, again, in affirmative clauses **ut** is used in both purpose and result, but in negative clauses desire is expressed by **nē**, resulting fact by **ut nōn**. Do not forget that **nē** belongs only with expressions of will, and that elsewhere **nōn** is the word for *not*.

The tenses in result clauses are used just as in purpose clauses (**360**).

450. EXERCISES

I. There were two roads — were in all two roads — by which they could go forth — one road — a narrow and difficult road — between the mountain and the river — with difficulty — where carts one by one — where carts could be drawn — Mount Jura was overhanging — the mountains are very high — so that a very few could check — so that they could easily check the Helvetians.



CARRUS
(From Trajan's Column)

II. Hōc faciō ut sim. 2. — ut sītis. 3. — nē sint. 4. Hōc fēcī nē essem. 5. — nē esset. 6. — ut essētis. 7. Est ūnum iter quō itinere possim. 8. — possīmus. 9. — nōn

possint. 10. Erat ūnum iter quō itinere possēmus. 11. — posset. 12. —nōn possētis. 13. Mōns impendet ut nōn possint. 14. — nōn possīs. 15. Mōns impendēbat ut nōn possēmus. 16. — nōn possem.

III. 1. I do this that he may be able. 2. — that he may not be able. 3. I did this that he might be able. 4. — that he might not be able. 5. A mountain overhangs so that we are able. 6. — so that you are not able. 7. A mountain overhung so that they were able. 8. —so that we were not able.

NOTES

451. quibus itineribus, *by which.* Caesar sometimes repeats the antecedent in the relative clause where English usage requires its omission.

452. Numeral adjectives like **singulī**, denoting *how many apiece*, or *how many each*, are called *distributives*. They are inflected like the plural of **māgnus**. See App. **47**.

453. quibus . . . possent and **quā . . . dūcerentur**: characterizing clauses. A characterizing clause tells *what kind* of thing is meant, it describes like an adjective. The former clause means *two passable roads;* the latter, *a road just passable.* For more accurate statement see App. **230**.

LESSON LXI

454. TEXT

Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.

455. VOCABULARY

ultō, *adv.* [**multus**], much, by far

xpedītus, -a, -um unimpeded, quick

ūper, *adv.*, newly, recently

ācō, 1 [**pāx**], pacify, subdue

fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxum flow

nōnnūllus, -a, -um [**nōn+nūllus**] some, several; (*in pl. as subst.*) some, several

vadum, -ī, N., a shallow place, ford

456. THE INDICATIVE OF *POSSUM*

The verb **possum** is a compound of **sum**, and uses the same endings all hrough.

INDICATIVE MODE

Present		Perfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
possum	**possumus**		
potes	**potestis**	**potuī**, etc.	**potuimus**
potest	**possunt**		

Imperfect		Pluperfect	
poteram, etc.	**poterāmus**	**potueram**, etc.	**potuerāmus**

Future		Future Perfect	
poterō, etc.	**poterimus**	**potuerō**, etc.	**potuerimus**

457. EXERCISES

I. There was only one road — this was narrow and difficult — I draw (lead) the cart with difficulty — a mountain overhangs the road — so that I can not prohibit them — the other road is short and easy — the river flows between their territories — the Allobroges had been subdued.

II. 1. There are two ways by which you can depart. 2. There is a difficult journey between the high mountain and the deep river. 3. Very few of the Celts were able to draw the carts. 4. The other road was easy and unimpeded. 5. The Allobroges were recently subdued. 6. The river is crossed in one place by a ford.

458. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quot itinera erant? Ubi ūnum iter erat? Ubi alterum iter erat? Quī populī erant nūper pācātī? Quōmodo Rhodanus trānsītur?

NOTES

459. Look at the map on p. 158 and notice the two possible ways for the Helvetians to leave their country. The one described by Caesar as overhung by a mountain is at Pas de l'Ecluse. The easier way was to cross the Rhone at Geneva or any one of several points between Geneva and Pas de l'Ecluse, and march through the country of the Allobroges.

460. **nōnnūllīs locīs,** ***in several places:*** the ablative of the *place in which.* How is place to which expressed? Place from which? See App. **131**; **134, *a***; **151**.

LESSON LXII

461. TEXT

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur.

462. VOCABULARY

extrēmus, -a, -um last, extreme, farthest

Genāva, -ae, F., Geneva

pōns, pontis, M., bridge

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet

bonus, -a, -um (*comp.* **melior,** *sup.* **optimus**) good, beneficial, kind

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum see; (*in passive*) be seen, seem, appear

exīstimō, 1 (**aestimō**, compute), estimate, think, consider

vel, *conj.*, or

vel . . . vel (*compare* **aut . . . aut**) either . . . or

vīs, vīs, F., force, violence; (*in pl.*) strength

eō, īre, īvī (**iī**), **itum** go, proceed, pass, march (*for inflection see* App. **84**)

patior, patī, passus sum endure, suffer, permit, allow

463. DECLENSION OF *VĪS*

The noun **vīs**, *force, violence*, presents some peculiarities of inflection.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**vīs**	**vīrēs**
Gen.	**vīs** (rare)	**vīrium**
Dat.	**vī** (rare)	**vīribus**
Acc.	**vim**	**vīrēs**
Voc.	**vīs**	**vīrēs**
Abl.	**vī**	**vīribus**

464. EXERCISES

I. The last town — the next town — to the Helvetians' territories—from these towns—he persuades—he persuaded — they thought they would persuade — would persuade the Allobroges — they thought they would compel — would compel by force — would either persuade or compel by force — so that they would permit — would permit them to go — to go through the country of the Allobroges — to go by a far easier way.

II. 1. The towns were nearest the boundaries of the Allobroges. 2. Bridges were extended from these towns across the river. 3. The Helvetians thought they would persuade the Allobroges. 4. They thought they would compel them by force. 5. They thought they would compel them to permit (**ut . . . paterentur**) them to go. 6. The narrow road between the mountains does not permit these to pass.

465. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quod oppidum proximum est Helvētiōrum fīnibus? Quem ad populum pertinet pōns? Quibus exīstimābant sēsē persuāsūrōs? Quid (*what*) exīstimābant vī sēsē coāctūrōs? Erantne (*were they*) bonō animō in populum Rōmānum?

NOTES.

466. For the construction of **fīnibus** see App. **122**; for **Allobrogibus**, **197**; for **vī**, **205**.

467. Persuāsūrōs (**esse**) and **coāctūrōs** (**esse**) are here used as future infinitives, with **sēsē** as their subject. Translate, *thought they would persuade*, etc. For construction see **241**.

468. bonō animō, *of a friendly spirit*: the descriptive ablative. Compare the descriptive genitive, **423**. In this construction the genitive or ablative must be accompanied by an adjective.

469. quod . . . vidērentur, *because they seemed*. So far **quod** has been followed by the indicative. But here the thoughts of the Helvetians are quoted by Caesar, not directly (*we shall persuade because . . . they seem*) but indirectly (*that they would persuade because . . . they seemed*). This is called *indirect discourse*. All subordinate clauses in indirect discourse have the subjunctive. Translate like the indicative.

470. ut . . . paterentur, *to allow*: see **359**.

LESSON LXIII

471. TEXT

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

472. VOCABULARY

rīpa, -ae, F., bank (*of a stream*)
conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [**veniō**] come together, assemble
Kalendae, -ārum (*abbr.* **Kal.**), F., the Calends, the first day of the month
Aprīlis, -e (*abbr.* **Apr.**) April, of April
a. d. V. Kal. Apr. (ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs) the fifth day before the Calends of April
Lūcius, -ī (*abbr.* **L.**), M., Lucius
Aulus, -ī (*abbr.* **A.**), M., Aulus
Gabīnius, -ī, M., Gabinius

473. EXERCISES

I. A departure — for departure — after everything was prepared for departure — they appoint a day — on the fifth

day — on which day (when) — when all should assemble — the banks — should assemble at the banks — the Calends of April — in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius — Piso and Gabinius were consuls — there were two consuls at that time.

II. 1. Helvētiī ad proficīscendum parāre potuērunt. 2. Quod mōns altissimus impendēbat, iter per Sēquanōs nōn dēlēgērunt. 3. Allobrogēs nūper pācātī erant, ut nōndum amīcī populī Rōmānī essent. 4. Quā dē causā Helvētiī existimāvērunt sēsē eīs persuāsūrōs ut sē flūmen trānsīre paterentur. 5. Diem dīxērunt quā diē omnia sua aedificia exūrerent.

III. 1. When everything was prepared they appointed a day. 2. The Allobroges were of a friendly spirit toward their neighbors. 3. I saw the bridge which extended to the farthest banks. 4. They think they will persuade all the Celts.

NOTES

474. omnibus rēbus . . . comparātīs; L. Pīsōne . . . cōnsulibus: for the ablative and its translation see **344**.

475. dīcunt, *they appoint.*

476. quā diē: see **332**, **366**, and **451**.

477. quā . . . conveniant: see **358**.

478. a. d. V. Kal. Apr., *the twenty-eighth of March.* From the Calends, time was reckoned backwards, and both extremes included. Thus, the fifth day before the Calends of April includes both the first of April and the twenty-eighth of March. Here the logical construction would read **erat diēs quīntus ante Kalendās Aprīlēs.** The expression in the text is the regular idiomatic way of expressing dates, but it can not be parsed. The year was 58 B.C.

LESSON LXIV

479. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Perfect		Pluperfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudā**verim**	laudā**verimus**	laudā**vissem**	laudā**vissēmus**
laudā**veris**	laudā**veritis**	laudā**vissēs**	laudā**vissētis**
laudā**verit**	laudā**verint**	laudā**visset**	laudā**vissent**

PASSIVE VOICE

Perfect		Pluperfect	
laudāt**us sim**	laudāt**ī sīmus**	laudāt**us essem**	laudāt**ī essēmus**
laudāt**us sīs**	laudāt**ī sītis**	laudāt**us essēs**	laudāt**ī essētis**
laudāt**us sit**	laudāt**ī sint**	laudāt**us esset**	laudāt**ī essent**

The other conjugations form these tenses in precisely the same way. It will not be necessary, therefore, to give more than the first persons of each tense. The pupil, however, is to inflect each tense in full.

480. SECOND CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Perfect		Pluperfect	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
monu**erim**	monu**erimus**	monu**issem**	monu**issēmus**

PASSIVE VOICE

monit**us sim**	monit**ī sīmus**	monit**us essem**	monit**ī essēmus**

481. THIRD CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

dūx**erim**	dūx**erimus**	dūx**issem**	dūx**issēmus**

PASSIVE VOICE

duct**us sim**	duct**ī sīmus**	duct**us essem**	duct**ī essēmus**

482. FOURTH CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

audī**verim**	audī**verimus**	audī**vissem**	audī**vissēmus**

PASSIVE VOICE

audītus **sim**	audītī **sīmus**	audītus **essem**	audītī **essēmus**

483. THIRD CONJUGATION IN *-iō*

ACTIVE VOICE

cēp**erim**	cēp**erimus**	cēp**issem**	cēp**issēmus**

PASSIVE VOICE

captus **sim**	captī **sīmus**	captus **essem**	captī **essēmus**

484. *SUM*

fu**erim**	fu**erimus**	fu**issem**	fu**issēmus**

485. *POSSUM*

potu**erim**	potu**erimus**	potu**issem**	potu**issēmus**

486. CAUSAL *CUM*

The conjunction **cum** means not only *when*, but *since*, *because*. Meaning *when* it is followed by the subjunctive of only the imperfect and pluperfect tenses, by the indicative of other tenses (for more accurate statement see App. **238–242**). But meaning *since* it is followed by the subjunctive of all tenses, and this construction will be used in the following exercises.

487. SEQUENCE OF TENSES

It has already been seen (**360**) that in purpose clauses the meaning of the subjunctive tenses makes it natural for the present to follow a present or a future, and the imperfect to follow a past tense. In causal clauses the subjunctive has the same meaning that the indicative has after **quod**. It is natural to say *I do this since he praises* (present) or *since he has praised* or *he praised* (perfect) ; but it is not often necessary to say *I do this since he was praising* (imperfect) or *since he had praised* (pluperfect). On the other hand, it is natural to say *I did this since he was praising* (imperfect) or *since he had praised* (pluperfect) ; but it is not often necessary to say *I did this since he praises* (present) or *since he has praised* (perfect). It sounds natural to say *I did this since he praised* (perfect) ; but this means either *he was praising* at the time (imperfect) or *he had praised* (pluperfect). In the same way one could show in all the subjunctive constructions that it is natural to use the present or perfect after a present or future tense, the imperfect or pluperfect after a past tense. This is the meaning of the following rule for the use of subjunctive tenses :

Rule: Principal tenses are followed by principal tenses, historical by historical.

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Principal tenses are:	Present	Present
	Future	
	Perfect (with *have*)	Perfect
	Future Perfect	
Historical tenses are:	Imperfect	Imperfect
	Perfect (English *past*)	
	Pluperfect	Pluperfect

488. EXERCISES

I. 1. Hōc faciō cum appellet. 2. — appellāverit. 3. — appellentur. 4. — appellātī sītis. 5. — conveniant. 6. — convēnerint. 7. — possīmus. 8. — potuerim. 9. — habeam. 10. — habuerimus. 11. — habitī sīmus. 12. — cōgāminī. 13. — coēgeritis. 14. — coāctī sint. 15. — recipiāmur. 16. — recēperit. 17. Hōc fēcī cum portāret. 18. — portātus esset. 19. — essēmus. 20. — fuissent. 21. — possēs. 22. — potuissent. 23. — affectī essētis. 24. — cōgeret. 25. — coāctus esset. 26. — coēgisset. 27. — potīrētur. 28. — potītus essēs. 29. — proficīscerēmur. 30. — profectī essētis.

II. 1. I do this since he thinks. 2. — you thought. 3. — he was called. 4. — they are called. 5. — you have assembled. 6. — he was able. 7. — I am. 8. — they have imported. 9. — you are receiving. 10. — we have been received. 11. I did this since he had been called. 12. — you had assembled. 13. — we were able. 14. — I had been. 15. — we were. 16. — it had been attacked. 17. — we were attacking. 18. — they were making. 19. — he had made. 20. — they had been divided.

LESSON LXV

489. TEXT

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī.

490. VOCABULARY

Caesar, Caesaris, M., Caesar
nūntiō, 1, report, announce
mātūrō, 1, hasten
urbs, urbis, F., city
ulterior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (*no positive form*), farther, more remote
contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum [**tendō**, stretch] strive, contend, hasten, push forward
perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [**veniō**] come through, arrive
mīles, mīlitis, M., soldier
imperō, 1, command, demand from, levy upon
legiō, -ōnis, F., legion
rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum cut or break down, destroy

491. EXERCISES

I. This thing — when this had been reported — to attempt to march — to march through our province — he hastens to depart — to depart from the city — a journey (a march) — by marches — by as great marches as possible — into farther Gaul — he pushes on into farther Gaul — he levies upon the whole province — as great a number as possible — as great a number of soldiers as possible — there was one legion — there were two legions — he orders — he orders that the bridge be broken down — the bridge was at Geneva.

II. 1. When these things had been reported to Caesar, he hastened to depart from the town. 2. They will attempt to march through the Roman province. 3. They were hastening into Gaul by forced marches (**quam māximīs itineribus**).

4. They ordered that the bridges in farther Gaul be broken down. 5. There were in all three legions, which assembled on the farther bank.

492. LATIN QUESTIONS

Cui est id nūntiātum? Nōnne Caesarī est id nūntiātum? Quid est Caesarī nūntiātum? Quid fēcit Caesar? Quā ab urbe mātūrat Caesar proficīscī? (Caesar ab urbe Rōmā mātūrat proficīscī.) Quō (*whither*) contendit Caesar? Quot mīlitēs imperāvit Caesar? Quot legiōnēs erant in Galliā ulteriōre? Quī vidēbantur in populum Rōmānum nōndum bonō animō?

NOTES

493. nūntiātum esset: see **380**. **proficīscī**: see **277**. **rescindī**: see **426**.

494. Caesarī and **prōvinciae** are datives of the indirect object. See App. **114**.

495. Eōs . . . cōnārī is in apposition with **id**, but the same kind of a clause would have been used if **id** had not been expressed. The accusative and infinitive is the regular construction after verbs of *saying* or *telling*, just as it is after verbs of *thinking*.

496. ab urbe: place from which. In **419** no preposition was used. See App. **134**, *a*. To a Roman "the city" was Rome. Caesar had been consul the preceding year and was now making preparations to go to his province. The report of the Helvetians' plans hastened his movements.

497. quam māximīs potest itineribus: compare **276**. There no part of **possum** was used, but the translation is the same whether **possum** is used or not. **Itineribus** is an *ablative of manner;* see App. **142**.

498. Gallia ulterior was Gaul on the further side of the Alps from Rome. What is now called the northern part of Italy was called **Gallia citerior**, *hither Gaul*. Caesar's province included both Gauls, but only so much of Transalpine Gaul as had been conquered. The Allobroges belonged to his province, but the Helvetians did not. In his narrative Caesar explains to the Romans how necessary it was for the safety of the province for him to go outside of his province and do things never thought of by the Romans when they sent him there.

499. legiō: it is not known precisely what the full strength of a Roman legion was at this time. The actual strength varied, just as is the case with our regiments. It probably averaged about 3600 men.

LESSON LXVI

500. TEXT

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

501. VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, M., coming, arrival
certus, -a, -um certain, sure
certiōrem facere to inform
certiōrēs factī sunt they were informed
lēgātus, -ī, M. [**lēgō,** choose, delegate], legate, ambassador, lieutenant
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum send
Nammēius, -ī, M., Nammeius (*a noble Helvetian*)
Verucloetius, -ī, M., Verucloetius (*a noble Helvetian*)
prīnceps, prīncipis chief, principal; (*as subst.*) chief, leader
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without
ūllus, -a, -um (*gen.* **ūllīus,** *dat.* **ūllī**), any
maleficium, -ī N., [**male + faciō**], evil doing, mischief, outrage
nūllus, -a, -um (*gen.* **nūllīus,** *dat.* **nūllī**) no one, none
rogō, 1, ask, request
voluntās, -ātis, F. [**volō,** wish], willingness, will, consent
licet, licēre, licuit (*impers.*) it is allowed, it is permitted

502. EXERCISES

I. When the Helvetians were informed — when I was informed — concerning his arrival — concerning their arrival — they send ambassadors — they sent an ambassador — the most noted of the state — of which embassy (and of this embassy) — the chief place — they were holding the chief place — who should say (to say) — it was their intention — without mischief to make a journey — to march through the province — to ask permission.

II. 1. When Caesar was informed concerning their arrival, he sent an ambassador. 2. They sent ambassadors to say (**quī dīcerent**) that it was their intention to march through Gaul. 3. In this embassy, Nammeius and Verucloetius held the chief place. 4. They sent them to ask permission to go through the province. 5. They inform Caesar that they intend to march through the province.

503. LATIN QUESTIONS

Cūius dē adventū sunt Helvētiī certiōrēs factī? Quōs mittunt ad eum? Quī obtinēbant locum prīncipem? Cūr volēbant per prōvinciam iter facere?

NOTES

504. factī sunt: see **402**. **obtinēbant**: see **349**. **dīcerent**: see **358**. **esse, rogāre**: see **495**. **habērent**: see **469**. **liceat**: see **359**.

505. Observe in the idiomatic phrase **certiōrem facere**, *to inform* (**certiōrēs factī sunt**, *they were informed*), that **certior** (**certiōrēs**) is the comparative of the adjective **certus**, and like any adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

506. sibi esse in animō, *that it was their intention* (lit., *it was to them in mind*). The subject of **esse** is the phrase **sine . . . facere**.

507. rogāre (supply the subject **sē**), *they asked.*

508. ut . . . liceat: the subject is the phrase **ēius . . . facere**, *they asked that to do this with his approval be granted them.* Translate *they asked permission to do this with his approval.*

LESSON LXVII

THE INFINITIVES

509. There are three active infinitives and three passive, though the future passive infinitive is so rare that no use will be made of it in the following exercises. These infinitives are called *present*, *perfect*, and *future*. But notice carefully the difference between these tenses of the infinitive and the corresponding ones of the indicative and subjunctive. When one

uses the present indicative **est** he means that something *is* at the *time of speaking;* the perfect **fuit** means that something *is already over* at the *time of speaking;* the future **erit** means that something *will be* after the *time of speaking.* But the present infinitive means present at the *time of its principal verb;* the perfect infinitive means past in reference to the *time of its principal verb;* and the future infinitive means future to the *time of its principal verb.* For example, the present infinitive of **laudō** is **laudāre. Laudāre** then means that the act of praising belongs to the same time as the act of its principal verb. Notice how it must be translated:

dīcō eum laudāre, *I say him to be praising,* means *I say that he is praising* (now);
dīcam eum laudāre, *I shall say him to be praising,* means *I shall say that he is praising* (at the future time when I say it);
dīxī eum laudāre, *I said him to be praising,* means *I said that he was praising* (at the past time when I said it).

In a similar way the future infinitive **laudātūrus esse** is future to the verb on which it depends.

dīcō eum laudātūrum esse, *I say that he will praise;*
dīcam eum laudātūrum esse, *I shall say that he will praise;*
dīxī eum laudātūrum esse, *I said that he would praise.*

And the perfect infinitive **laudāvisse** is past to the verb on which it depends.

dīcō eum laudāvisse, *I say that he praised;*
dīcam eum laudāvisse, *I shall say that he praised;*
dīxī eum laudāvisse, *I said that he had praised.*

510. The future active infinitive is made up of the future active participle and **esse**; and the perfect passive infinitive is made up of the perfect passive participle and **esse.** These participles agree in gender, number, and case, with the subject of the infinitive. Examples: **dīcō eum laudātūrum esse,** *I say that he will praise;* **dīcō eam laudātūram esse,** *I say that she will praise;* **dīcō eōs laudātūrōs esse,** *I say that they will praise.*

	FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres.	laudāre	laudārī	monēre	monērī
Perf.	laudāvisse	laudātus esse	monuisse	monitus esse
Fut.	laudātūrus esse	laudātum īrī	monitūrus esse	monitum īrī

	THIRD CONJUGATION		FOURTH CONJUGATION	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres.	dūcere	dūcī	audīre	audīrī
Perf.	dūxisse	ductus esse	audīvisse	audītus esse
Fut.	ductūrus esse	ductum īrī	audītūrus esse	audītum īrī

	THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō		*SUM*	*POSSUM*
Pres.	capere	capī	esse	posse
Perf.	cēpisse	captus esse		potuisse
Fut.	captūrus esse	captum īrī	futūrus esse	

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

511. It has already been learned that the accusative and infinitive construction must be used after verbs of *saying* or *thinking*. Now whenever "he says" or "he thinks" is used with an object clause, some one's words or thoughts are being quoted. This may be done in two ways: *he says "I will come,"* or *he says that he will come*. In the former sentence the man's exact words are used; that is, he is quoted *directly*, or in *direct discourse;* in the latter the substance of what he says is given, not in his exact words, but with a change of construction; that is, he is quoted *indirectly*, or in *indirect discourse*. If the student has thoroughly understood what has been said about the tenses of the infinitive, he has mastered the chief difficulty of indirect discourse. When an English sentence is to be put into Latin, stop and think what the original words of the quoted sentence must have been. Then use the tense of the infinitive that corresponds to the original tense used by the speaker, and it will be right. For example, in *he said that he was rich*, the original words must have been *I am rich;* so the present infinitive is right. In *he said that he had been rich*, the original words might have been *I have been* (Latin perfect) *rich*, *I was* (Latin perfect) *rich*, or *I was* (Latin imperfect) *rich*. All these are past in time and the perfect infinitive is the only past infinitive, so it is right. In *he said that he would be rich*, the original words were *I shall be rich*, and the future infinitive is right.

512. One other thing must be remembered. Wherever the original speaker used a personal or possessive pronoun of the first person (that is, when he said *I*, *we*, *us*, *my*, *our*, etc.) the indirect discourse uses some form of **suī** or **suus**; for the other persons, it uses some form of **is** or some other demonstrative. For example, if *he says that he is rich* stands for *I am rich*, **sē esse** must be used; if it stands for *he is rich*, **eum esse**.

513. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dīcit sē contendere. 2. Dīxit sē contendere. 3. Dīcit eum contendisse. 4. Dīxit eum contendisse. 5. Dīcit sē contentūrum esse. 6. Dīxit sē contentūrum esse. 7. Dīcit eōs appellārī. 8. Dīxit eōs appellārī. 9. Dīxit sē appellātum esse. 10. Dīxit eōs appellātōs esse. 11. Dīcit sē appellāvisse. 12. Dīcit eōs coēgisse. 13. Dīxit eōs coāctōs esse. 14. Dīcit Caesarem dīvīsūrum esse. 15. Dīxit Gallōs profectōs esse. 16. Dīxit sē esse fortem. 17. Dīcit eōs fuisse fortēs. 18. Dīxit Helvētiōs oppidum oppūgnātūrōs esse. 19. Dīxit sē dīvitem futūrum esse. 20. Dīcit Helvētiōs domō exīre cōnātūrōs esse.

II. 1. He said that he was attacking. 2. He said that they were being attacked. 3. He says that they will attack. 4. He said that they had been attacked. 5. He says that they have attacked. 6. He said that they had attacked. 7. He says that they will attempt. 8. He said that they had gained possession. 9. He said that they would persuade. 10. He says that they have persuaded. 11. He says that he will condemn. 12. He said that Orgetorix was being condemned. 13. He says that they have condemned Orgetorix. 14. He said that the Helvetians had attempted to condemn. 15. He said that he would set out.

514. NOTES

Deponent verbs have the present passive, perfect passive, and the future active infinitives. For example, **cōnārī, cōnātus esse, cōnātūrus esse.**

LESSON LXVIII

515. TEXT

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat.

516. VOCABULARY

memoria, -ae, F., memory, recollection
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum retain, hold
Cassius, -ī, M., Cassius (*a Roman name*)
occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum kill, slay
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum drive, rout, beat
sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under
iugum, -ī, N. [**iungō,** join], yoke
concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum concede, yield, grant, allow
putō, 1, (*compare* **exīstimō**) think, decide
inimīcus, -a, -um [**in,** *neg.* + **amīcus**] unfriendly, hostile
facultās, -ātis, F., ability, means, opportunity
temperō, 1, refrain, forbear
iniūria, -ae, F. [**in,** *neg.* + **iūs,** right], injustice, wrong, violence



LEGIONARIUS

517. EXERCISES

I. Caesar remembered (was holding in memory) — he remembered that the consul had been slain — he remembered that the army had been sent under the yoke — he thought — he did not think it ought to be granted — a man — men of hostile spirit — opportunity — given the opportunity of marching — when an opportunity was given — of marching through the province — he considered — nor did he consider

that they would refrain from wrong — from mischief — he thought that the men would refrain.

II. 1. Caesar remembered that the consuls had been slain and their armies beaten. 2. Their armies were sent under the yoke by the Helvetians. 3. The men thought it ought not to be granted. 4. They did not think that the men would refrain from mischief. 5. When an opportunity to make a journey was given (**datā facultāte**), they sent ambassadors.

518. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quid tenēbat Caesar memoriā? Quī cōnsul est occīsus? Cūius exercitus est sub iugum missus? Quid putābat Caesar? Quid exīstimābat Caesar?

NOTES

519. cōnsulem: see **160**. **Helvētiīs**: see **320**. **animō**: see **468**. **facultāte**: see **344**.

520. Memoriā tenēre, *to remember*, is equivalent in meaning to a verb of thinking, and is followed by the accusative and infinitive.

521. Esse is very often omitted in the future active and perfect passive infinitives. Here it is to be supplied with **occīsum, pulsum, missum,** and **temperātūrōs.**

522. L. Cassium: Lucius Cassius Longinus, consul in 107 B.C., and slain in battle by the Tigurini, a part of the Helvetii.

523. sub iugum missum: two spears were set upright in the ground and a third fastened across their tops. A defeated army was made to march under this in token of submission.

524. Sub governs its cases on the same principle as **in.** See App. **154.**

525. concēdendum: supply **esse.** The gerundive with some form of the verb **sum,** expressed or understood, is used in Latin to express necessity or obligation. This is generally rendered by the use of the auxiliaries *must* or *ought.* Thus **concēdendum nōn putābat,** *he did not think it was to be granted* or *ought to be granted.* This forms what is called the second, or passive, periphrastic conjugation. Compare **414.**

526. faciundī: another form of the gerundive. See **409.**

527. Notice that the imperfect is used in the principal verbs here (see **349**), because these sentences describe the condition of things under which Caesar gave the reply in the next sentence.

LESSON LXIX

528. TEXT

Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

529. VOCABULARY

tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless
spatium, -ī, N., space, period of time
intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [**cēdō**, go] go between, intervene
dum, *conj.*, while, until
respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum answer, reply
dēlīberō, 1 [**lībra**, balance], weigh well, consider, deliberate
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum take, employ
sī, *conj.*, if
quis, quid, *indef. pron.*, any one, any thing
volō, velle, voluī wish (*for inflection see App.* **82**)
Īdūs, Īduum, F., (*pl.*) the Ides
revertor, -vertī, -versus sum [**vertō**, turn] turn back, return

530. EXERCISES

I. That a period of time might intervene — to reply — he replied to the ambassadors — he replied that he would take a day — a day for deliberating — until they should assemble — until the soldiers should assemble — the soldiers whom he had levied — if they wished anything — I return — he should return — they should return — about the thirteenth of April (**ad Īdūs Aprīlēs**).

II. 1. I think that a great period of time can (**posse**) intervene. 2. The soldiers whom he had levied assembled. 3. They were replying that they would take three days for deliberating. 4. He came about the thirteenth of April. 5. I remember (hold in memory) that they have not refrained from injustice.

NOTES

531. posset: see **358**. **lēgātis:** see **494**.

532. dēlīberandum: see **408**. **sē . . . sūmptūrum:** see **511** and **512**.

533. dum mīlitēs convenīrent, *until the soldiers should muster.* For the subjunctive see App. **235**, *b*.

534. sī quid, *if anything.* **Quis,** interrogative, and **quis,** indefinite, have exactly the same forms. When indefinite, the form of **quis** is generally preceded by **sī, nisi, num,** or **nē**. For inflection see App. **61**.

535. Vellent is subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in indirect discourse; **reverterentur,** because it represents an imperative in direct discourse. Caesar's original words were, probably, **sī quid vultis, ad Īdūs Aprīlēs revertiminī.**

536. Īdūs: the Ides were the 13th of each month, excepting March, May, July, and October, when they were the 15th.

LESSON LXX

537. TEXT

Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit,

538. VOCABULARY

intereā, *adv.*, meantime, meanwhile
īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxum [**fluō**] flow into, empty
novem, *indecl. numeral*, nine
mūrus, -ī, M., wall
altitūdō, -inis, F. [**altus**], height, depth
pēs, pedis, M., foot
sēdecim [**sex + decem**] sixteen
fossa, -ae, F., trench, ditch
perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [**dūcō**] lead through, construct
opus, operis, N., work, labor, fortification
perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**per + faciō**] make through, complete, finish
praesidium, -ī, N., guard, garrison, defence
dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [**pōnō,** place] place apart, dispose, arrange, station

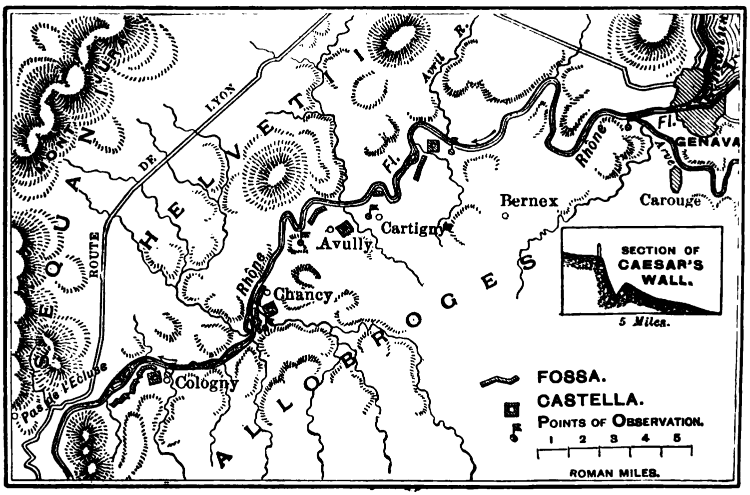
539. EXERCISES

I. A legion — with (by the help of) this legion — the legion which he had — he had with him — with the soldiers — who had assembled — who assembled — he constructs a ditch — he constructs a wall — a wall sixteen feet in height — a wall nineteen miles in length — from the lake — he constructs a wall from the lake to the river — when the work was finished (**eō opere perfectō**) — he stations garrisons.

II. 1. With one legion and with many soldiers whom he had with him, he constructed a wall nineteen miles long. 2. They will construct a wall from Mount Jura to Lake Geneva. 3. He thought he could finish that work with one legion. 4. The Helvetians thought that Caesar would give them an opportunity of marching through the province.

540. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quot legiōnēs habēbat Caesar sēcum? Quot mīlitēs habēbat sēcum? (Nesciō.) Ad quem montem perdūcit mūrum? Mōns Iūra quōrum fīnēs dīvidit?



NOTES

541. **legiōne, mīlitibus**: see **205**. **mīlia**: see **249**. **pedum**: see **423**.

542. **decem novem,** *nineteen:* the more usual form is **ūndēvīgintī**.

543. The banks of the Rhone for most of the distance between Geneva and Pas de l'Ecluse are so high and steep that they can have required no artificial fortification. The map shows the points at which it is supposed that the wall and ditch were made.

LESSON LXXI

544. **TEXT**

Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs,

545. **VOCABULARY**

castellum, -ī, N., fort, redoubt
commūniō, 4 [**mūniō,** fortify], fortify strongly, intrench
quō, *conj.*, in order that
invītus, -a, -um unwilling
negō, 1, to say . . . not, deny
exemplum, -ī, N., example
ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum show, declare
dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [**iaciō,** hurl] (*see App.* **7**) throw *or* cast down, disappoint
nāvis, -is, F., ship, vessel, boat
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum join, unite
ratis, -is, F., raft, bark
complūrēs, -a (-ia) [**plūs**] several, many

546. **EXERCISES**

I. The fortification was completed — of stationing the garrison — a redoubt — he fortifies redoubts — that he may check them the more easily — if they attempt — against his will — against the Helvetians' will — the day which he had appointed

— he had appointed with the ambassadors — the day came — he says that he can not give — in accordance with the custom (**mōre**) — he shows that he will check — disappointed in this expectation — having joined together boats — by forming many rafts — the rafts and boats.

II. 1. When this work was completed they stationed the garrison in the fort. 2. He could check (**prohibēre poterat**) them if they attempted to cross against his will. 3. When those days which he had appointed with the soldiers came, he said that he could not give a way to any one. 4. He showed that he would check them if they attempted to use (**facere**) violence. 5. The Helvetians were disappointed in this expectation (**spē**).

547. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quod opus est perfectum? Quis commūnit castella? Cūr Caesar disposuit praesidia? Quid negāvit Caesar sē facere posse? Quī erant animō dēiectī? Quas rēs iūnxērunt Helvētiī? Quid fēcērunt? Nōnne complūrēs ratēs fēcērunt? (Ita est, fēcērunt ratēs complūrēs.)

NOTES

548. trānsīre, prohibēre, dare, facere: see **277**. **vēnit, revertērunt**: see **402**. **mōre, exemplō**: see **353**. **ūllī**: see **494**. **cōnentur**: see **535**.

549. quō facilius prohibēre possit, *the more easily to check them.* **Quō** (= **ut eō**) rather than **ut** introduces a *purpose* clause whenever that clause contains a word in the comparative degree.

550. sē invītō, *against his will* (*he being unwilling*). In this ablative absolute an adjective (**invītō**) takes the place of the participle (as in **opere perfectō, 544**) or the second noun (as in **M. Messālā,** etc., **181**). See App. **150.**

551. spē: *ablative of separation.* See App. **134.**

LESSON LXXII

552. TEXT

Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

553. VOCABULARY

minimus, -a, -um (*sup. of* **parvus,** small) least, smallest
nōnnumquam, *adv.* [**numquam,** never], sometimes
interdiū, *adv.*, by day
noctū, *adv.* [**nox,** night], by night
perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum [**rumpō,** break] break through
mūnītiō, -ōnis, F. [**mūniō,** fortify], fortifying, fortification, defence
concursus, -ūs, M. [**cursus,** running], running together, onset
tēlum, -ī, N., weapon, missile, spear, javelin (*used for fighting at a distance*)
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum [**re-** + **pellō,** drive, beat] drive back, repulse
cōnātus, -ūs, M. [**cōnor**], attempt, effort
dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum [**sistō,** stand] stand *or* leave off, give up, refrain, desist

554. EXERCISES

I. The disappointed Helvetians — by joining boats and making rafts — where the fords were — the least depth of the river — by day and by night — sometimes by night — having attempted to break through — repulsed by the strength of the work — repulsed by the onset of the soldiers — they desisted from this attempt — I will refrain from mischief.

II. 1. The Helvetians, who were disappointed in their expectations, made several rafts and boats. 2. They were not able to break through because of the strength of our fortifications. 3. The onset of the soldiers made the Helvetians

refrain from these attempts. 4. In accordance with the example of the Roman people he said that he could not grant a passage (**iter**).

NOTES

555. One might expect some word corresponding to **aliī**, but the meaning is clear: some tried to cross by the boats and rafts, *others by fords*.

556. sī . . . cōnātī, *trying to see if they could force their passage:* **sī** is here employed, in the sense of *whether* or *to see if*, to introduce an indirect question. The indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

557. repulsī, *they were driven back and.* For this use of the perfect participle see **442**.

558. cōnātū: see **551**.

LESSON LXXIII

559. REVIEW

I. Give an account of the events narrated in Chapters VI–VIII. Translate those chapters.

II. Review the vocabulary in **443**.

VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, M.
altitūdō, -inis, F.
angustus, -a, -um
Aprīlis, -e
bonus, -a, -um
castellum, -ī, N.
certus, -a, -um
commūniō, -īre
complūrēs, -a
cōnatus, -ūs, M.
concēdō, -ere
concursus, -ūs, M.
contendō, -ere
conveniō, -īre
dēiciō, -ere
dēlīberō, -āre
dēsistō, -ere
difficilis, -e
dispōnō, -ere
dum
duo
eō, īre
exemplum, -ī, N.
existimō, -āre
expedītus, -a, -um
extrēmus, -a, -um
facultās, -ātis, F.
fluō, -ere
fossa, -ae, F.
Īdūs, Īduum, F.
impendeō, -ēre
imperō, -āre
īnfluō, -ere
inimīcus, -a, -um
iniūria, -ae, F.
intereā
intercēdō, -ere
interdiū
invītus, -a, -um
iugum, -ī, N.
iungō, -ere
Kalendae, -ārum, F.
lēgātus, -ī, M.
legiō, -ōnis, F.
licet
maleficium, -ī, N.
mātūrō, -āre
memoria, -ae, F.
mīles, -itis, M.
minimus, -a, -um
mittō, -ere

multō	**perdūcō, -ere**	**sī**
mūnītiō, -ōnis, F.	**perficiō, -ere**	**sine**
mūrus, -ī, M.	**perpaucī, -ae, -a**	**singulī, -ae, -a**
nāvis, -is, F.	**perrumpō, -ere**	**spatium, -ī,** N.
negō, -āre	**perveniō, -īre**	**sub**
noctū	**pēs, pedis,** M.	**sūmō, -ere**
nōndum	**pōns, pontis,** M.	**tamen**
nōnnūllus, -a, -um	**praesidium, -ī,** N.	**tēlum, -ī,** N.
nōnnumquam	**prīnceps, prīncipis,** M.	**temperō, -āre**
novem	**putō, -āre**	**teneō, -ēre**
nūllus, -a, -um	**quā**	**ūllus, -a, -um**
nūntiō, -āre	**quō**	**ulterior, -ius**
nūper	**ratis, -is,** F.	**urbs, urbis,** F.
occīdō, -ere	**repellō, -ere**	**vadum, -ī,** N.
omnīnō	**rescindō, -ere**	**vel**
opus, operis, N.	**respondeō, -ēre**	**videō, -ēre**
ostendō, -ere	**revertor, revertī**	**vīs, vīs,** F.
pācō, -āre	**rīpa, -ae,** F.	**vix**
patior, patī	**rogō, -āre**	**volō, velle**
pellō, -ere	**sēdecim**	**voluntās, -ātis,** F.

III. Decline **vīs.** Inflect **possum.** Inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of **portō, teneō, dīcō, commūniō.** Give all infinitives of the same verbs and of **arbitror.**

IV. What is the case of the indirect object? What two cases are used to express description? What case expresses place in which? Separation? Manner? What difference between clauses introduced by **nē** and by **ut nōn?** Give English examples to illustrate. Difference between a result clause and a substantive clause of result or fact? What is a characterizing clause? What mode does causal **cum** take? Causal **quod?** What does the "rule of sequence of tenses" mean? What is the difference between indicative tenses and infinitive tenses? What is indirect discourse? When must **suī** be used in indirect discourse? What mode is used in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse? What is the passive periphrastic conjugation?

LESSON LXXIV

560. TEXT

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.

561. VOCABULARY

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum leave behind, leave; (*in passive*) be left, remain

via, -ae, F., way, road, route

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of

angustiae, -ārum, F. [**angustus**], (*pl.*) narrow straits, narrow pass

sponte (*abl.*; *gen.* **spontis**) by influence, willingly, of one's own accord

dēprecātor, -ōris, M., intercessor, mediator, advocate

impetrō, 1, obtain (*by request or entreaty*), succeed in obtaining

562. Learn thoroughly the conjugation of the irregular verb **eō,** *I go.* See App. **84.**

563. EXERCISES

I. One way (road) remained — the way through the Sequani — to go — they could not go — on account of the narrow pass — against his will — against the Sequanians' will — since they could not persuade these — by their own influence — ambassadors were sent to Dumnorix — they send ambassadors — they sent in order to get permission from the Sequani — Dumnorix was the intercessor — he made the attempt by day.

II. 1. One way is left, and by it they can not go against the will of the Sequanians. 2. He can not (is not able to) persuade them to do it by his own influence. 3. They sent an ambassador to Dumnorix to get permission from the Sequani. 4. With Dumnorix as their advocate they hope to obtain their request. 5. The fortifications were broken through by the onset of the soldiers.

564. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quot viae relinquēbantur per Sēquanōs? Poterantne Sēquanīs hōc persuādēre? (Nēquāquam; id Sēquanīs persuādēre minimē poterant.) Ad quem mīsērunt lēgātōs? Quis erat Dumnorīx? (Dumnorīx prīnceps erat Helvētiōrum plēbīque acceptus.) Nōnne Dumnorīx amīcus Helvētiīs erat? (Ita quidem, is Helvētiīs amīcissimus erat.)

NOTES

565. quā . . . poterant, *and by it they could,* etc. Compare this relative clause with the characterizing clause **quibus . . . possent** in **444,** and notice the difference in meaning. If this were a characterizing clause it would mean *only one road of the impassable kind:* not at all what this clause means. See App. **173,** *a.*

566. Sēquanīs invītīs, *against the will of the Sequani,* or *if the Sequani should refuse.* For the construction see on **sē invītō, 550.**

567. cum . . . possent, *since they could not,* etc. See **486.**

568. eō dēprecātōre, *by his mediation* or *with him as advocate.* Observe that the pronoun **eō** is here employed instead of a noun, as in **550.**

569. ut . . . impetrārent, *that they might obtain (consent).*

LESSON LXXV

570. TEXT

Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

571. VOCABULARY

grātia, -ae, F., favor, esteem, popularity
largītiō, -ōnis, F., giving freely, liberality, bribery
plūrimum, *sup. adv.*, most, especially
plūrimum posse to be the most powerful
novus, -a, -um new
novae rēs a new state of affairs, a revolution
studeō, studēre, studuī desire, be eager for
beneficium, -ī, N. [**bene,** well + **faciō**], well doing, kindness, benefit
obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum bind, hold (*under obligations*)
itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore, accordingly
obses, obsidis, M., F., hostage, pledge, security

572. EXERCISES

I. Dumnorix was most powerful — he was most powerful because of his popularity — by bribery — Dumnorix was a friend to the Helvetians — the daughter of Orgetorix — to marry the daughter of Orgetorix — Dumnorix was desiring a revolution — Dumnorix was wishing to have as many states (tribes) as possible — to have held under obligations — bound by benefits — therefore he undertakes the matter (**rem**) — he obtains from the Sequani — that they permit — the Sequani permit the Helvetians to go — he causes (**perficit**) them to give (**ut dent**) hostages — not to hinder the Helvetians — to cross without injury.

II. 1. The Helvetians were very powerful, but (**sed**) were not friendly to the Romans. 2. Dumnorix married (led in marriage) the daughter of Orgetorix. 3. The people were influenced by a desire of royal power, and were eager for a revolution. 4. The men will desire to have as many states as possible under obligations because of their kindness. 5. Dumnorix caused hostages to be given between the Sequanians and the Helvetians.

573. LATIN QUESTIONS

Apud quem populum poterat Dumnorīx plūrimum? Quibus erat ipse amīcus? Cūius fīliam dūxit in mātrimōnium? Quibus rēbus studēbat? Quid volēbat? Quid impetrāvit Dumnorīx ā Sēquanīs? Quid ipse perfēcit?

NOTES

574. cupiditāte, beneficiō: see **205**. **inter sēsē**: see **339** and App. **166**. **itinere**: see **551**.

575. Dumnorix: see Chap. III. This is the Dumnorix who had conspired with Orgetorix. Although that plot had failed he was still seeking a chance to make himself king.

576. grātiā et largītiōne, *because of his popularity and lavish giving.* See **204**.

577. Helvētiīs: the dative with adjectives. See App. **122**.

578. rēbus: the dative is regular with **studeō**. For the rule including **studeō, imperō, persuādeō** see App. **115**.

579. ut . . . patiantur, utī . . . dent: substantive clauses, objects of **impetrat** and **perficit**. It is better to call them substantive clauses of desire (purpose), though some regard them as result. App. **224** and **227**.

580. nē . . . prohibeant, ut . . . trānseant: substantive clauses of desire (purpose) after the implied phrase *they bind themselves*.

LESSON LXXVI

581. TEXT

Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret.

582. VOCABULARY

renūntiō, 1 [**nūntius**, messenger], to announce back, report

Santonēs, -um (Santonī, -ōrum), M., the Santones *or* Santoni (*a Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Garonne*)

Tolōsātēs, -ium, M., Tolosates (*a tribe in the province*)

fīō, fierī, factus sum (*pass. of* **faciō**) to be made *or* done, to happen

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum understand, know

bellicōsus, -a, -um [**bellum**] full of war, warlike

patēns, patentis (*pres. part. of* **pateō**) open, exposed

frūmentārius, -a, -um [**frūmentum**] pertaining to grain, fruitful

583. Learn thoroughly the conjugation of the irregular verb **fīō**. See App. **83**.

584. EXERCISES

I. It is reported to Caesar — it is reported that the Helvetians intend — to march through the country of the Sequanians — who are not far distant — which tribe (and this tribe) — if this should happen — he knew it would be — with great danger (attended with great danger) — with great danger to the province — that it should have warlike men — in places — in especially fruitful places — there were many places.

II. 1. The men reported to Caesar that the people intended (**populō esse in animō**) to march without mischief. 2. If these things should happen, they thought it would be attended with (**cum**) great danger. 3. Warlike men were the enemies of the Roman people and dwelt in fruitful places. 4. Dumnorix, who was very powerful among the common people, wished to bind the Tolosates by his kindness. 5. The liberality and popularity of Dumnorix were known to Caesar.

585. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quibus erat in animō (*who intended*) per agrum Sēquanōrum iter facere? Ubi habitābant Santonēs? Erantne

Tolosātēs in prōvinciā Rōmānā? Quid intellegēbant futūrum esse perīculōsum (*dangerous*)?

NOTES

586. Caesarī: see **494**. **esse in animō**: see **506**. **fieret**: see **535**. **ut . . . habēret**: see **449**. **inimīcōs**: see **160**. **locīs**: see **577**.

587. renūntiātur: here used impersonally. The subject is the following clause.

588. Sēquanōrum: the *possessive genitive* limiting **agrum**. The possessive genitive expresses the *author* or *owner* and corresponds to the English possessive or the objective with *of*. App. **99**. This is the most common of the genitive constructions. Compare **ipsōrum, 22**: **Belgārum, 122**; **Galliae, 148**; and numerous other examples in the other preceding lessons.

589. nōn longē: in fact, the Santones lived at a considerable distance from the province. Caesar is giving a mere pretext.

590. intellegēbat . . . futūrum (esse), *he knew it would be* (*attended*) *with great danger to the province* (lit. *with the great danger of the province*). The subject of **futūrum (esse)** is the clause **ut . . . habēret**. **Futūrum** has the neuter singular ending **-um**, since clauses (or phrases) used substantively are regarded as of the neuter gender. See App. **13**.

591. The adjective-ending **-ōsus**, denotes *fulness*, and is very often the equivalent of the English adjective-ending *-ose*, or *-ous*; e.g., **bellic-ōsus**, *full of war*, *bellicose*; **verb-ōsus**, *full of words*, *verbose*; **calamit-ōsus**, *calamitous*.

592. The adjective-ending **-ārius** means *pertaining to*, *belonging to*, and is represented in English by the termination *-arian* or *-ary*; e.g., **agrārius**, *agrarian*; **auxiliārius**, *auxiliary*.

LESSON LXXVII

593. **TEXT**

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

594. **VOCABULARY**

Titus, -ī (*abbr.* **T.**), M., Titus
Labiēnus, -ī, M., Labienus
praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**faciō**] make *or* place over *or* before, put in command of
Ītalia, -ae, F., Italy (*sometimes, in Caesar, including Cisalpine Gaul*)
ibi, *adv.*, in that place, there
cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum [**scrībō,** write] write together, enroll, enlist
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around, about, near
Aquilēia, -ae, N., Aquileia (*a city of Cisalpine Gaul*)
hiemō, 1, to winter, to pass the winter
ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum lead out, lead forth
hībernus, -a, -um winter, pertaining to winter
hīberna, -ōrum (*supply* **castra**) winter quarters, winter camp
Alpēs, -ium, F. (*pl.*), the Alps
quīnque, *indecl. numeral,* five

595. Learn the declension of **duo.** See App. **49.**

596. **EXERCISES**

I. For this reason — he placed the lieutenant over the fortification — he was hastening by forced marches — two legions were levied by Caesar — he will lead three legions from winter quarters — the nearest route is over the Alps — legions are levied there — let us hasten to go with these — Caesar had five legions.


LEGATUS

II. 1. Lieutenants were placed over these fortifications. 2. Caesar himself will hasten into farther Gaul. 3. The three legions which were enlisted were led forth from winter quarters. 4. They passed the winter about Aquileia in farther Gaul. 5. It is reported that these warlike men are passing the winter in Gaul. 6. He put Labienus in charge of the legion which had passed the winter in farther Gaul.

597. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quem praefēcit Caesar eī mūnītiōnī? Quō contendit Caesar? Quōmodo contendit ipse in Ītaliam? Quot legiōnēs ibi cōnscrīpsit? Quot legiōnēs ēdūxit ex hībernīs? Ubi hiemābant illae legiōnēs? Quō contendit Caesar īre? Quot cum legiōnibus? Quōs per montēs erat iter proximum?

NOTES

598. eī mūnītiōnī praefēcit, *he put in command of that fortification.* The dative of the indirect object follows many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super.** App. **116,** I. Compare **fīnitimīs bellum īnferre; sibi suscēpit (sub + cēpit).** The dative is not governed by the preposition, but the preposition so modifies the meaning of the verb as to make it take an indirect object.

599. māgnīs itineribus, *by forced marches.* The ablative, with an adjective in agreement or a limiting genitive or with the preposition **cum,** is used to describe the *manner* of an action. This ablative answers the question *how*, and is called the *ablative of manner.* App. **142.** Compare **māgnō cum perīculō, 581.**

600. cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus: accompaniment is regularly denoted by the ablative with **cum.** App. **140.** This construction is called the *ablative of accompaniment.*

LESSON LXXVIII

601. TEXT

Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

602. VOCABULARY

Ceutronēs, -um, M., the Ceutrones (*a tribe in the province*)

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, M., the Graioceli (*a Gallic tribe in the Graian Alps*)

Caturīgēs, -um, M., the Caturiges (*a Gallic tribe in the province*)

superior, -ius (*comp. of* **superus,** above) upper, higher, superior, previous, former

Ocelum, -ī, N., Ocelum (*a town of the Graioceli*)

citerior, -ius [**cis,** on this side] nearer, hither

Vocontiī, -ōrum, M., the Vocontii (*a Gallic tribe between the Isere and Durance*)

septimus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral,* seventh

inde, *adv.*, from that place, from there, thence

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, M., the Segusiavi (*a tribe east of the Rhone*)

extrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, without

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond, over

603. EXERCISES

I. The higher places were seized — to stop the army from advancing (from its march) — these tribes (**populi**) were beaten — Ocelum is the farthest town of the province — of the hither province — he arrives on the seventh day — from thence into the country of the Allobroges — the army is led away from the Allobroges — the Segusiavi are without the province.

II. 1. They did this in order to hinder our army from marching. 2. Caesar defeated them in many battles and marched from Ocelum to the Vocontii. 3. Ocelum is a town of the Graioceli in the hither province. 4. The army was led by Caesar among the Segusiavi, who were the first across the river. 5. Caesar placed a lieutenant over the army which he levied in hither Gaul.

NOTES

604. prōvinciae: see **588**. **diē**: see **332**.

605. complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, *when these had been beaten in many battles*. Note the *interlocked* order of words.

606. extrēmum: supply **oppidum**.

607. **in fīnēs,** *into the country;* **in Segusiāvōs,** *among the Segusiavi.* Compare **domum (415)**, and see App. **131**.

608. Look at the map and notice the junction of the Rhone and Saone. Caesar probably encamped just there, and Labienus must have brought the rest of the army to the same point. Caesar had been absent some time in Italy, and in the next chapter it will be learned that the Helvetians had meanwhile gone through the pass and were somewhere to the north of Caesar.

LESSON LXXIX

609. TEXT

Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.

610. VOCABULARY

trānsdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (*or* **trā-**) lead *or* bring across *or* over

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum devastate, lay waste

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum defend, protect

auxilium, -ī, N., aid, help, assistance

ita, *adv.*, so, thus

mereor, merērī, meritus sum merit, deserve

paene, *adv.*, almost

cōnspectus, -ūs, M. [**cōnspiciō,** perceive], sight, presence

vāstō, 1, lay waste, ravage, devastate

līberī, -ōrum, M., children

servitūs, -ūtis, F. [**servus,** a slave], slavery, servitude

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum lead away

expūgnō, 1, storm, attack, capture

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum owe, ought

611. Learn the supines of all the conjugations. See App. **67, 68, 69, 70, 71.**

612. **EXERCISES.**

I. Through the narrows — the Helvetians had led their troops — they devastate the fields of the Aedui — since the Aedui could not protect themselves — to ask aid — they sent to ask aid — they said they had so deserved of the Roman people — had so deserved that their fields ought not to be ravaged — had so deserved that their children ought not to be led away — had so deserved that their towns ought not to be stormed.

II. 1. The Helvetians led their troops into the territory of the Aeduans and devastated their fields. 2. The Aeduans could not defend themselves and their property from the Helvetians. 3. The Aeduans sent men to him to ask help. 4. The Aeduans had so deserved of the Romans that their fields ought not to be laid waste. 5. The Helvetians attempted to storm the towns of the Aedui and to lead their children into slavery.



HEAD OF ITALIA
COIN OF FIRST CENTURY, B.C.

NOTES

613. **suās, eōrum**: see **390**. **possent**: see **486**. **tempore**: see **332**. **dēbuerint**: see **448**.

614. **sua**, *their property*. The neuter of adjectives is often used substantively. Compare **ea (69)** and see App. **158**.

615. **mittunt rogātum auxilium**, *sent to ask aid*. The accusative of the supine (**rogātum**) is employed with *verbs of motion* (**mittunt**) to denote *purpose*. App. **295**.

616. **sē . . . meritōs esse**: the indirect discourse depends on the idea of *saying* implied in the previous words.

LESSON LXXX

617. TEXT

Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

618. VOCABULARY

Ambarrī, -ōrum, M., the Ambarri (*dependents of the Aedui, between the Saone and the Rhone*)
necessārius, -a, -um necessary, needful; (*as subst.*) friend, relative
cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [**sanguis,** blood] of the same blood; (*as subst.*) kinsman, relative
dēpopulor, 1, lay waste, plunder
hostis, -is, M., F., (*public*) enemy; (*in pl.*) the enemy
possessiō, -ōnis, F., possessions, lands
fuga, -ae, F., flight
sē recipere to betake one's self, retreat, go
dēmōnstrō, 1 [**mōnstrō,** show], show, point out
praeter, *prep. with acc.*, besides, except
solum, -ī, N., bottom, ground, soil
exspectō, 1, look out for, wait, expect
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum set up, determine, decide
fortūna, -ae, F., fortune; (*in pl.*) goods, property
cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum [**sūmō**] consume, destroy

619. EXERCISES

I. The relatives of the Aeduans — the Ambarri inform Caesar — Caesar was informed by the Ambarri — that they were checking the violence of the enemy — the Allobroges had property across the Rhine — they retreat — they show that there is nothing left — the fields — the soil of the field

(the bare ground) — by (because of) these circumstances — I determine — Caesar determined that he ought not to wait — to destroy — after destroying the property — the property of his allies — until the Helvetians arrived — of the Santoni.

II. 1. Caesar was informed by the Aedui that they could not restrain (**prohibēre**) the violence of the men. 2. When these things had been pointed out (*abl. abs.*) Caesar determined that he ought not to wait. 3. The Allobroges went to Caesar and informed him that nothing was left. 4. Since the fields were devastated they determined to wait until their near friends (**necessāriī**) arrived. 5. At the same time the Aedui said their children ought not to be led away into slavery.

620. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quī faciunt Caesarem certiōrem? Cūr nōn poterant vim hostium ab oppidīs prohibēre? Fugā ad Caesarem quī sē recēpērunt? Quid dēmōnstrant Allobrogēs Caesarī? Exspectāvitne Caesar? Quid Caesar statuit?

NOTES

621. certiōrem faciunt: see **505**. **exspectandum**: see **525**. **pervenīrent**: see App. **235**, *b*.

622. sibi . . . esse, *that they have nothing* (literally, *that there is to them nothing*). The dative (here **sibi**) is employed with some form of **esse** to denote *possession*. This construction is called the *dative of the possessor*. App. **117**. Compare **sibi esse in animō,** *that it was their intention* or *they had the intention*.

623. nihil esse reliquī, *that nothing is left* (literally, *that there is nothing* or *no part of a remainder*). This construction, where the genitive denotes the whole of which a part is taken, is called the *genitive of the whole*. App. **101**, *a*. Compare **quārum ūnam**; **hōrum fortissimī**; **nōbilissimōs cīvitātis.**

624. nōn exspectandum (esse) sibi, *that he must not wait* (literally, *that it must not be waited by himself*). The dative (here **sibi**) is employed with the gerundive to denote *the person on whom* the necessity rests. This

construction is called the *dative of agent.* App. **118**. Compare the method of expressing the agent with other parts of the passive voice, **320**, and App. **137**.

LESSON LXXXI

625. TEXT

Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus āc lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

626. VOCABULARY

Arar, Araris (*acc.* **-im**), M., the Arar (*a river of Gaul, now the* Saone)

incrēdibilis, -e extraordinary, incredible

lēnitās, -ātis, F., gentleness, smoothness

oculus, -ī, M., eye

uter, utra, utrum (*gen.* **-ius**, *dat.* **-ī**) which (*of two*)

iūdicō, 1, decide, judge

linter, lintris, F., M., skiff, boat

explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout, spy

quārtus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral,* fourth

citrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.,* on this side of

vigilia, -ae, F., wakefulness, keeping watch (*by night*), a watch

castra, -ōrum, N., camp

627. EXERCISES *

1. The Aeduans were not able to determine by the eyes in which direction the Saone was flowing. 2. They informed

* The dictation exercises will hereafter be omitted, as teachers and pupils have become familiar with the plan. It is hoped that the practice will be continued in each lesson. Mere translation is by no means the whole work of the student. At no stage in the study of Latin should the student fall below the standard of the ability to render short passages into Latin or English when either language is pronounced. This ability is to be secured and maintained only by continued daily dictation exercises on the general plan heretofore pursued.

Caesar that the Helvetians had crossed this river by several boats joined together. 3. At the fourth watch almost all were on this side of the camp. 4. Three legions set out from the camp with Caesar and arrived at the third watch. 5. Caesar decided that he ought not to wait until the enemy should destroy the property of his allies.

628. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quod flūmen fluit per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum? Quōmodo fluit Arar? Quōmodo trānsībant eum Helvētiī? Quī certiōrem faciunt Caesarem? Quid dīxērunt explōrātōrēs? Quae pars eōrum erat citrā flūmen? Quandō profectus est Caesar ē castrīs? Quam ad partem eōrum pervēnit?

NOTES

629. lēnitāte: see **468**. **possit**: see **448**. **factus est**: see **402**. **cōpiārum**: see **623**.

630. Fluat is in the subjunctive because it stands in an indirect question. The direct question would be, **in utram partem fluit?** *in which direction does it flow?* A direct question is a question directly asked; e. g., *How old is he?* An indirect question is a question so incorporated into another sentence as to have lost its directly interrogative form; e. g., I know *how old he is;* Will you tell me *how old he is?* Here the word *how* is still interrogative, though the clause which it introduces has lost the question form. Indirect questions require the subjunctive. See App. **262**.

631. explōrātor: nouns ending in **-tor** denote the agent or doer, and are of the masculine gender.

632. trēs . . . trādūxisse, *that the Helvetians had conveyed three parts* (or *fourths*) *of their troops across this river.* Of the compound verb **trādūxisse,** the simple verb governs **partēs** while **flūmen** is the object of **trāns** in composition. App. **127**.

633. dē tertiā vigiliā, *in the third watch.* The Romans divided the night, for military purposes, into four equal watches. The third began at midnight.

LESSON LXXXII

634. TEXT

Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

635. VOCABULARY

impediō, 4, impede, obstruct, embarrass

inopīnāns, -opīnantis, *adj.* [**opīnor**, suppose, think], not expecting, unaware

aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [**ad** + **gradior**, walk, go] go to *or* against, attack

concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [**cum** + **caedō**, cut] cut to pieces, kill

mandō, 1, command, entrust, give up

silva, -ae, F., forest, woods

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [**ab** + **dō**, give] put away, hide

pāgus, -ī, M., district, canton

nam, *conj.*, for

quattuor, *indecl. numeral*, four

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum make away with, slay, kill

636. EXERCISES

1. Many of these, impeded and unwary, were attacked and slain. 2. They said that this one district was called Tigurinus. 3. In the whole Helvetian state there are four districts. 4. Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been slain and his army sent under the yoke by this canton. 5. This part of the Helvetians had gone from home within the recollection of our fathers. 6. In the second watch a scout crossed in a skiff to a place this side of the camp. 7. When the canton which is called Tigurinus had slain the consul and defeated his army, it sent the Roman legions under the yoke.

637. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quis est aggressus eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs? Quam partem eōrum Caesar concīdit? Quid reliquī fēcērunt? Quot pāgī erant in omnī cīvitāte Helvētiā? Quem interfēcerat hīc pāgus ūnus? Quandō interfēcerat hīc pāgus L. Cassium? Quō missus est exercitus Rōmānus?

NOTES

638. **eōrum**: see **623**. **fugae**: see **494**. **Tigurīnus**: see **160**. **exīsset**: see **380**. **memoriā**: see **332**.

639. **mandārunt, exīsset**: contracted forms of **mandāvērunt, exīvisset.**

640. **patrum**: subjective genitive. For the difference between the subjective and the objective genitives, see App. **98.**

LESSON LXXXIII

641. TEXT

Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.

642. VOCABULARY

sīve (*or* **seu**), *conj.* [**sī** + **-ve**, or], or if

sīve . . . sīve (seu . . . seu) whether . . . or

cāsus, -ūs, M. [**cadō**, fall], accident, chance, misfortune

deus, -ī, M., deity, a god

immortālis, -e [**in**, *neg.* + **mors**, death] immortal

īnsīgnis, -e [**sīgnō**, mark] signal, noted, remarkable

calamitās, -ātis, F., defeat, disaster

inferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum [**ferō**, bring] bring on, inflict

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum [**solvō**, loose] loose thoroughly, pay in full, pay

643. Learn thoroughly the inflection of the irregular verb **ferō,** ***bear, bring.*** See App. **81.**

In the same way inflect **īnferō.**

644. **EXERCISES**

1. Whether by chance or by design of the gods, the Tigurini paid a remarkable penalty. 2. That part which first (**prīnceps**) inflicted signal disaster upon the Roman people now (**nunc**) paid the penalty. 3. The design of these four men was hindered by the flight of the rest. 4. They thought they would attack and cut to pieces the soldiers of this canton. 5. Those who were unwary either gave themselves up to flight or were killed.



HEAD OF ROMA
COIN OF 65 B.C.

NOTES

645. quae pars . . . ea: literally, *what part had . . . that*, etc. Translate, *that part which had*, etc., *paid*, etc.

646. populō: for the construction see **233** and **598**.

647. prīnceps . . . persolvit, *first paid the penalty*. Observe that the adjective **prīnceps** has here the force of an adverb. App. **159**.

LESSON LXXXIV

648. **TEXT**

Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

VOCABULARY

649.

sōlum, *adv.*, only, merely
pūblicus, -a, -um public, common
sed, *conj.*, but
nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam not only . . . but also, both . . . and
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum avenge, punish
socer, socerī, M., father-in-law
avus, -ī, M., grandfather
cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum follow up, pursue, overtake
cūrō, 1 [**cūra**, care], take care, provide, cause
repentīnus, -a, -um sudden, unexpected, hasty
commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum move thoroughly, arouse, agitate
vīgintī (*abbr.* **XX**), *indecl. numeral*, twenty
aegerrimē, *adv.* (*sup. of* **aegrē**, with difficulty), with the greatest difficulty
Dīvicō, -ōnis, M., Divico (*a Helvetian chieftain*)
Cassiānus, -a, -um of Cassius
dux, ducis [**dūcō**] leader

EXERCISES

650.

1. He was avenging both public and private wrongs by this punishment. 2. Lucius Piso, the lieutenant, was the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. 3. When this battle had been fought, he caused a bridge to be made across the Saone. 4. The Helvetians were aroused because they knew that he had crossed the river in one day. 5. In this embassy was Divico, who had fought with Cassius.

LATIN QUESTIONS

651.

Quās iniūriās ultus est Caesar? Nōnne Caesar pūblicās iniūriās ultus est? (Ita; ipse nōn modo pūblicās vērum etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est.) Quis erat socer Caesaris? Quae erat Caesaris uxor (*wife*)? (Calpurnia, Pīsōnis fīlia, erat uxor Caesaris.) Quōs interfēcērunt Tigurīnī? Quandō interfēcērunt Tigurīnī L. Pīsōnem? Quā rē (*why*) cūrāvit Caesar in Arare pontem faciendum? Cūr sunt Helvētiī commōtī? Quōs mittunt ad eum? Quis fuit lēgātiōnis princeps? Quō in bellō fuerat dux Dīvicō?

NOTES

652. An English order from **quod** would be, **quod Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium (interfēcerant) interfēcerant Lūcium Pīsōnem lēgātum, avum Lūciī Pīsōnis ēius (Caesaris) socerī.**

653. pontem faciendum cūrat, *causes a bridge to be made.* The gerundive (**faciendum**) is here employed to denote purpose. App. **285**, II, *b.*

654. cum . . . intellegerent: English order, **cum intellegerent illum fēcisse ūnō diē id quod,** etc.

655. ut . . . trānsīrent: in apposition with **id.** Translate, *namely, the crossing of the river.* See **449.**

LESSON LXXXV*

PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS: *VOLŌ*: FUTURE CONDITIONS

656. Learn the inflection of the personal pronouns **ego** and **tū**, and the possessive pronouns **meus, tuus, noster, vester**; App. **51** and **53.**

Learn the inflection of the irregular verb **volō**; App. **82.**

Study App. **255** and **256.**

657. EXERCISES

I. 1. Vīs. 2. Volēbāmus. 3. Volent. 4. Voluistī. 5. Īre vult. 6. Proficīscī vultis. 7. Tē laudō. 8. Mē laudāvistī. 9. Nōs laudāverās. 10. Tibi persuāsī. 11. Vōbīs persuādēbō. 12. Nōbīs persuādēbat. 13. Mihi persuādēre vīs. 14. Nōbīscum (**86**) proficīscitur. 15. Mēcum bella gessit.

II. 1. They wish to cross. 2. You wish to have. 3. He wishes to carry. 4. They wished to send. 5. They sent me. 6. I shall send you. 7. They send me with you.

* **This lesson gives some things that should be learned before the class studies the long indirect discourse of Chapters XIII and XIV. Unless the class has quite thoroughly mastered the principles of ordinary direct discourse, it will probably be better to omit for the present Lessons LXXXV–XCI, and return to them after finishing the text of the Helvetian War.**

8. I wish to persuade you. 9. I persuade you to wish. 10. They persuaded him to wish.

III. 1. Sī nōs impedītōs aggredientur, māgnam partem nostrum concīdent. 2. Sī vōs inopīnantēs aggredī volent, dē tertiā vigiliā ē castrīs proficīscentur. 3. Sī Caesar māgnam partem vestrum concīderit, reliquī flūmen trānsīre volētis. 4. Sī Caesar vōbīs persuāserit ut flūmen trānseātis, nōs ad vōs lēgātōs mittēmus. 5. Sī nostrās cōpiās trādūxerimus, vestrōs agrōs dēpopulābimur.



TROPHY AND CAPTIVES
COIN OF CAESAR

IV. 1. If we cross (shall have crossed) the river, we shall attack you off your guard. 2. If we send (shall send) envoys to Caesar, you will lead your troops across. 3. If you leave (shall have left) home, we shall send your army under the yoke. 4. If you make (shall have made) a bridge over the Saone, we shall be able to overtake you.

LESSON LXXXVI

658. TEXT

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset: sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

659. DIRECT FORM

The student may reproduce the direct discourse by putting himself in the place of the speaker and using the persons and modes naturally employed. Thus the speaker uses the first person of himself and others associated with himself, the second person of those he addresses, the indicative in declarative clauses, and so on.

In this way the direct discourse is reproduced from the text above as follows:

Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs *faciet*, in eam partem *ībunt* atque ibi *erunt Helvētiī* ubi eōs *tū cōnstitueris* atque esse *volueris:* sīn bellō persequī *persevērābit*, *reminīscere* et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

660. VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum set in motion, drive, act, speak
ibi, *adv.*, there
sīn, *conj.*, but if
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum follow up, continue
persevērō, 1, persist, persevere
reminīscor, reminīscī (*defective*) remember, recollect
vetus, veteris former, old
incommodum, -ī, N., inconvenience, misfortune
prīstinus, -a, -um former, primitive, original

661. INDIRECT DISCOURSE: IMPERATIVES

Study App. **265–271.** This is, in the main, a review of principles already learned.

Learn the present imperatives of all conjugations: App. **66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71.**

662. EXERCISES

I. *Give both singular and plural.* 1. Depart. 2. Carry. 3. Come. 4. Hold. 5. Receive. 6. Be. 7. Try. 8. Send.

II. *Give both the direct form, and the indirect form after* **dīxit**: 1. If you make (shall make) peace with us, we will go into Gaul. 2. If you remember (shall remember) our former valor, you will not follow us up with war. 3. If you kill (shall have killed) a great part of the Helvetians, the rest will cross the river.

NOTES

663. In the "direct form" (**659**), **nōbīscum, ībimus,** and **erimus** might be used instead of **cum Helvētiīs, ībunt,** and **erunt Helvētiī.** There is often a similar choice, but only one form will be printed.

664. For the changes of tense from **faciet** and **persevērābit**, and from the future perfects **cōnstitueris** and **volueris**, see App. **270**, *c*. For their change in mode see App. **269**. For the mode of **reminīscerētur** see App. **267**.

665. reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī et prīstinae virtūtis, *let him remember both the ancient disaster and the former valor.* Verbs of *remembering and forgetting* govern the objective genitive. App. **107**.

LESSON LXXXVII

666. TEXT

Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret: sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur.

667. DIRECT FORM

Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus *es*, cum eī quī flūmen *trānsierant* suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, *nōlī* ob eam rem aut *tuae* māgnopere virtūtī *tribuere* aut *nōs dēspicere: nōs* ita ā patribus māiōribusque *nostrīs didicimus* ut magis virtūte *contendāmus* quam dolō aut īnsidiīs *nītāmur.*

668. VOCABULARY

imprōvīsō, *adv.*, unexpectedly
adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum rise against, attack
māgnopere, *adv.*, greatly, especially
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum assign, allot, ascribe
dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum look down upon, scorn, despise
māior, māius (*comp. of* **māgnus**, great) greater, older; (*in pl. as subst.*) ancestors
discō, discere, didicī learn
quam, *adv.*, than (*with comp.*)
magis . . . quam more . . . than, rather . . . than
dolus, -ī, M., treachery, deceit
īnsidiae, -ārum, F., ambush, ambuscade
nītor, nītī, nīsus (nīxus) sum strive, rely upon

669. EXERCISES

Give both the direct form, and the indirect after **dīxit.** 1. As to the fact that we can not give aid to our [soldiers], do not despise us on that account. 2. If you suddenly attack and kill our soldiers, do not ascribe it to your own valor. 3. We have learned from our ancestors to fight bravely. 4. They can not give aid to their [soldiers], because they have crossed the river.

670. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quōmodo erat Caesar ūnum pāgum adortus? Poterantne Helvētiī suīs auxilium ferre? (Minimē, Helvētiī suīs auxilium ferre nōn poterant.) Quae ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicerant?

NOTES

671. Quod, usually *because*, or *that*, is sometimes, as here, used in the sense of *as to the fact that*, *whereas*. App. **248**, *a*.

672. Cum . . . possent is subjunctive in the direct form. See **380**.

673. suīs, *to their* (*men* or *soldiers*).

674. nōlī . . . tribuere aut . . . dēspicere, *do not ascribe*, etc. This is the usual form of the negative command. See App. **219**. For **nē . . . tribueret** see App. **267**.

675. ipsōs: see App. **271**.

676. dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur, *to rely on treachery and ambuscade*. For the ablative with **nītor,** see App. **143**, *a*.

LESSON LXXXVIII

677. TEXT

Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī,

quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent;

678. DIRECT FORM

Quā rē *nōlī committere* ut *hīc* locus ubi *cōnstitimus* ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen *capiat* aut memoriam *prōdat*. . . Eō *mihi* minus dubitātiōnis *datur*, quod eās rēs quās *vōs commemorāvistis* memoriā *teneō*, atque eō gravius *ferō* quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī *accidērunt;*

679. VOCABULARY

quā rē, *adverbial phrase* (*abl. of* **quī** *and* **rēs**), from which thing, wherefore

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [**mittō**] send together, commit, entrust, permit

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum [**cum + sistō**, stand] stand together, take a stand, stop

interneciō, -ōnis, F. [**nex**, slaughter], slaughter, extermination

nōmen, nōminis, N., name

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [**dō**] give forth, transmit, hand down

dubitātiō, -ōnis, F., doubt, hesitation

commemorō, 1, bring to mind, mention

graviter, *adv.* (*comp.* **gravius**), severely, with annoyance

meritum, -ī, N., desert, merit

accidō, -cidere, -cidī [**ad + cadō**, fall] fall to, befall, happen

680. EXERCISE

Give both the direct form, and the indirect after **dixit**. 1. Do not permit the Helvetians to inflict a disaster upon the Roman people. 2. The Roman people remembers the place which took its name from the slaughter of an army. 3. The Helvetians have not learned to rely on treachery. 4. Caesar is annoyed because those things did not happen in accordance with the deserts of the Roman people. 5. If the Roman people remembers (shall hold in memory) the things which you have mentioned, it will be annoyed.

NOTES

681. committeret: see App. **267.** **cōnstitissent**: see App. **269.** **commemorāssent**: see **639** and App. **269.** **memoriā tenēret**: see App. **151**, c, and **269.** **accidissent**: see App. **269.**

682. cōnstitissent may possibly stand for the direct future perfect, *where we shall have made our stand.* It more probably stands for a perfect, *where we have taken our stand.*

683. minus dubitātiōnis, *the less hesitation.* For the genitive see **623.**

684. eō gravius quō minus . . . accidissent: *he was the more annoyed the less deservedly they had befallen the Roman people.* **eō . . . quō**, *the . . . the*, literally, *by that (amount) by which.* The ablative is employed with comparatives (here **gravius** and **minus**) or with words involving a comparison to denote the *degree* or *measure of difference.* This construction is called the *ablative of the degree of difference.* App. **148**, *a.*

LESSON LXXXIX

685. TEXT

quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse?

686. DIRECT FORM

quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn *fuit* difficile cavēre; sed eō *dēceptus est*, quod neque commissum ā sē *intellegēbat* quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum *putābat.* Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī *velit*, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim *temptāvistis*, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs *vexāvistis*, memoriam dēpōnere *potest?*

687. VOCABULARY

aliquis (aliquī), aliqua, aliquid (aliquod), *indef. pron.*, some, any (*for decl. see App.* **62**)
cōnscius, -a, -um [**cum + sciō,** know] conscious, aware of
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum be on one's guard, take care, beware
dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**capiō**] deceive, cheat
timeō, timēre, timuī dread, fear
contumēlia, -ae, F., insult, indignity
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum forget
num, *adv.*, *interrogative particle in direct questions implying a negative answer* (*App.* **213,** *c*)
recēns, recentis, *adj.*, late, recent
temptō (tentō), 1, try, attempt, assail
vexō, 1, harass, trouble, vex
dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [**pōnō,** place] place aside, put away

688. LESS CONFIDENT (VIVID) FUTURE CONDITIONS

Study App. **257** and **272,** II.

689. EXERCISES

Give both the direct form, and the indirect after **dīxit.** 1. If Caesar should forget the old insult, he would not put away the memory of recent wrongs also. 2. Against the will of the Roman people they attempted a march through the province. 3. The Helvetians inflicted a disaster upon the Roman people, who were not conscious of wrong-doing. 4. I should feel less hesitation if you should harass the Aedui.

690. LATIN QUESTIONS

Cui respondit Caesar? Cūr eī minus dubitātiōnis dabātur? Quās rēs tenēbat Caesar memoriā? Cūr ferēbat eās rēs gravius? Num populus Rōmānus alicūius iniūriae erat sibi cōnscius? Quā rē est populus Rōmānus dēceptus? Num populus Rōmānus veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī volēbat? (Nōn putō eum id voluisse.) Num Caesar recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere poterat? (Minimē, Caesar . . . nōn poterat.) Quōmodo Helvētiī iter per prōvinciam temptāverant? Quōs populōs vexāverant Helvētiī?

NOTES

691. eō: see **204**. **ā sē**: see **320**. **contumēliae**: see **665**. **eō invītō**: see **550**.

692. Quī refers to the Roman people; they are also the subject of **dēceptum (esse)**, **vellet**, and **posse**. Translate **quī sī**, *for if they*. See App. **173**, *a*.

693. sibi cōnscius, literally *conscious to themselves*, but English must omit *to themselves*.

694. sī . . . fuisset, *if they had been conscious*, condition contrary to fact. See App. **254** and **254**, *a*.

695. (aliquid) commissum (esse), *that anything had been done*.

696. quā rē timēret, *because of which it should fear*. App. **230**, *a*.

697. timendum (esse): what construction is thus formed? (**525**). The construction is impersonal, *it was to be feared*, but it is generally better to render the impersonal Latin verb by the personal construction: *nor did they think they ought to fear without reason*.

698. num etiam recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere posse, *could they also put aside the recollection of the recent wrongs?* For the infinitive see App. **268**, II.

LESSON XC

699. TEXT

Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

700. DIRECT FORM

Quod *vestrā* victōriā tam īnsolenter *glōriāminī*, quodque tam diū *vōs* impūne iniūriās tulisse *admīrāminī*, eōdem *pertinet*. *Cōnsuēvērunt* enim *dī immortālēs*, quō gravius hominēs

ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī *volunt*, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

701. VOCABULARY

victōria, -ae, F., victory
tam, *adv.*, so, so very
īnsolenter, *adv.* [**īnsolēns,** unwonted], strangely, insultingly
glōrior, 1, glory in, boast of
diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time
impūne, *adv.* [**in,** *neg.* + **poena**], without punishment, with impunity
admīror, 1 [**mīror,** wonder], wonder at, be surprised, wonder
cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum become accustomed; (*in perf.*) have become accustomed, *therefore*, be accustomed, be wont
enim, *conj.*, for (*explanatory and confirmatory*)
commūtātiō, -ōnis, F. [**mūtō,** change], a changing, a change
doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitum grieve, suffer
scelus, sceleris, N., crime, wickedness
secundus, -a, -um [**sequor, follow**] following, second, prosperous
interdum, *adv.*, meanwhile, sometimes
diūturnus, -a, -um [**diū**] long, prolonged
impūnitās, -ātis, F. [**in** + **poena**], freedom from punishment, impunity

702. EXERCISES

1. The Helvetians boasted insolently of their victory and wondered that they had inflicted the wrongs with impunity for so long a time. 2. Caesar said the fact that (**quod**) they boasted so insolently was an injury to the Roman people. 3. I wonder that Caesar can put away the recollection of the recent insult. 4. Caesar said that the gods sometimes grant prosperity to those who have committed wrongs. 5. Caesar said that if they should boast of their victory he would punish them for their crime.

703. LATIN QUESTIONS

Quid facere dī immortālēs cōnsuēvērunt? Quā rē concēdunt dī hominibus rēs interdum secundiōrēs? Quibus concēdunt impūnitātem diūturniōrem?

NOTES

704. quod, *the fact that.* See App. **248.**

705. victōriā: see App. **138.**

706. sē . . . tulisse, *that they had committed.*

707. eōdem pertinēre, *tended to the same result.*

708. cōnsuēsse: contracted from **cōnsuēvisse.** *Caesar said that the immortal gods are,* or *were* (not *had been*), *accustomed.* App. **193,** I, *a.*

709. quō gravius doleant, *in order that they may feel the more pain.* For **quō** see App. **225,** *a,* 2. For the tense of **doleant** see App. **270,** *a.*

710. secundiōrēs rēs, *a considerable degree of prosperity.* **diūturniōrem,** *quite long.* Observe that the comparative may be rendered by *too, quite, rather, considerable,* or any term expressing a comparison.

LESSON XCI

711. **TEXT**

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

712. **DIRECT FORM**

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā *vōbīs mihi dabuntur,* utī ea quae *pollicēminī vōs* factūrōs *intellegam,* et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum *intulistis,* item sī Allobrogibus *satisfaciētis, vobīscum* pācem *faciam.* . . . Ita *Helvētiī* ā māiōribus suīs *īnstitūtī sunt* utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; ēius reī *populus Rōmānus est testis.*

713. **VOCABULARY**

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum promise

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum make *or* do enough for, satisfy

īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitū-tum [**statuō,** set up] set in order, establish, arrange, train, instruct

testis, -is, M. F., a witness

respōnsum, -ī, N. [**respondeō**], reply, answer

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [**cēdō,** go] go apart, depart, withdraw

714. **EXERCISES**

1. Caesar said that although these things were so, yet he would make peace with them if they would withdraw into their own territory. 2. Because you have not satisfied the Aedui for the wrongs which you have done them I wish you to give hostages to me. 3. The Roman people understand that we have not been taught to give hostages. 4. Caesar said that if they should not give him hostages he would make war on them.

NOTES

715. For the tenses see App. **270,** *a.*

716. **cum . . . sint,** *although these things are so.* **Cum** *adversative* (*though, although*) is followed by the subjunctive. App. **239.** What is the construction with **cum** *temporal?* With **cum** *causal?*

717. **sī Aeduīs . . . item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant,** *if they should make amends to the Aeduans . . . and likewise to the Allobroges.* Verbs modified by or compounded with **satis** (also **bene**) govern the dative of the indirect object. Thus **Aeduīs** and **Allobrogibus** are governed by **satisfaciant.** App. **116,** II.

718. **cōnsuērint:** contracted from **cōnsuēverint.**

NOTE. — From this point the text is given connectedly with vocabulary and notes instead of being divided into lessons as heretofore. The exercises for writing are placed at the end of each chapter, and may be divided in the assignment of lessons at the discretion of the teacher.

Caesar follows the Helvetians and is defeated in a cavalry skirmish.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn-

1. **posterus, -a, -um** [**post,** after] after, following, next
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum move, remove
2. **equitātus, -ūs,** M. [**equitō,** ride], cavalry, horsemen
4. **praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum** send before *or* in advance
5. **cupidē** [**cupidus,** desirous] eagerly
6. **agmen, -inis,** N. [**agō,** set in motion], a marching column, army
īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [**sequor,** follow] follow up, pursue, harass
aliēnus, -a, -um [**alius,** other] another's, unfavorable
7. **paucus, -a, -um** (*usually in pl.*) little, few
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum fall, be slain
8. **quīngentī, -ae, -a** five hundred
eques, -itis, M., a horseman, a rider; (*in pl.*) cavalry. *Then* (*as originally serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate*). *Also*, a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*)
tantus, -a, -um so much, so great, such
9. **prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum** [**pellō,** drive] drive forward, put to flight, rout
audācter [**audāx,** bold] boldly, daringly
subsistō, -sistere, -stitī [**sistō,** stand] stand still, withstand, resist
nonnumquam (*not never*) sometimes, from time to time

3, 4. **quem . . . coāctum habēbat,** *which . . . he had* (*having been*) *collected.* It will be observed that the perfect participle with **habēre** has about the same force as a perfect tense in the active voice. See App. **286,** *b.*

4. **quī videant,** *to see* App. **225,** *a,* 1.

5. **quās in partēs,** *in what direction.* **faciant:** see App. **262.**

6. **novissimum agmen,** *the rear.*

8. **sublātī,** *elated.* Give the principal parts of **tollō.**

numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, āc satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

10. lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum arouse, irritate, attack

coepī, coepisse (*App.* **86**) began, commenced, undertook

12. praesentia, -ae, F., presence, the present moment: **in praesentiā** for the moment, at the moment

rapīna, -ae, F. [**rapiō,** pillage], pillaging, robbery, plunder

pābulātiō, -ōnis, F. [**pābulum,** fodder], getting fodder, foraging

populātiō, -ōnis, F. [**populor,** ravage], ravaging, pillaging

13. circiter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, about, near

quīndecim, *indecl. numeral* [**quīnque + decem**] fifteen

15. amplē [**amplus,** large] largely, widely (*comp.* **amplius,** more, longer)

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. numeral* [**quīnque**], five each, five at a time

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. numeral* [**sex,** six], six each

intersum, -esse, -fuī be *or* lie between, intervene

---

10. novissimō agmine: ablative of place where. **proeliō**: ablative of means. See App. **143,** *a*.

11–13. satis (esse) habēbat . . . prohibēre, *he held that to prohibit was enough:* **prohibēre** is the subject of **esse** understood. The infinitive may be used as the subject or object of another verb. See App. **276.**

15. amplius . . . mīlibus passuum, *more than five or six miles.* After the comparative **amplius, quam** (*than*) is omitted, though supplied in translating. When **quam** is thus omitted after a comparative, the following noun is in the ablative. See App. **139.** Numeral adjectives like **quīnī** and **sēnī** are called *distributives*. Here they are used to indicate that the two armies were this distance apart each day. **interesset:** see App. **226.**

EXERCISES

1. On the next day the Helvetians moved their camp three miles. 2. All the cavalry were sent in advance by Caesar to see where the enemy would march. 3. Caesar's horsemen

followed the rear of the Helvetians too eagerly, and engaged in battle in an unfavorable place. 4. He said that a few of of his [men] fell. 5. The Helvetians were elated by this battle, because five hundred of their horsemen had put to flight so great a multitude of Roman soldiers. 6. After these things they resisted boldly and attacked our men on the rear. 7. Caesar's men were restrained from battle by him. 8. He deems it (**habet**) sufficient for the present to keep the soldiers of the enemy from plunder and foraging. 9. On the next day the cavalry of the enemy was sent in advance. 10. They marched so that the two armies were not more than five or six miles apart. 11. The rear of the enemy and our vanguard marched thus about fifteen days.



ROMAN HORSEMAN

LATIN QUESTIONS

Quandō mōvērunt castra? Quis fēcit idem? Quot mīlitēs praemīsit Caesar? Equitātum unde (*whence*) coāctum habēbat Caesar? Cūr praemīsit Caesar equitātum? Ubi commīsit proelium equitātus Caesaris? Quot equitēs cecidērunt? Quī sublātī sunt? Cūr sublātī sunt? Quōmodo coepērunt Helvētiī subsistere? Quōs coepērunt lacessere? Ā quā rē continēbat Caesar suōs? Volēbatne Caesar proelium committere? Quot diēs iter fēcērunt? Quot mīlia passuum intererant inter novissimum agmen hostium et nostrum prīmum?

The Aeduans fail to furnish Caesar promised supplies.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat propterea minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi

1. **interim,** *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime
cotīdiē daily, every day
2. **pūblicē** [**pūblicus,** public] on behalf of the state, publicly
flāgitō, 1, demand, importune, press
frīgus, -oris, N., cold weather, cold
3. **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum** place, put, pitch (**castra**); (*in pass.*) be situated
4. **modo,** *adv.*, only: **nōn modo . . . sed etiam** not only . . . but also
mātūrus, -a, -um ripe, mature
5. **pābulum, -ī,** N., food, fodder
5. **quidem,** *adv.*, (*emphasizing the expression before it*) indeed, at least, truly: **nē . . . quidem** not even
7. **subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum** [**vehō,** carry] bring up
8. **āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum** [**vertō,** turn] turn away
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [**volō,** wish] not wish, be unwilling (*for inflection see App.* **82**)
9. **cōnferō, conferre, contulī, collātum** bring together, collect
comportō, 1, carry together, collect
adsum, -esse, -fuī be near *or* at hand, assist

---

2. flāgitāre = **flāgitābat.** In animated description the present infinitive may be used for the imperfect or perfect indicative, and has its subject in the nominative. This is called the *historical infinitive.* **Aeduōs frūmentum:** for the two objects see App. **125,** *a.*

3. ut: what part of speech? How translated? See **383.**

4. frūmenta, *standing grain;* **frūmentum,** *grain* (*harvested*), and, because in bulk, singular.

6. frūmentō: App. **145. flūmine,** *by way of the river.* The ablative, without a preposition, is used to denote *the way by which.* App. **144.**

8, 9. diem . . . Aeduī, *the Aedui kept putting him off from day to day.* **dūcere, dīcere:** for form and rendering see on **flāgitāre** l. 2. **cōnferrī . . . dīcere,** *they* (*the Aedui*) *kept saying it* (**frūmentum**) *was being collected, it was being brought on the way, it was at hand.*

sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

10. īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum stand upon, be near at hand
11. mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum measure
convocō, 1, call together, summon
13. Liscus, -ī, M., Liscus (*a chief magistrate of the Aedui*)
summus, -a, -um (*sup. of* **superus**) highest
praesum, -esse, -fuī be over *or* in command
vergobretus, -ī, M., *the title of the Aeduan chief magistrate*
14. creō, 1, create, produce, elect, appoint
annuus, -a, -um [**annus**, year] year by year, yearly, annual
vīta, -ae, F., life
nex, necis, F. [**necō**, slay], violent death, death
15. potestās, -ātis, F. [**possum**, be able], power, dominion, authority
accūsō, 1, blame, censure, accuse
16. emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum buy, purchase
17. propinquus, -a, -um [**prope**, near] near, neighboring, close at hand; (*in pl. as subst.*), relatives
sublevō, 1, sustain, assist
praesertim, *adv.*, particularly, especially
18. prex, precis, F. [**precor**, pray], (*in sing. only in abl.*) prayer, entreaty
19. dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [**statuō**, set up] set *or* place aside, forsake, desert
queror, querī, questus sum complain, bewail, lament

---

10. diūtius (comparative of **diū**), *too long*. See App. **161**.

11. oportēret: App. **269**. **convocātīs . . . prīncipibus**, *he summoned the chief men, and . . . censured*, etc.: App. **150**.

13. magistrātuī: App. **116**, I.

17. sublevētur: App. **244**. In this case the cause is Caesar's own, not another's. Yet he is quoting the reason he gave for his complaint: hence the subjunctive.

EXERCISES

1. Caesar will demand of the Aeduans the grain which they promised. 2. As was said before, Gaul slopes toward the north. 3. Caesar thought that not even a sufficiently great supply of fodder was at hand. 4. The grain in that place was not ripe because of the cold. 5. Caesar turned away from the Saone because he wished to follow up the Helvetians. 6. For this reason he was not able to use the grain. 7. Caesar's ships were bringing the grain on the river Saone. 8. The Aeduans said that the grain was being collected and was being carried to Caesar. 9. It was necessary for Caesar to measure out grain to his men. 10. Diviciacus and Liscus were among the chief men whom Caesar called together.

LATIN QUESTIONS

Quotiēs (*how often*) flāgitāvit Caesar frūmentum? Quōmodo erant Aeduī frūmentum pollicitī? Cūr frūmentum mātūrum nōn erat? Ubi est Gallia posita? Num pābulī satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat? (Minimē, satis māgna cōpia nōn suppetēbat.) Quō flūmine subvehēbat Caesar frūmentum? Num Caesar eō frūmentō ūtī poterat? Cūr Caesar eō frūmentō ūtī nōn poterat? Quō Helvētiī sē āverterant? Volēbatne Caesar ab eīs discēdere? Quī diēs īnstābat? Quōs convocāvit Caesar? Quot prīncipēs habēbat in castrīs? Quī erant in hīs? Quis praeerat summō magistrātuī? Quantam (*how great*) potestātem habēbat vergobretus? Quōs accūsāvit Caesar? Quōmodo eōs accūsāvit? Cūr accūsāvit eōs? Num Caesar frūmentum emere poterat? Quī nōn sublevā-

NOTE. — Hereafter the questions in Latin will be omitted. The general plan of questioning in Latin so as to go over the text, which has been first read, then translated, then gone over in the dictation exercise, has been so well illustrated as not to require further space.

bant Caesarem? Cūr Caesar bellum suscēpit? Cūr Caesar multō etiam gravius querēbātur? Nōnne Caesar ab Helvētiīs dēstitūtus est?

Liscus shows the bad faith of an Aeduan faction headed by Dumnorix.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī

1. tum, *adv.*, then (*period of time*)
dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally
2. anteā, *adv.*, formerly, before
taceō, 2, be silent *or* quiet, pass over in silence
prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [**pōnō,** place] place *or* set forth, explain, declare
3. valeō, -ēre, -uī be strong *or* powerful
multō, *adv.* (*comp.* **plūs,** *sup.* **plūrimum**) much
prīvātim, *adv.*, privately, individually, as private citizens
4. sēditiōsus, -a, -um seditious, mutinous
5. improbus, -a, -um [**probus,** good] bad, base, wicked
dēterreō, 2, frighten away from, hinder, prevent
8. perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum bear *or* carry through, report, endure
dubitō, 1, be uncertain, doubt, hesitate

1, 2. quod: supply the antecedent **id,** the object of **prōpōnit. esse nōnnūllōs**: form in direct discourse?

3, 4. quī . . . possint, *who as private citizens possess more influence than*, etc.

6–8. nē . . . cōnferant, *from bringing together*, *from furnishing*. The negative clause of purpose with **nē** or **quōminus** after a verb of hindering or opposing may be rendered by *from* with the verbal noun in *-ing*. See App. **228,** *c*. **praestāre, Gallōrum . . . perferre . . . dubitāre,** *it was better to endure the rule of the Gauls rather than that of the Romans; nor did they doubt.* **sī . . . possint,** etc.: the unfriendly Aeduan chiefs say: **sī . . . nōn possumus . . . praestat; neque dubitāmus,** etc.

8–10. superāverint: the future perfect indicative in direct discourse

Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

9. **superō**, 1, be over, surpass, overcome

10. **lībertās**, **-ātis**, F., liberty, freedom

11. **coerceō**, 2, restrain, check, control

12. **quīn**, *adv.*, nay: **quīn etiam** nay more, in fact

necessāriō, *adv.*, necessarily, under compulsion

13. **quantus**, **-a**, **-um**, (*a*) *interrogative*, how much? how great? how large? what? (*b*) *relative*, as much, as great (large) as **tantus . . . quantus** as much (great or large) as

quam diū as long as

---

becomes perfect subjunctive in the indirect. **quīn . . . sint ēreptūrī**: after a negatived expression of *doubt* (here **neque dubitāre**) **quīn**, *that*, and the subjunctive must be used. **Aeduīs . . . sint ēreptūrī**, *they would wrest from the Aeduans.* Many verbs compounded with **ab, dē, ex** (**ē**) govern the dative (here **Aeduīs**) instead of the ablative of separation. See App. **116, I.** **sint ēreptūrī**: form? See App. **75.**

13. **quantō . . . fēcerit**: indirect question. See App. **262.**

EXERCISES

1. Liscus, who was influenced by the speech of Caesar, declared that some were very powerful. 2. Those whose influence was very great prevented the people from furnishing grain. 3. These said they did not doubt that the Romans would take away liberty from the Aeduans. 4. Those things which were being done in the camp, were reported to the enemy by these men. 5. Liscus thought he could not restrain these men. 6. I know with how much danger Liscus informed Caesar. 7. When Liscus had been sternly rebuked by Caesar, he set forth those things which he knew. 8. The Aeduans knew what was being done in our camp.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō

The influence of Dumnorix. His character and policy.

2. **dēsīgnō**, 1 [**sīgnō**, mark], point out, mean, indicate

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum perceive, think, feel, be aware

praesēns, -entis (*pres. p. of* **praesum**) present, immediate, at hand

3. **iactō**, 1 [**iaciō**, hurl], toss, (*of words*) talk about, discuss

celeriter, *adv.* [**celer,** quick], quickly, rapidly, speedily

concilium, -ī, N., gathering, assembly, council

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [**dis** *or* **dī,** apart] send apart, break up, dismiss, abandon

4. **retineō**, 2 [**teneō**, hold], hold back, detain, restrain

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum inquire, ask, examine

sōlus, -a, -um (*gen.* **sōlīus**) alone, only, the only

conventus, -ūs, M. [**veniō,** come], coming together, meeting, assembly

5. **līberē,** *adv.* [**līber,** free], freely, without restraint

6. **sēcrētō** [**sēcernō,** separate] separately, privately, secretly

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum find, find out, discover

vērus, -a, -um true, real, genuine; (*in neut. as subst.*) the truth

7. **audācia, -ae,** F. [**audāx,** bold], boldness, daring, effrontery

8. **līberālitās, -ātis,** F. [**līber,** free], generosity, munificence

9. **portōrium, -ī,** N. [**portō,** carry], toll, duty, tax, tariff (*on exports and imports*)

vectīgal, vectīgālis, N. [**vehō,** convey], taxes, revenue, income

parvus, -a, -um (*comp.* **minor,** *sup.* **minimus**) little, small, insignificant

---

6. (ea) esse vēra, *that (these reports) are true.* The predicate adjective (**vēra**), like a predicate noun, agrees with its subject (here **ea**) in case. **(reperit) ipsum esse,** etc., (*he discovers*) *that Dumnorix is the very man.*

7, 8. Give the construction of **audāciā** and **grātiā** (see App. **141**); **rērum** (see App. **106,** *a*); **annōs** (see App. **130**).

9. parvō pretiō, *at a small price.* Price or valuation (especially when definite) is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. App. **147.**

pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō āc potentissimō collo-

10. pretium, -ī, N., price, valuation

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum [**emō,** buy] buy up, purchase

liceor, 2, make an offer, bid (*at an auction*)

contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, on the other hand, opposite *or* contrary to, against

audeō, audēre, ausus sum dare, risk, venture

11. nēmō, -inī (*dat.*), M. F. [**nē + homō,** man], no one, nobody

familiāris, -e [**familia,** household] personal, private ; (*as subst.*) intimate friend **rēs familiāris** personal property, estate

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum increase, augment

12. largior, 4 [**largus,** large], give largely *or* freely, be liberal *or* extravagant, bribe

13. sūmptus, -ūs, M. [**sūmō,** take, expend], expense, charge

semper, *adv.*, always, ever

alō, -ere, -uī, -itum nourish, support

15. largiter [**largus,** large] freely, liberally : **largiter posse** to have very great influence, be very powerful

potentia, -ae, F. [**potēns,** powerful], power, authority, influence

māter, mātris, F., mother

16. Biturīgēs, -um, M., *a tribe of central Gaul*

illīc [**ille,** that + **-ce**] in that place, there

collocō, 1 [**locō,** place], place together, place, station, arrange: **nūptum collocāre** to give in marriage

---

10. redēmpta habēre, *had bought up* (*in a bought up condition*). For this use of the perf. part. see Chap. XV., 3, 4. **illō licente**: App. **150.** **audeat**: a few verbs like **audeō,** having no perfect stem, use passive forms for tenses of completed action. Such verbs are called semi-deponents.

11. et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

13. sē: who? App. **164.**

14. neque = et nōn. domī, *at home.* The locative of the second declension ends in **-ī** in the singular. App. **16,** *b*, **29,** *d* and **151,** *a.*

15. largiter posse = largiter potentem esse. causā, *for the sake of.* App. **99,** *a.*

cāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā, dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam

17. uxor, -ōris, F., wife
soror, -ōris, F., sister
18. nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum veil one's self for, marry (*of the bride*)
19. faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum favor, befriend
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī (-iī), cupītum be eager for, desire, wish well to, favor
affīnitās, -ātis, F., alliance by marriage, relationship, connection
ōdī, ōdisse (*see App.* **86**) hate, detest
21. dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum [**minuō,** lessen] lessen, diminish, impair
antīquus, -a, -um [**ante,** before] former, old, ancient
22. honor (honōs), -ōris, M., honor, regard, glory, distinction
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [**statuō,** set up] set up again, reëstablish, restore
25. dēspērō, 1 [**spēs,** hope], cease to hope, despair

---

17. collocāsse (also **comparāsse** l. 12): uncontracted form? (**441**) **ipsum**: i.e., Dumnorix.

17, 18. ex mātre, *on his mother's side.* App. **135. propinquās suās,** *his female relatives.* **nūptum . . . collocāsse,** *had given in marriage.* For the use of the supine see App. **295.**

19. Helvētiīs: for the case see App. **115.**

20. suō nōmine, *on his own account* (literally, *name*).

21. dēminūta: supply **sit.** Why not **est**? App. **269.**

22. quid: the indefinite pronoun. See App. **174.**

23, 24. in spem . . . venīre, literally *he came into hope;* translate *he had the hope.* **rēgnī obtinendī**: App. **288. imperiō,** *under the control* or *with the ascendency.* The ablative expresses either *time* or *cause.*

in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

26. equester, -tris, -tre [**eques,** horseman] of *or* belonging to a horseman, of cavalry, cavalry

adversus, -a, -um [**versus** *p. p. of* **vertō,** turn] turned to *or* against, opposite, fronting, adverse, unfavorable

30. perterreō, 2 [**terreō,** frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly

---

26, 27. quod . . . factum, *respecting the unfortunate engagement of cavalry which had occurred a few days before.* App. **248,** *a.* **diēbus:** for case see App. **148.**

28. equitātuī: for case see App. **116,** I.

29. auxiliō, *as* (or *for an*) *aid.* The dative with some verbs denotes the purpose or end in view. This construction is called the dative of purpose. With this dative is commonly joined another dative showing the person or object affected. App. **119.**

EXERCISES

1. Dumnorix, the brother of Diviciacus, was pointed out by this speech of Liscus. 2. Caesar thought he could not discuss these things when many were present. 3. The others said that Liscus had spoken the truth (true things). 4. Dumnorix was a man of great boldness, and desirous of a revolution. 5. For many years the taxes had been bought up by him. 6. Dumnorix increased his property by buying the revenues (the revenues having been bought up). 7. Abundant (**māgnus**) resources for bribing were procured by him. 8. If we support the cavalry at our own expense we shall have it near us. 9. They are very powerful not only among the Bituriges but also among other tribes. 10. The mother, sister, and other female relatives of Dumnorix were

all given in marriage by him. 11. The duties and taxes can be bought up at a small price. 12. He favored the Helvetians because he had married (led in marriage) the daughter of their chief (**princeps**). 13. He had the highest expectation (came into the highest hope) of getting possession of the kingdom by means of (**per**) the Helvetians. 14. Dumnorix and his cavalry began the flight (made the beginning of the flight) in the unsuccessful cavalry battle. 15. The Aedui had placed Dumnorix in command of the cavalry which they sent as an aid to Caesar.

Caesar counsels with Diviciacus concerning his brother Dumnorix.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverte-

1. cōgnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum [**nōscō**, learn] learn thoroughly, learn, ascertain: (*in perfect tenses*), understand, know

4. iniussū (*abl. from* **iniussus, -ūs**) [**iubeō**, order] without command *or* order

5. īnsciēns, -entis [**sciō**, know] not knowing, unaware, ignorant

7. animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī -versum [**animus** + **ad** + **vertō**] to turn the mind to, to notice: (*with* **in**) to punish

---

1, 2. cum . . . accēderent, *since the most clearly proven facts coincided with* (more literally *were added to*) *these suspicions.* These facts (**rēs**) are stated in the following **quod** clauses. **quod**: for its use see App. **248**.

3. trādūxisset: for construction see App. **269**. **cūrāsset**: uncontracted form? (**441**)

4, 5. iniussū . . . ipsīs, *without his own order and* (*that*) *of the state but also without their* (the Aeduans') *knowledge.*

6, 7. satis esse causae, *that it was a sufficient reason.* Adverbs denoting quantity govern the genitive of the whole. App. **101,** *a.* **animadverteret**: App. **230,** *a.*

ret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam nē ēius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Procillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul

9. repūgnō, 1 [**pūgnō**, fight], fight back, resist, oppose

10. studium, -ī, N. [**studeō**, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, good will, devotion

ēgregius, -a, -um [**ē** + **grex**, herd] out of the common herd, superior, eminent, remarkable

11. iūstitia, -ae, F. [**iūstus**, just] justice, rectitude, uprightness

temperantia, -ae, F., moderation, prudence, self-control

supplicium, -ī, N., punishment

12. offendō, -fendere, -fendī, fēnsum [**ob** + **fendō**, strike] strike against, wound, hurt, alienate: **animum offendere** wound the feelings

vereor, 2, reverence, fear, dread

priusquam, *conj.*, before

13. quisquam, quaequam, quicquam (**quidquam**), *indef. pron.*, any one, any thing

vocō, 1, call, summon

14. interpres, -pretis, M. F., interpreter, mediator

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [**moveō**, move] move back *or* away, remove, withdraw

Valerius, -ī, M., *a Roman Gentile name:* Gaius Valerius Procillus, *a prominent Gaul whose father had received Roman citizenship*

16. colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum [**cum** + **loquor**, speak] speak with, converse, confer

simul, *adv.*, at once, at the same time

---

9. ūnum, *one consideration.* **quod . . . cōgnōverat**: see App. **248**.

11. Nē with a verb of *fearing* (here **verēbātur**) is translated *that.* See App. **228**, *b*.

12. Priusquam is used with the subjunctive to show that the act is foreseen or expected. Otherwise the indicative is used. See App. **236**, *b*. Here Caesar expected to punish Dumnorix, and with this in mind summoned Diviciacus.

15, 16. prīncipem, *a prominent man.* **cui . . . habēbat**, *in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters.* **fidem habēbat** = **cōnfīdēbat**, and the dative **cui** is explained in App. **115**, *a*.

commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit; petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

17. commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum remind forcibly, impress upon

18. sēparātim, *adv.* [**sēparō,** separate], separately, apart

19. petō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītum seek, aim at, make for, attack, ask, entreat

hortor, 1. exhort, encourage, urge strongly

offēnsiō, -ōnis, F. [**offendō,** strike against], a striking against, hurting, wounding, offense

---

18, 19. sint dicta, dīxerit: App. **262.**

20, 21. causā cōgnitā, *after investigating the case.* **statuat, iubeat:** App. **228,** *a.*

EXERCISES

1. Caesar was informed that Dumnorix had led the Helvetians through the territories of the Sequanians. 2. He had done all these things without his order and also without the knowledge of the Aeduans. 3. Having learned these things, he determined to punish him because he thought there was sufficient cause. 4. The remarkable devotion and rectitude of his brother Diviciacus opposed this. 5. Caesar feared that the punishment of Dumnorix would wound the feelings of his brother. 6. Diviciacus was called in order that he might speak with him. 7. Valerius, the interpreter, was not removed with the other interpreters. 8. Caesar besought and urged Diviciacus, after examining the case (*abl. abs.*), either himself to decide or to order the state to decide. 9. He learned that the punishment was without their knowledge or order.

Caesar spares Dumnorix but places him under guard.

20. Dīviciācus, multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus āc nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum;

1. **lacrima, -ae,** F., tear

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum embrace, clasp, enclose

2. **obsecrō,** 1, implore, entreat, beseech

sciō, 4, know, understand, distinguish

6. **adulēscentia, -ae,** F. [**adulēscēns,** a youth], youth

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum grow *or* increase (*in size, power, age, etc.*), become famous *or* prominent

7. **(ops), opis,** F., power, help, strength; (*in pl.*) wealth, resources, authority, influence

nervus, -ī, M., sinew, tendon; (*in pl.*) energy, power

minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum [**minus,** less] lessen, impair, diminish

8. **perniciēs, -ēī,** F. [**per + nex,** death], destruction, ruin

amor, -ōris, M. [**amō,** love], love

frāternus, -a, -um [**frāter,** brother] brotherly, fraternal, of a brother

9. **exīstimātiō, -ōnis,** F. [**exīstimō,** estimate], judging, opinion

vulgus, -ī, N., the common people, crowd, rabble, the masses: (*in abl. as adv.*) commonly, generally

---

2. quid: form and meaning? App. **174.** **gravius,** '*too* (or *very*) *severe.* Give the different auxiliary words that may be used in translating the comparative. **in,** *against* (*in regard to*). **scīre,** etc.: reconstruct the direct discourse. "I know that these (statements) are true and from this fact no one feels (**capit**) more (of) sorrow than I do," etc.

3, 4. ex eō, *from that fact,* or *on that account.* **dolōris**: App. **101,** *a.*

4–8. ipse, sē, suam, sēsē: i.e., Diviciacus. **domī**: see App. **151,** *a.* **minimum posset,** *had very little influence.* **opibus, nervīs**: App. **145.**

9, 10. quod . . . accidisset: in direct discourse, "Now if anything rather severe shall befall (shall have befallen) him from you."

quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī āc precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs sus-

13. verbum, -ī, N., word

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum weep, lament

14. dextra, -ae, F. [**dexter,** right; *supply* **manus**], the right hand

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum [*for* **prehendō**] lay hold of, seize, grasp

cōnsōlor, 1, comfort, cheer

ōrō, 1 [**ōs,** mouth], speak, plead, entreat

15. rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F., the public matter *or* interests; *hence* the state, commonwealth (*both parts of this compound are inflected*)

16. condōnō, 1 [**dōnō,** give], give freely, give up, pardon, forgive

17. adhibeō, 2 [**habeō,** have], have *or* bring to, bring in, summon, employ, use

18. reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum [**prehendō,** seize] hold back *or* fast, seize hold of, criticise, blame, censure

19. moneō, 2, warn, advise, admonish, teach

---

12. futūrum (esse) utī . . . āverterentur, *it would happen that,* etc. **Futūrum esse ut** (= **fore ut**) with the subjunctive is here used for the future passive infinitive which rarely occurs. The same form is necessarily employed when the given verb has no future participle. **āverterentur**: mood and why?

13. cum, *while.* **peteret**: App. **242,** *a.*

14, 15. rogat . . . faciat, *he asks him to make,* etc. The substantive clause of desire (purpose) without an introductory **ut** may follow verbs of *asking, urging,* and *desiring* including **volō** and its compounds. App. **228,** *a.* **tantī . . . ostendit,** *he shows that his good will is of so great value to him.* The genitive (here **tantī**) is used to express *indefinite* price or value. App. **105.**

16. ēius voluntātī āc precibus, *at his wish and entreaty:* indirect object.

pīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

20. vītō, 1, avoid, shun, evade

praetereō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum [**praeter,** beyond + **eō**] go beyond *or* past, pass by, omit, neglect, reject; (*in p. p. as adj.*) past; (*as subst.*) the past

20. vītet: App. **228,** *a.* **praeterita,** *the past.* **frātrī,** *for* (*the sake of*) *his brother.*

21. pōnit = **adpōnit,** *he places over.*

EXERCISES

1. Diviciacus embraced Caesar and besought him not to decide too severely. 2. Diviciacus said: "I know these things are true and no one on this account feels more sorrow than I do." 3. He used this power for diminishing the popularity of his brother. 4. At the same time he conversed with many others. 5. If anything rather severe shall have befallen him, the people will think it was done at my desire. 6. For this reason all will turn away from me. 7. He said this because he was an intimate friend of Caesar. 8. While he was weeping Caesar grasped his hand and comforted him. 9. He besought Caesar to pardon his brother. 10. His favor was of so much importance to Caesar that he forgave the wrong to the state.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō,

2. cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum sit down together, settle, take a position, halt, encamp

octō, *indecl. numeral,* eight

1, 2. hostēs . . . cōnsēdisse, *that the enemy had encamped at the foot of the mountain.* **mīlia passuum octō,** *eight miles.*

Caesar arranges to harass the Helvetians.

quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cōgnōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perī-

3. **quālis, -e,** *interrog.*, of what sort, kind, *or* nature? what? *rel.*, of such a sort, kind, *or* nature, as, such as, as

circuitus, -ūs, M. [**circumeō,** go around], going around, a winding path, circuit: **in circuitū** all around

ascēnsus, -ūs, M. [**ascendō,** climb up], climbing up, ascending, approach, ascent

5. **praetor, -ōris,** M., praetor (*a Roman magistrate*), commander

6. **dux, ducis,** M.F. [*compare* **dūcō,** lead], leader, guide, commander

7. **ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsum** [**ad + scandō,** climb] climb up to, ascend, mount, climb

10. **Pūblius, -ī** (*abbr.* **P.**), M., *a Roman praenomen or given name*

Cōnsidius, -ī, M., Publius Considius (*one of Caesar's officers*)

mīlitāris, -e [**mīles,** soldier] of a soldier, military, martial: **rēs mīlitāris** the science of warfare

perītus, -a, -um tried, experienced, skilled, familiar with, accustomed to

---

3. **quālis esset nātūra,** *what was the character:* indirect question. App. **262.**

4. (**eōs**) **quī cōgnōscerent mīsit,** *he sent men to learn.* For the kind of clause see App. **225,** *a*, 1.

5. **lēgātum prō praetōre,** *a lieutenant with praetorian power:* literally *in place of the commander;* i.e., with special delegated powers.

8. **quid suī cōnsilī sit,** *what his plan is*: for the form of **cōnsilī,** see App. **16,** *c;* for the case, App. **101,** *a.* **sit:** App. **262.**

10, 11. **quī . . . habēbātur,** *who was regarded as very skillful in military science.* **reī**: App. **106,** *a.*

Both in reading and in translating give the names in full; thus, ***Publius*** for **P.**, *Lucius* for **L.**, *Marcus* for **M.**

tissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

11. **Sulla, -ae,** M., *a Roman name;* Lucius Cornelius Sulla, *the dictator, the bitter foe of Marius, and leader of the aristocracy*

posteā, *adv.* [**post,** after], after this, afterwards

12. **Crassus, -ī,** M., (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus, *triumvir with Caesar and Pompey;* (2) *his son* Publius Licinius, *a lieutenant in Caesar's army;* (3) *a second son,* Marcus Licinius, *one of Caesar's quaestors*

EXERCISES

1. The scouts informed Caesar that the enemy were eight miles away. 2. The Helvetians had encamped at the foot of the mountains. 3. Scouts were sent by Caesar to learn (who should learn) what was the nature of the ascent of the mountain. 4. The scouts reported that the ascent was very easy. 5. Caesar said to Labienus: "I will tell you what my plan is." 6. Having sent the cavalry in advance (*abl. abs.*) Caesar pushed on (**contendō**) by the same road. 7. He sent in advance Publius Considius, who had been considered very skillful in military matters.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut

1. **lūx, lūcis,** F., light

3. **captīvus, -ī,** M. [**capiō,** take], captive, prisoner

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum find out with certainty, discover, ascertain

---

1. **prīmā lūce,** *at daybreak.* **summus mōns,** *the summit of the ridge* (*the top of the hill*). Adjectives denoting *order* and *succession* are used in agreement with the noun, to designate *a particular part.* App. **160.**

1–4. **passibus**: Chap. XV, 15. **ut**: as in **383.** **tenērētur, abesset, cōgnitus esset**: mode and why? App. **242,** *a.*

ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī: id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium

His plans are frustrated by the mistake of Considius.

4. **equus, -ī,** M., horse

5. **admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum** [**mittō,** send] admit, let go *or* loose, permit

accurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum [**ad + currō,** run] run up *or* rush to

6. **Gallicus, -a, -um** [**Gallia**] pertaining to Gaul *or* the Gauls, Gallic

8. **collis, -is,** M., hill

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [**dūcō,** lead] draw *or* lead up, lead *or* draw off, withdraw

aciēs, -ēī, F. [*compare* **ācer,** sharp], sharp point *or* edge *of a weapon;* sharp *or* keen sight, glance; a line (*as forming an edge*), battle line

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum [**struō,** build] build upon, construct, form, draw up, array

9. **praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum** [**capiō,** take] anticipate, instruct, order

10. **nisi,** *conj.*, if not, if . . . not, except, unless

prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, near, nigh

11. **impetus, -ūs,** M. [**petō,** attack], attack, onset, charge, impetuosity, force, vehemence

12. **abstineō,** 2 [**teneō,** hold], hold off, keep aloof from, refrain

13. **dēnique,** *adv.*, and then, thereupon, finally, at last

---

4, 5. **equō admissō,** *at full gallop.* Observe that the ablative absolute is here equivalent to an ablative of manner.

9. **ut erat eī praeceptum,** *as he had been directed.* The real subject is the following clause, **nē committeret,** and we can translate literally *as not to engage in battle had been enjoined upon him.*

13. **multō diē,** *in broad day,* contrasted with **prīmā lūce.**

timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

16. intervāllum, -ī, N., interval (*of space or time*)

---

15. perterritum, *entirely overcome.* **quod . . . renūntiāsse,** *had reported to him as if seen what he had not seen.* **renūntiāsse:** uncontracted form ?

16. quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, *at the usual interval.*

EXERCISES

1. The enemy's camp was not far from the camp of Labienus. 2. The arrival of Caesar and Labienus was not known by Considius. 3. Considius said: "The mountain which you wished Labienus to seize is held by the enemy; I know this by the insignia." 4. Caesar's troops were withdrawn by him to the nearest hill and the line of battle was formed. 5. Caesar said to Labienus: "Do not engage in battle unless my troops are seen near the enemy's camp." 6. Having seized the mountain he keeps the soldiers from battle for the present. 7. When it was broad day (**multō diē**) Caesar was informed that his men were holding the mountain. 8. Considius, who was thoroughly frightened, reported to Caesar what he had not seen, as if he had seen it (**prō vīsō**). 9. The Helvetians' camp was pitched (**pōnō**) several miles from the Roman camp.

23. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat

1. postrīdiē, *adv.* [**posterus,** following + **diēs**], on the day following, the next day ; **postrīdiē ēius diēī** on the next *or* following day

bīduum, -ī, N. [**bis,** twice + **diēs**], space *or* period of two days, two days

supersum, -esse, -fuī [**super,**

The Romans, marching towards Bibracte, are followed and harassed by the Helvetians.

cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, non amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis, quod prīdiē

over] be over *or* left, survive, remain

2. **Bibracte, -is,** N., *the chief town of the Aedui*

3. **cōpiōsus, -a, -um** [**cōpia,** abundance] abundantly *or* well supplied, wealthy

4. **frūmentārius, -a, -um** [**frūmentum,** grain] of *or* pertaining to grain; **rēs frūmentāria,** supply of grain, provisions

5. **prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum** [**speciō,** look] look forward, look out, see to, provide for

7. **fugitīvus, -a, -um** [**fugiō,** flee] fleeing; (*as subst.*) a runaway slave *or* soldier, deserter, fugitive

Aemilius, -ī, M., Lucius Aemilius (*a Gaul in charge of a decuria of Caesar's cavalry*)

decuriō, -ōnis, M. [**decem**], decurion (*a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten*)

8. **seu** *or* **sīve,** *conj.* [**sī + -ve,** or], or if, if either, whether, either; **seu . . . seu** either . . . or, whether . . . or

timor, -ōris, M. [**timeō,** fear], fear, alarm, dread

9. **prīdiē,** *adv.* [**pri-** *in* **prior + diēs**], on the day before

---

1. The adverb **postrīdiē** has here its original force as a noun, and is followed by the genitive **diēī**.

2. **cum . . . oportēret,** *within which grain ought to be measured out to the army.*

3. **oppidō**: see App. **95,** *b.*

4, 5. **mīlibus**: Chap. XV, 15. **reī . . . prōspiciendum,** *that he must look out for supplies.* **reī**: see App. **116,** I. **prōspiciendum (esse)**: for the form see App. **76**; for the translation see **697**.

7. **Bibracte**: see App. **131.** *a.*

9. **eō magis,** *the more for this reason.* See App. **138.**

superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī āc lacessere coepērunt.

11. interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūdī, -clūsum [**claudō**, shut] shut *or* cut off, obstruct, hinder

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum [**fīdō**, trust] trust completely, rely on, hope; (*in p. p. as adj.*) trusting in, relying upon

commūtō, 1 [**mūtō**, change], change *or* alter completely, change, exchange

12. convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [**vertō**, turn] turn completely, wheel around, turn, change: **sīgna convertere** to change front

---

10, 11. sīve eō, *or for this reason.* See App. **138**. **rē . . . posse** (*the Romans*) *could be cut off from supplies* (at Bibracte). **rē frūmentāriā**: see App. **134**.

EXERCISES

1. Caesar thought it was necessary to measure out grain to his [men] on the following day. 2. Caesar turned away his line of march (**iter**) in order that he might look out for supplies. 3. The runaway slave reported to the Helvetians that Caesar was pushing on (**contendō**) to Bibracte. 4. The day before, the Romans did not engage in battle when they had seized the higher places (*abl. abs.*). 5. The Helvetians fully trusted that they could cut off the Romans from supplies. 6. Therefore (**itaque**) they completely changed their plan and reversed their line of march. 7. Our men were harassed on the rear by the enemy.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in

1. postquam, *conj.*, after, as soon as

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [**vertō**, turn] turn to, turn toward *or* against

---

1. id . . . advertit, *directed his attention to this.* For construction of **animum** and **id** compare that of **partēs** and **flūmen**, App. **127**.

Caesar prepares for battle. The Helvetians advance to the attack.

proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, āc tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

2. **sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum** [**sub** + **teneō,** hold] uphold, sustain, check, restrain, withstand, endure

3. **medius, -a, -um** in the middle *or* midst, in the middle of, intervening

triplex, -icis [**trēs** + **plicō,** fold] threefold, triple

4. **veterānus, -a, -um** [**vetus,** old] old, veteran

6. **proximē,** *adv.*, last, lately

7. **compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum** [**pleō,** fill] fill up *or* completely, complete

8. **sarcinae, -ārum,** F., (*pl.*) baggage *or* luggage (*of the individual soldier*), packs

9. **mūniō,** 4 [**moenia,** walls], defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect

10. **impedīmentum, -ī,** N. [**impediō,** hinder], hindrance, obstacle: (*in pl.*) baggage *or* luggage (*of an army*), baggage-train (*including the draught animals*)

11. **cōnfertus, -a, -um** (*p. p. of* **cōnferciō,** crowd together) crowded together, dense, compact

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [**iaciō,** hurl] hurl *or* drive back, repel, cast down *or* off, reject

12. **phalanx, -ngis,** F., a compact band of troops, phalanx

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-

---

2. **quī sustinēret,** *to check.* App. **225,** *a,* 1.

3. **in colle mediō,** *midway up the slope.* App. **160.**

8. **eum:** supply **locum. hīs:** App. **137.**

7–9. **collocārī, complērī, cōnferrī, mūnīrī iussit:** for construction of the infinitives, see App. **280,** *a.*

9, 10. **cum . . . carrīs:** not only the fighting men but the baggage and the women and children. This was to make the men fight more desperately.

12. **sub . . . successērunt,** *came up . . . near to.* For the accusative with **sub** see App. **154.**

sum [**sub** + **cēdō**, go] go *or* come under, go *or* come up from beneath, come up to, advance, come close to, take the place of, succeed, prosper

EXERCISES

1. When Caesar had turned his attention (**animus**) to this, he thought his troops must be withdrawn. 2. The cavalry were sent by him to withstand the attack of the enemy. 3. When he had formed a triple line half way up the hill, he ordered two legions to be placed on the summit. 4. Caesar enlisted these legions very recently (**proximē**) in hither Gaul. 5. All the wagons of the Helvetians, with their baggage, were collected in one place. 6. Our cavalry was driven back by them, and they advanced in a dense line to our rear.

The battle. The Helvetians are forced to retreat.

25. Caesar prīmum suō deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dē-

1. **prīmum**, *adv.* [**prīmus**, first], first, in the first place
deinde (**dein**), *adv.*, thereupon, then, next
2. **aequō**, 1 [**aequus**, equal], make even *or* equal, equalize
3. **cohortor**, 1 [**cum** + **hortor**, encourage], encourage greatly, animate, rally
4. **pīlum**, **-ī**, N., heavy javelin, pilum
5. **perfringō**, **-fringere**, **-frēgī**, **-frāctum** [**frangō**, break] break *or* burst through
disiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum** [**iaciō**, hurl] hurl apart *or* aside, scatter, rout, disperse
gladius, **-ī**, M., sword
dēstringō, **-stringere**, **-strīnxī**, **-strictum** [**stringō**, bind, strip] unbind, strip *or* draw off, unsheathe, draw (**gladium**)

---

1. **suō** (**equō remōtō**), *sending away his own horse.*
2. **tolleret**: App. **225**, *a*, 3.
5, 6. **gladiīs dēstrictīs**, *with drawn swords.*

strictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactāto bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dē-

6. **pūgna, -ae,** F. [**pūgnō,** fight], a fight, battle, contest, dispute

7. **scūtum, -ī,** N., shield, buckler (*oblong, convex,* 2½ x 4 *ft., made of wood covered with leather, or iron plates, with a metal rim*)

ictus, -ūs, M., stroke, blow, thrust

8. **trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum** [**fīgō,** fix] thrust *or* pierce through, transfix

colligō, 1 [**cum + ligō,** bind], bind *or* fasten together, unite, hamper

ferrum, -ī, N., iron, steel; *anything made of iron,* sword, spearpoint, chain, etc.

īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum [**flectō,** bend] bend in, bend

9. **ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum** [**vellō,** pluck] pull *or* tear out, pluck *or* root up

sinister, -tra, -trum, left: **sub sinistrā** on the left: (*in fem. sing. as subst.; supply* **manus**) the left hand

commodē [**commodus,** convenient] conveniently, readily, easily: **nōn satis commodē** not very easily

pūgnō, 1, fight, give battle, contend, oppose, strive

10. **bracchium, -ī,** N., the arm *from the hand to the elbow,* forearm

praeoptō, 1 [**optō,** choose], choose rather, prefer

manus, -ūs, F., the hand

11. **ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum** [**mittō,** send] send out *or* forth, let go, hurl, discharge

nūdus, -a, -um naked, unclothed, unprotected

corpus, -oris, N., the body, person, a (*dead*) body

tandem, *adv.,* at last, at length, finally

vulnus, -eris, N., a wound, cut, calamity

dēfessus, -a, -um wearied, exhausted, faint

---

7. **Gallīs . . . impedīmentō,** *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in fighting.* For the two datives see App. **119.**

8. **cum . . . īnflexisset,** *when the iron point had become bent.*

10. **multī ut . . . praeoptārent,** *so that many preferred.* Mode? App. **226.** **Multī,** being emphatic, precedes **ut,** which usually stands first in its clause. **manū:** see App. **134.**

11. **nūdō corpore,** *without a shield.* App. **142.**

fessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter XV agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre; et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipartītō intulērunt: prīma et secun-

12. referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [**ferō,** bear] bear *or* carry back, give back, restore: **sē referre** (*or* **pedem referre**) go back, retreat

subsum, -esse, -fuī [**sub,** under, near] be under *or* below, be near *or* close at hand

13. eō, *adv.* [*old dative of* **is**], thither, there (*in sense of* thither), to the place (*where, etc.*)

15. claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum shut, close, shut in, enclose: **agmen claudere** to bring up the rear

16. latus, -eris, N., side, wing *or* flank *of an army*

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum expose; (*in p. p. as adj.*) exposed, unprotected

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum [**veniō,** come] come around, surround, encompass, invest, circumvent

17. cōnspicor, 1, look closely, observe, descry, perceive

18. rūrsus (rūrsum), *adv.* [*for* **reversus,** *from* **revertō,** turn back], again, back again

redintegrō, 1 [**re + integrō,** make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive

19. sīgnum, -ī, N., mark, sign, military standard, banner, signal, watchword, statue, seal: **sīgna sequī** follow the standard: **ab sīgnīs discēdere** withdraw from the ranks: **sīgna īnferre** advance: **sīgna convertere** wheel about

bipartītō, *adv.* [**bis + partior,** divide], in two parts *or* divisions, in two ways

---

12, 13. suberat . . . spatiō, *was about a mile distant;* literally, *was near at hand,* (*being separated*) *by a distance of about a mile.* **mīlle**: adjective. **spatiō**: App. **148.**

15. novissimīs praesidiō, *a protection to their rear.* Cf. l. 7.

16. ex itinere, *interrupting their march* (i.e., that of the Boii and Tulingi).

19. conversa sīgna intulērunt, *wheeled about and advanced;* literally, *carried their reversed standards forward.*

da aciēs, ut victīs āc submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

20. vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum conquer, overcome, vanquish, excel, prevail
submoveō (**sum-**), **-movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum** [**sub** + **moveō**, move] move from beneath *or* near, move *or* send away, remove, dislodge
resistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum halt, stop, stand still, withstand, oppose, continue, remain

---

20. victīs āc submōtīs, *the conquered and dislodged* (Helvetii). App. **145.**

20, 21. ut venientēs sustinēret, *to withstand those* (the Boii and Tulingi) *who were advancing.* Observe that the present participle (**venientēs**) is here equivalent to a relative clause.

EXERCISES


ROMAN STANDARD BEARER

1. The danger of all was made equal by Caesar, who removed all the horses from sight. 2. The phalanx of the Helvetians was easily dispersed, and the Romans began to attack them with drawn swords. 3. It was a hindrance to the Helvetians that many of their shields were pierced through by one thrust of the javelin. 4. The iron point (**ferrum**) of the javelin bent back so that it could not be pulled out of the shields. 5. Caesar said that the Helvetians could not fight conveniently because the left hand was hindered. 6. Many of the enemy throwing down their shields, fought with their bodies unprotected. 7. The Helvetians, exhausted with wounds, retreated to the mountain which was near. 8. About fifteen

thousand men marched (**iter faciō**) with them, in order that they might be a protection to the rear. 9. The conquered and dislodged Gauls were resisted by the first and second lines.

They are routed and flee northward. Caesar pursues.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulne-

1. **anceps, ancipitis** [**ambō**, both + **caput**, head] two headed, double, doubtful, wavering
ācriter, *adv.* [**ācer,** sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously
5. **hōra, -ae,** F., hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), varying in length according to the season*
vesper, -erī, M., evening
7. **nox, noctis,** F., night
8. **vāllum, -ī,** N. [**vāllus,** palisade], wall *or* rampart *of earth (set with palisades)*, intrenchments, earthworks
obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [**iaciō,** throw] hurl *or* place in the way, set against *or* in front
9. **coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum** [**iaciō**] hurl *or* throw together, cast
10. **rota, -ae,** F., wheel
matara, -ae, F., javelin, pike
trāgula, -ae, F., *a light Celtic*

---

1. **pūgnātum est,** *they fought.* For translation see **697.**

2, 3. **alterī . . . alterī,** *the one party* (Helvetii) . . . *the other party* (Boii and Tulingi).

5, 6. **cum pūgnātum sit,** *although they fought.* **697** and App. **247.** **hōrā septimā:** about one o'clock.

7. **ad multam noctem,** *till late at night.*

9. **in nostrōs venientēs,** *upon our men as they came up.*

rābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

javelin *or* dart *attached to a strap by which it was hurled.*

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, [**iaciō**] hurl *or* put under *or* near, discharge below, throw from beneath

vulnerō, 1 [**vulnus,** a wound], wound, injure, hurt

15. intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [**mittō,** send] send between, interrupt, discontinue, leave off

Lingonēs, -um, M., *a Gallic tribe in the Vosges near the sources of the Maas and Marne*

17. sepultūra, -ae, F., burial, sepulture

trīduum, -ī, N. [**trēs,** three + **diēs**], three days

moror, 1, delay, tarry, linger

18. littera, -ae, F., a letter *of the alphabet;* (*in pl.*) letter, epistle, missive

nūntius, -ī, M., messenger, courier, message, tidings, command, injunction

19. nēve (neu), *conj.* [**nē** + **-ve,** or], and not, nor (*see App.* **188,** *b*)

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum aid, help, assist

---

11. cum esset pūgnātum, *when the battle had gone on for a long time.* App **242,** *a.* **impedīmentīs, castrīs**: App. **119.**

12. ūnus ē fīliīs, *one of his sons.* A genitive of the whole might have been used, but see App. **101,** *b.*

14. eāque tōtā nocte, *during that whole night.* App. **152,** *a.*

15. partem: App. **130.** **17. trīduum**: App. **130.**

18–20. potuissent: App. **245. nē . . . habitūrum**: this is all in indirect discourse, quoting the purport of the letter. **nē . . . iuvārent** (*ordering them*) *not to,* etc. App. **267. quī sī,** *for if they.* App. **173,** *a.* **iūvissent**: for the direct future perfect indicative. **sē eōdem . . . habitūrum (esse),** *he would regard them in the same position as the Helvetii.*

EXERCISES

1. The Helvetians for a long time fought a doubtful battle. 2. They fought about the baggage from the seventh hour far into the night. 3. A retreating (**āversus**) enemy was seen by no one, although the battle lasted until evening. 4. Pikes and darts were hurled from below, between the wheels of the wagons. 5. When they had fought several hours the Romans obtained possession of the Gauls' camp. 6. They captured Orgetorix's son and daughter, who were in the camp. 7. The Romans could not pursue them on the same night, because many of the soldiers were wounded. 8. Caesar said to the Lingones: "Do not aid the Helvetians with grain or anything. If you shall have aided them, I shall consider you in the same position in which I consider the Helvetians." 9. After an interval of three days all the troops followed.

Surrender of the Helvetians. Six thousand escape.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre

1. **inopia, -ae,** F. [**inops,** needy], need, want, poverty, destitution
2. **dēditiō, -ōnis,** F. [**dēdō,** give up], giving up, surrender, capitulation
3. **prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum** [**iaciō,** throw] throw forward *or* away, project, cast, reject, abandon

suppliciter, *adv.* [**supplex,** suppliant], suppliantly, humbly

---

2. **quī cum,** *when these* (ambassadors). For translation see App. **173,** *a.*

5. **quō tum essent,** *where they* (the Helvetians) *then were.* This clause depends on the subjunctive clause **atque (cum) . . . iussisset,** and has its verb attracted to the subjunctive. **App. 274.**

iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI ēius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī posse exīsti-

6. **pāreō**, 2, obey, submit, yield to, comply with, be subject to

7. **servus, -ī**, M., slave, servant

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum [**fugiō**, flee] flee for refuge, take refuge in, desert

poscō, poscere, poposcī ask, demand, request (*stronger than* **petō**, *less strong than* **flāgitō**)

8. **conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum** [**quaerō**, search] seek for carefully, search for, hunt up

9. **Verbigenus, -ī**, M., *one of the four clans of the Helvetii*

10. **trādō** (*or* **trānsdō**), **-dere -didī, -ditum** [**trāns** + **dō**, give] give across *or* over, give up, surrender, hand down, transmit

11. **salūs, salūtis**, F., health, welfare, preservation, security, safety

dēditīcius, -a, -um [**dēdō**, surrender] surrendered, subject; (*as subst.*) one surrendered (*formally*), prisoner

12. **occultō**, 1, hide, secrete, keep secret, conceal

īgnōrō, 1 [**īgnārus**, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of, fail to observe, overlook; (*in pass.*) be unobserved, unrecognized

---

7, 8. quī . . . perfūgissent, *who had fled.* The relative clause quotes the words of Caesar's demand in indirect discourse. He said "the slaves who have fled." As the idea of saying is only implied, this is called implied indirect discourse. See App. **273.** **dum . . . cōnferuntur,** *while these were being sought out and brought together.* **Dum,** *while,* is used with the present indicative in referring to past events and must be translated by the imperfect indicative. **Ea** is used inclusively for **obsidēs, arma, servōs.** The masculine **eī** might have been used. Such a pronoun follows the same rule as that given for predicate adjectives. See App. **157,** *a*, 2.

9. Verbigenus: see App. **126,** *a.*

10. timōre nē. *by the fear that.* For translation of **nē** see on Chap. XIX., 11.

mārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

13. **ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum** [**gradior,** step] step *or* go out, come forth, march out, make a sortie

---

13. **prīmā nocte,** *in the first part of the night.* See App. **160.**

EXERCISES

1. The legates said that they were influenced by the scarcity of grain. 2. The ambassadors met Caesar on the way and cast themselves at his feet. 3. Caesar ordered the Helvetians to remain where they then were and await his arrival. 4. The Helvetians obeyed Caesar (*App.* **115**) because they feared him. 5. When Caesar had come to them, he demanded all the slaves who had deserted to them. 6. The Helvetians brought to Caesar those things which he had demanded. 7. These men thought that their flight would be easily concealed or entirely overlooked. 8. Caesar was not ignorant that these men had gone.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent,

1. **rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī (-sciī), -scītum** [**scīscō,** inquire] find out, learn, discover
2. **redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum** [**dūcō,** lead] lead *or* bring back, draw back, restore, replace

pūrgō, 1, clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; (*in p. p. as adj.*) freed from blame *or* suspicion, exonerated

---

1. **quod,** *this.* See App. **173,** *a.* **quōrum:** the antecedent is **hīs,** the indirect object of **imperāvit.**

2. **utī:** how distinguished from the present infinitive of **ūtor?** **utī conquīrerent,** etc., *to search them out,* etc. See App. **228.** **sī sibi . . . vellent,** *if they wished to be blameless before him* (or *in his eyes*). The dative **sibi** indicates the person *in reference to whom* the statement is made. See App. **120.** **vellent:** indirect discourse for **vultis.**

imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque

These are retaken and put to death, the rest compelled to return to Helvetia.

4. **perfuga, -ae,** M. [**perfugiō,** flee for refuge], refugee, deserter

6. **unde,** *rel. and interrog. adv.* (*of place*), from which place, whence

7. **frūx, frūgis,** F., (*usually in plur.*) fruit, produce

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [**ā** + **mittō**] send away, dismiss, lose

8. **famēs, -is,** F., hunger, want, famine

tolerō, 1, bear up under, endure, support

10. **ratiō, -ōnis,** F., reckoning, account, plan, course, means, reason

11. **vacō,** 1, be empty *or* unoccupied, lie waste

12. **bonitās, -ātis,** F. [**bonus,** good], goodness, fertility (*of lands*)

---

3. **reductōs**: render by a temporal clause, *after they had been brought back.* Compare the use of the perfect participle in **442.** **in . . . habuit,** *he treated them as enemies,* i.e., he put them to death.

7–9. **quō . . . tolerārent,** *on which they could live.* App. **230,** *a.* **ut eīs . . . facerent,** *to provide them with,* etc.

10. **eā ratiōne,** *for this reason.*

13. **suīs** = **Germānōrum.**

14–16. **Bōiōs . . . concessit**: English order, **concessit Aeduīs petentibus ut collocārent Bōiōs in suīs fīnibus, quod cōgnitī erant ēgregiā virtūte** (*of eminent valor*). **Bōiōs** is placed first for emphasis. **virtūte**: see App. **141.**

16. **quibus** and **quōs**: translate by demonstratives. See App. **173,** *a.*

posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

17. **pār, paris** equal. alike, equal to, a match for: **pār atque,** the same as

condiciō, -ōnis, F., condition, quality, state

17. **parem . . . atque . . . erant,** *the same as they themselves were in* (or *such as they themselves enjoyed*). **Atque (āc)** generally means *as* or *than* after words of likeness and comparison.

EXERCISES

1. Caesar ascertained that the deserters had gone through the territories of the neighboring peoples. 2. Caesar said: "Search them out and bring them back if you wish to be blameless in my sight." 3. He commanded that they should be treated as (held in the number of) enemies. 4. The Helvetians and other tribes (**populī**) had set out from their own territory. 5. Caesar commanded the Allobroges: "Furnish (**faciō**) the Helvetians with a supply of grain." 6. They themselves, having burned their towns and villages, were ordered by Caesar to restore them. 7. He did not wish the Germans to be neighbors to the friends of Rome. 8. The Boii received fields from the Aeduans, and afterwards equal terms of independence.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs

1. **tabula, -ae,** F., board, plank, writing-tablet, writing-list
2. **Graecus, -a, -um** of *or* belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian

2. **quibus in tabulīs,** *in which*. For a like repetition of the antecedent see **451**.

nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs quī arma ferre possent ad mīlia XCII. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

Enumeration of the Helvetians and their allies.

3. **nōminātim** [**nōminō**, name] by name, expressly, in detail

4. **puer, -erī**, M., boy, child; (*in pl.*) children (of both sexes)

senex, senis, *adj.*, old; (*as subst.*) an old man

5. **mulier, -eris**, F., woman, wife

summa, -ae, F. [for **summa rēs**], the main thing *or* point, sum total, whole amount, aggregate

6. **caput, capitis**, N., the head (*of men and animals*), person, individual

9. **nōnāgintā**, *indec. numeral*, ninety

10. **redeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum** [**re-** + **eō**, go] go *or* turn back, return

cēnsus, -ūs, M. [**cēnseō**, estimate], estimation, census

---

3. **exīsset**: App. **262**. **possent**: App. **230**.

5, 6. **quārum . . . summa . . . CCLXIII**, *the aggregate of all these was two hundred and sixty-three thousand Helvetii.* **Rērum** and **capitum** are best omitted in translation.

8. **quī . . . possent**: App. **230**.

9. **fuērunt**: agrees with the plural predicate.

In reading the numerals give the Latin words representing them instead of the abbreviations: **CCLXIII, ducenta sexāgintā tria**; **XXXVI, trīgintā sex**; **XIIII, quattuordecim**; **XXIII, vīgintī tria**; **XXXII, trīgintā duo**; **XCII, nōnāgintā duo**; **CCCLXVIII, trecenta sexāgintā octō**; **C et X, centum et decem.** See App. **47** and **50**.

C. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

B. C. 58

Description of the divisions and inhabitants of Gaul.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Orgetorix persuades the Helvetians to invade Gaul.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

Preparations of the Helvetians.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit.

Orgetorix conspires with chiefs of other tribes for supremacy.

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī

Aeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs āc fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy but escapes. His sudden death.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt: damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut īgnī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

The Helvetians complete their preparations and depart.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī

cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

They arrange to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar delays them by pretexts.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod

aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

He prevents their crossing the Rhone.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium

The Helvetians obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.

dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

Caesar brings up his forces to oppose their passage.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī eōrum in

The Helvetians invade the country of the Aedui who implore Caesar's protection.

servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

At the crossing of the Arar Caesar destroys the Tigurini who formed the rear-guard of the Helvetians.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus āc lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita

The Helvetians, headed by Divico, haughtily ask for peace.

exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūros Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset: sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret: sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

Caesar proposes terms which they refuse.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne

rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

APPENDIX

INTRODUCTION

The appendix, in its present form, is not an enlargement of the former one, but has been written independently. It is intended primarily to gather into a systematic whole the grammatical notes given in the lessons, and to supplement them; and it is furthermore intended to include all the grammatical material which need be put into the hands of a Caesar or Cicero class. The regular paradigms are given in full, with only such exceptional forms as are needed for the reading of Caesar and Cicero. It is believed that the treatment of syntax covers all the essential usages of those authors, and that the relatively large amount of explanation is given only where it is needed. Rules are almost invariably stated in full, so that when the student takes up a more complete grammar he will have to master only the exceptions, not the principles.

The examples are in part made up, for the sake of brevity and clearness, but are drawn largely from Caesar and Cicero. References to Caesar are made by book, chapter, and line of the chapter as nearly as the varying editions will permit. References to Cicero are made by oration and section.

The writer has consulted the usual authorities and is under special obligations, as regards the treatment of the verb, to the writings and personal instruction of Professor William Gardner Hale. The present treatment of the verb is by no means in full accord with Professor Hale's, yet it is largely influenced by it.

PRONUNCIATION

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
   a. Before another vowel, or **h**; as **eō, nihil**.
   b. Before **nd** and **nt**; as **laudandus, laudant**.
   c. Before any other final consonant than **s**; as **laudem, laudat**.

2. A vowel is long:
   a. Before **gn, nf,** and **ns**; as **dīgnus, īnfert, cōnsul**.
   b. When it results from contraction; as **īsset,** for **iisset**.

3. A vowel is usually long:
   a. Before the consonant **i**; as **ēius**.
   b. In monosyllables not ending in **b, d, l, m,** or **t**; as **mē, hīc,** but **ab, ad**.

4. SOUNDS OF VOWELS

It will be noticed in the following table that in some cases the short and long vowels have the same sound, in others a slightly different sound.

a = *a* in *Cuba*	**ā** = *ah!*
e = *e* in *net*	**ē** = *ey* in *they*
i = *i* in *pin*	**ī** = *i* in *machine*
o = *o* in *for* (not as in *got*)	**ō** = *oh!*
u = *oo* in *foot*	**ū** = *oo* in *boot*

y = French *u* or German *ü*; it rarely occurs.

5. SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

A diphthong is two vowel sounds run together into one. If the student will first pronounce **a**, then **u**, then will run the two together, he will get the sound of *ow* in *how*, the proper pronunciation of the diphthong **au**. So with the other diphthongs.

ae = *ai* in *aisle*
oe = *oi* in *oil*
au = *ow* in *how*
eu has no English equivalent. Run the two sounds together.
ui occurs in **huic** and **cui**, pronounced *wheek* and *kwee.*

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *can, go*
i (consonant, sometimes printed **j**) = *y* in *yet*
r pronounced distinctly
s as in *this,* never as in *these*
t as in *tin,* never as in *nation*
v = *w*
x = *ks*
ch, ph, th, = *c, p, t*
bs, bt = *ps, pt*
su = *sw* in **suādeō, suāvis, suēscō,** and their compounds.

7. i is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of **iaciō,** consonant i is pronounced, but not written, before vowel i; as **dēiciō,** pronounced as if **dēiiciō.**

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

8. A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel that is followed by another vowel or a single consonant.

9. A syllable is long:

a. If it contains a long vowel or a diphthong; as both syllables of **laudō.**

b. If its vowel is followed by **x, z,** or any two consonants except a mute followed by a liquid (**b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph, th,** followed by **l** or **r**). If a short vowel is followed by a mute and a liquid, the syllable is short in prose, though it may be long in poetry. First syllable of **mittit** is long; of **patris,** short in prose.

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as **om′nis.**

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, on the antepenult if the penult is short; as **dīvī′sa, in′colunt.**

12. When an enclitic is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic; as **Gallia'que.**

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

13. RULES OF GENDER

The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative ending, or must be learned for the individual words; but the following rules will prove helpful, though there are exceptions.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are *masculine.*

b. The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are *feminine.*

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are *neuter.*

14. DECLENSIONS

There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	FINAL LETTER OF STEM	ENDING OF GEN. SING.
I.	ā	-ae
II.	o	-ī
III.	consonant	-is
	i	-is
IV.	u	-ūs
V.	ē	-ēī or -eī

15. FIRST DECLENSION

The stem ends in -ā; the nominative in -a. The gender is usually feminine.

Mēnsa, F., *table*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	mēnsa	mēnsae
Gen.	mēnsae	mēnsārum
Dat.	mēnsae	mēnsīs
Acc.	mēnsam	mēnsās
Voc.	mēnsa	mēnsae
Abl.	mēnsā	mēnsīs

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (**13**); as **nauta**, M., *sailor*, **Mātrona**, M., *the (river) Marne.*

b. The locative singular ends in **-ae.**

16. SECOND DECLENSION

The stem ends in **-o**; the nominative masculine in **-us**, **-er**, **-ir**; the nominative neuter in **-um.**

	Servus, M., *slave*	**Puer**, M., *boy*	**Ager**, M., *field*	**Vir**, M., *man*	**Bellum**, N., *war*
			SINGULAR		
N.	servus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
G.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
D.	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
A.	servum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
V.	serve	puer	ager	vir	bellum
A.	servō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
			PLURAL		
N.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
G.	servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
D.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
A.	servōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
V.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
A.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (**13**). **Vulgus**, *crowd*, is usually neuter.

b. The locative singular ends in **-ī.**

c. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** regularly formed the genitive and vocative singular in **-ī**, instead of **-iī** and **-ie**, until after the time of Caesar and Cicero. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; **cōnsi′lī**, *of a plan.*

d. A few words have **-um** instead of **-ōrum** in the genitive plural; **socium** (or **sociōrum**), *of allies.*

THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in **-i.** Nominative case-ending for masculines and feminines, **-s** or none; for neuters, **none.**

A. Consonant Stems

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, **b** or **p**. The nominative ending is **-s**.

	Trabs, F., *beam* Stem **trab-**		**Prīnceps**, M., *chief* Stem **prīncip-**	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	trabs	trabēs	prīnceps	prīncipēs
G.	trabis	trabum	prīncipis	prīncipum
D.	trabī	trabibus	prīncipī	prīncipibus
A.	trabem	trabēs	prīncipem	prīncipēs
V.	trabs	trabēs	prīnceps	prīncipēs
A.	trabe	trabibus	prīncipe	prīncipibus

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, **d** or **t**. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is **-s**, and the final **d** or **t** of the stem is dropped before it.

	Laus, F., *praise* Stem **laud-**		**Mīles**, M., *soldier* Stem **mīlit-**		**Caput**, N., *head* Stem **capit-**	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	laus	laudēs	mīles	mīlitēs	caput	capita
G.	laudis	laudum	mīlitis	mīlitum	capitis	capitum
D.	laudī	laudibus	mīlitī	mīlitibus	capitī	capitibus
A.	laudem	laudēs	mīlitem	mīlitēs	caput	capita
V.	laus	laudēs	mīles	mīlitēs	caput	capita
A.	laude	laudibus	mīlite	mīlitibus	capite	capitibus

20. Stems ending in a gutteral mute, **g** or **c**. The nominative ending is **-s**, which unites with the final **g** or **c** of the stem to form **x**.

	Lēx, F., *law* Stem **lēg-**		**Dux**, M., *leader* Stem **duc-**	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
G.	lēgis	lēgum	ducis	ducum
D.	lēgī	lēgibus	ducī	ducibus
A.	lēgem	lēgēs	ducem	ducēs
V.	lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
A.	lēge	lēgibus	duce	ducibus

21. Stems ending in a liquid, **l** or **r**. There is no nominative case-ending.

	Cōnsul, M., *consul* Stem **cōnsul-**		**Pater**, M., *father* Stem **patr-**		**Aequor**, N., *sea* Stem **aequor-**	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	cōnsul	cōnsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
G.	cōnsulis	cōnsulum	patris	patrum	aequoris	aequorum
D.	cōnsulī	cōnsulibus	patrī	patribus	aequorī	aequoribus
A.	cōnsulem	cōnsulēs	patrem	patrēs	aequor	aequora
V.	cōnsul	cōnsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
A.	cōnsule	cōnsulibus	patre	patribus	aequore	aequoribus

22. Stems ending in a nasal, **m** or **n**. There is no nominative case-ending, except in **hiems**, the only stem in **-m**. The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final **n** and changes the preceding vowel to **ō**.

	Hiems, F., *winter* Stem **hiem-**		**Virgō**, F., *maiden* Stem **virgin-**		**Flūmen**, N., *river* Stem **flūmin-**	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	hiems	hiemēs	virgō	virginēs	flūmen	flūmina
G.	hiemis	hiemum	virginis	virginum	flūminis	flūminum
D.	hiemī	hiemibus	virginī	virginibus	flūminī	flūminibus
A.	hiemem	hiemēs	virginem	virginēs	flūmen	flūmina
V.	hiems	hiemēs	virgō	virginēs	flūmen	flūmina
A.	hieme	hiemibus	virgine	virginibus	flūmine	flūminibus

23. Stems ending in **s** (apparently **r**, because **s** changes to **r** between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in **s**, sometimes in **r**.

	Mōs, M., *custom* Stem **mōs-**		**Honor**, M., *honor* Stem **honōs-**		**Corpus**, N., *body* Stem **corpos-**	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	corpus	corpora
G.	mōris	mōrum	honōris	honōrum	corporis	corporum
D.	mōrī	mōribus	honōrī	honōribus	corporī	corporibus
A.	mōrem	mōrēs	honōrem	honōrēs	corpus	corpora
V.	mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	corpus	corpora
A.	mōre	mōribus	honōre	honōribus	corpore	corporibus

B. i-Stems

24. Here belong masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-is** or **-ēs** if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, and neuters in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**.

25. Theoretically the i should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculines and feminines, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of some neuters; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc., **-em**, abl-, **-e**, acc. plural **-ēs**. Neuters have abl. **-ī**.

	Tussis, F., *cough* Stem **tussi-**	**Īgnis**, M., *fire* Stem **igni-**	**Caedēs**, F., *slaughter* Stem **caedi-**	**Cubīle**, N., *couch* Stem **cubīli-**	**Animal**, N., *animal* Stem **animāli-**
			SINGULAR		
N.	tussis	īgnis	caedēs	cubīle	animal
G.	tussis	īgnis	caedis	cubīlis	animālis
D.	tussī	īgnī	caedī	cubīlī	animālī
A.	tussim	īgnem	caedem	cubīle	animal
V.	tussis	īgnis	caedēs	cubīle	animal
A.	tussī	īgnī *or* -e	caede	cubīlī	animālī
			PLURAL		
N.	tussēs	īgnēs	caedēs	cubīlia	animālia
G.	tussium	īgnium	caedium	cubīlium	animālium
D.	tussibus	īgnibus	caedibus	cubīlibus	animālibus
A.	tussīs *or* -ēs	īgnēs *or* -īs	caedēs *or* -īs	cubīlia	animālia
V.	tussēs	īgnēs	caedēs	cubīlia	animālia
A.	tussibus	īgnibus	caedibus	cubīlibus	animālibus

C. Mixed Stems

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from **-i** stems the genitive plural in **-ium** and the accusative plural in **-īs**. Here belong most monosyllables in **-s** and **-x** preceded by a consonant; most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**; and a few nouns in **-tās**, **-tātis**.

	Cliēns, M., *retainer* Stem **client-**		**Urbs**, F., *city* Stem **urb-**	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	cliēns	clientēs	urbs	urbēs
G.	clientis	clientium	urbis	urbium
D.	clientī	clientibus	urbī	urbibus
A.	clientem	clientēs *or* -īs	urbem	urbēs *or* -īs
V.	cliēns	clientēs	urbs	urbēs
A.	cliente	clientibus	urbe	urbibus

D. Irregular Nouns

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

	Senex, M., *old man*	**Os**, N., *bone*	**Vīs**, F., *force*	**Bōs**, M. F., *ox, cow*	**Iuppiter**, M., *Jupiter*
			SINGULAR		
N.	senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
G.	senis	ossis	vīs	bovis	Iovis
D.	senī	ossī	vī	bovī	Iovī
A.	senem	os	vim	bovem	Iovem
V.	senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
A.	sene	osse	vī	bove	Iove
			PLURAL		
N.	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
G.	senum	ossium	vīrium	bovum *or* boum	
D.	senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus *or* būbus	
A.	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
V.	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
A.	senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus *or* būbus	

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (**13**). There are numerous exceptions to the following rules.

a. *Masculine* are nouns in ō (but see *b*,) **-or, -ōs, -er, -es.**

b. *Feminine* are nouns in **-dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ys, -x,** and in **-s** when preceded by a consonant.

c. *Neuter* are nouns in **-a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us.**

29. FOURTH DECLENSION

Stem ends in **-u**; nominative masculine in **-us**, nominative neuter in **-ū.**

	Frūctus, M., *fruit* SINGULAR	PLURAL	**Cornū**, N., *horn* SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	frūctus	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
G.	frūctūs	frūctuum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	frūctuī	frūctibus	cornū	cornibus
A.	frūctum	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
V.	frūctus	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
A.	frūctū	frūctibus	cornū	cornibus

a. **Domus,** *house,* **manus,** *hand,* **Īdūs,** *Ides,* are feminine.

b. The dative singular of nouns in **-us** sometimes ends in **-ū.**

c. The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in **-ubus.**

d. **Domus** has the following second declension forms: **domī** (locative), *at home;* **domum,** *homewards;* **domō,** *from home;* **domōs** (plural), *homewards.*

30. FIFTH DECLENSION

Stem ends in **-ē**; nominative in **-ēs.** Usually feminine.

	Diēs, M., *day*		**Rēs,** F., *thing*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
A.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
V.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
A.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

a. **Diēs** in the singular is either masculine or feminine (feminine usually in the sense of an appointed day or a long space of time); in the plural it is masculine. Its compounds are masculine.

b. The ending of the genitive and dative singular is **-ēī** after a vowel, **-eī** after a consonant. **-ē** is sometimes used instead of either.

c. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. **Aciēs, spēs,** and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

ADJECTIVES

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Māgnus, *large*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	māgnus	māgna	māgnum	māgnī	māgnae	māgna
G.	māgnī	māgnae	māgnī	māgnōrum	māgnārum	māgnōrum
D.	māgnō	māgnae	māgnō	māgnīs	māgnīs	māgnīs
A.	māgnum	māgnam	māgnum	māgnōs	māgnās	māgna
V.	māgne	māgna	māgnum	māgnī	māgnae	māgna
A.	māgnō	māgnā	māgnō	māgnīs	māgnīs	māgnīs

Liber, *free*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
G.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
D.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
A.	līberum	līberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
V.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
A.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

Aeger, *ill*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	aeger	aegra	aegrum	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
G.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī	aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
D.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
A.	aegrum	aegram	aegrum	aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
V.	aeger	aegra	aegrum	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
A.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

32. Adjectives with Genitive in -īus.

Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in **-īus** (in **alter** usually **-ius**) and the dative singular in **-ī** in all genders. These are **alius**, *another*, **sōlus**, *only*, **ūllus**, *any*, **ūnus**, *one*, **tōtus**, *whole*, **nūllus**, *no*, **alter**, *the other*, **uter**, *which* (of two), **neuter**, *neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in **māgnus**. Note the ending **-ud** in the neuter of **alius**.

SINGULAR

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
G.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
D.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
A.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
A.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō
N.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
G.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterius	alterius	alterius
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
A.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
A.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

33. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

There are both consonant stems and i-stems. Adjectives of *three terminations* have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of *two terminations* have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of *one termination* have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders.

A. Consonant Stems

34. Two Terminations.

Fortior, *braver*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neuter*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neuter*
N.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
G.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
D.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
A.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
V.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
A.	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

a. Here belong all comparatives, but **plūs,** *more,* is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
	Neuter	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neuter*
N.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G.	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D.	——	plūribus	plūribus
A.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
A.	——	plūribus	plūribus

35. One termination.

Vetus, *old*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
G.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
D.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
A.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
V.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
A.	vetere *or* -ī	vetere *or* -ī	veteribus	veteribus

a. Here belong **princeps**, *chief*, and **pauper**, *poor*. **Dīves**, *rich*, also belongs here, but has **ditia** for the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter.

B. i- Stems

36. Three terminations.

Ācer, *sharp*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
A.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs *or* -īs	ācrēs *or* -īs	ācria
V.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
A.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. Here belong **celeber**, *famous*, **equester**, *equestrian*, **pedester**, *pedestrian;* names of months in **-ber**; and a few others.

37. Two terminations.

Omnis, *all*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
G.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
D.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
A.	omnem	omne	omnēs *or* -īs	omnia
V.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
A.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

a. Here belong all adjectives in **-is**, **-e**.

38. One termination.

Audāx, *bold*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
G.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
D.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
A.	audācem	audāx	audācēs *or* -īs	audācia
V.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
A.	audācī *or* -e	audācī *or* -e	audācibus	audācibus

Oriēns, *rising*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
G. orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium
D. orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus
A. orientem	oriēns	orientēs *or* -īs	orientia
V. oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
A. oriente *or* -ī	oriente *or* -ī	orientibus	orientibus

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in **-āns** and **-ēns**. Participles usually have the ablative singular in **-ī** only when used as adjectives, in **-e** when used as participles or nouns.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are **-ior, -ius**; superlative, **-issimus, -a, -um.** They are added to the *base* of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular). Examples: **altus,** *high* (base, **alt-**); **altior, -ius,** *higher;* **altissimus, -a, -um,** *highest;* **fortis,** *brave* (base, **fort-**); **fortior,** *braver;* **fortissimus,** *bravest.*

40. Adjectives in **-er** form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the *nominative* of the positive. Example: **ācer,** *sharp* (base, **ācr-**); **ācrior; ācerrimus.**

41. Most adjectives in **-ilis** are compared regularly. Five, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the *base* of the positive. They are **facilis,** *easy;* **difficilis,** *difficult;* **similis,** *like;* **dissimilis,** *unlike;* **humilis,** *low.* Example: **facilis** (base, **facil-**), **facilior, facillimus.**

42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, melior, optimus, *good, better, best*
malus, pēior, pessimus, *bad, worse, worst*
māgnus, māior, māximus, *great, greater, greatest*
parvus, minor, minimus, *small, less, least*
multus, plūs (*n.*), **plūrimus,** *much, more, most*
multī, plūrēs, plūrimī, *many, more, most*
nēquam, (*indecl.*), **nēquior, nēquissimus,** *worthless,* etc.
frūgī (*indecl.*), **frūgālior, frūgālissimus,** *useful, worthy,* etc.
dexter, dexterior, dextimus, *on the right, dexterous,* etc.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:—

citrā (*adv.* on this side): **citerior, citimus,** *hither, hithermost*
dē (*prep.* down): **dēterior, dēterrimus,** *worse, worst*
intrā (*prep.* in, within): **interior, intimus,** *inner, inmost*
prae (*prep.* before): **prior, prīmus,** *former, first*
prope (*adv.* near): **propior, proximus,** *nearer, next*
ultrā (*adv.* beyond): **ulterior, ultimus,** *farther, farthest.*

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):—

exterus, exterior, extrēmus (extimus), *outer, outmost*
īnferus, īnferior, īnfimus (īmus), *lower, lowest*
posterus, posterior, postrēmus (postumus), *latter, last*
superus, superior, suprēmus (summus), *higher, highest.*

COMPARISON BY magis, māximē

45. Most adjectives in **-us** preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs **magis,** *more,* and **māximē,** *most.* Example: **idōneus,** *suitable;* **magis idōneus** *more suitable;* **māximē idōneus,** *most suitable.*

ADVERBS AND THEIR COMPARISON

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The positive is either the accusative singular neuter of the adjective; as **multum,** *much;* **facile,** *easily:* or is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base; as **lātus,** *wide* (base, **lāt-**), **lātē,** *widely;* or is formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding **-iter,** less often **-ter,** to the base; as **fortis,** *brave* (base **fort-**), **fortiter,** *bravely.*

b. The comparative is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as **plūs,** *more;* **facilius,** *more easily;* **lātius,** *more widely;* **fortius,** *more bravely.*

c. The superlative is formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the superlative of the adjective; or, less often, is its accusative singular neuter; as **plurimum,** *most;* **facillimē,** *most easily;* **lātissimē,** *most widely;* **fortissimē** *most bravely.*

NUMERALS

47. **Numeral adjectives are of three classes: cardinals, answering the question** ***how many?*** **as** ***one, two,*** **etc.; ordinals, answering the question** ***which in order?*** **as,** ***first, second,*** **etc.; and distributives, answering the question** ***how many each?*** **as,** ***one each, two each,*** **etc. Numeral adverbs answer the question** ***how often?*** **as,** ***once, twice,*** **etc.**

Roman Numerals	*Cardinal*	*Ordinal*	*Distributive*	*Adverbs*
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, -a, -um	semel
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus *or* alter	bīnī	bis
III.	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī *or* trīnī	ter
IV.	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī	quater
V.	quīnque	quīntus	quīnī	quīnquiēs
VI.	sex	sextus	sēnī	sexiēs
VII.	septem	septimus	septēnī	septiēs
VIII.	octō	ōctāvus	octōnī	octiēs
IX.	novem	nōnus	novēnī	noviēs
X.	decem	decimus	dēnī	deciēs
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī	ūndeciēs
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī	duodeciēs
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī	ter deciēs
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī	quater deciēs
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī	quīnquiēs deciēs
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī	sexiēsdeciēs
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī	septiēs deciēs
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus	duodēvīcēnī	duodēvīciēs
XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus	ūndēvīcēnī	ūndēvīciēs
XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus	vīcēnī	vīciēs
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vīcēsimus prīmus	vīcēnī singulī	vīciēs semel
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus	duodētrīcēnī	duodētrīciēs
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus	ūndētrīcēnī	ūndētrīciēs
XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus	trīcēnī	trīciēs
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī	quadrāgiēs
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	quīnquāgēnī	quīnquāgiēs
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī	sexāgiēs
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēnī	septuāgiēs
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēnī	octōgiēs
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēnī	nōnāgiēs
C.	centum	centēsimus	centēnī	centiēs

CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) prīmus	centēnī (et) singulī	centiēs semel
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducēnī	ducentiēs
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsimus	trecēnī	trecentiēs
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī	quadringentiēs
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	quīngēnī	quīngentiēs
DC.	sēscentī	sēscentēsimus	sēscēnī	sēscentiēs
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī	septingentiēs
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēnī	octingentiēs
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	nōngēnī	nōngentiēs
M.	mīlle	mīllēsimus	singula mīllia	mīlliēs
MM.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus	bīna mīlia	bis mīlliēs

a. The endings **-iēns** and **-ēnsimus** are often used for **-iēs** and **-ēsimus.**

48. Of the cardinals, **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs** are declined; **quattuor** to **centum,** inclusive, are indeclinable; **ducentī** to **nōngentī,** inclusive, are declined like the plural of **māgnus (31)**; **mīlle** as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of **cubīle (25)** and spelled either **mīllia** or **mīlia.** Ordinals are declined like **māgnus,** distributives like the plural of **māgnus.**

49. For the declension of **ūnus** see **32.** Its plural usually means *only* or *alone,* but is used in the sense of *one* with nouns used only in the plural; as, **ūna castra,** *one camp.* **Duo** and **trēs** are declined as follows:

	Duo, *two*			**Trēs,** *three*	
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
A.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
A.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by **et**; as **trēs et quadrāgintā,** *three and forty;* or the tens may precede without an **et**; as **quadrāgintā trēs,** *forty three.* In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without **et**; as **ducentī (et) vīgintī,** *two hundred and twenty.* In combinations of three or more numerals the order is as in English, without **et**; as **duo mīlia sēscentī vīgintī sex,** *two thousand six hundred and twenty six.*

PRONOUNS

51. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	First person, **ego**, *I*		Second person, **tū**, *you* (*thou*)	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
G.	meī	nostrum / nostrī	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
A.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
A.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually **is**, *he*, **ea**, *she*, **id**, *it*, (**57**); or, when *him*, *them*, etc. refer to the subject (**163**), by the reflexive pronouns.

b. **nostrum** and **vestrum** are the forms used as genitives of the whole (**101**); **nostrī** and **vestrī**, as objective genitives (**98**).

c. The preposition **cum** is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, **nōbīscum**, *with us.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

52. A reflexive pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject: therefore there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

	First person, **meī**, *of myself*		Second person, **tuī**, *of yourself*		Third person, **suī**, *of himself, etc.*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
G.	meī	nostrum / nostrī	tuī	vestrum / vestrī	suī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
A.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē	sē
A.	mē	nōbis	tē	vōbīs	sē	sē

a. The preposition **cum** is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as **sēcum**, *with himself.*

53. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

1st pers.	**meus, -a, -um,** *my*	**noster, -tra, -trum,** *our*
2d pers.	**tuus, -a, -um,** *your* (of one)	**vester, -tra, -trum,** *your* (of more than one)

3d pers.	**suus, -a, -um,** *his, her, its* (when referring to the subject)	**suus, -a, -um,** *their* (when referring to the subject)
	ēius (gen. sing. of **is**) *his, her, its* (when not referring to the subject)	**eōrum, eārum, eōrum** (gen. plur of **is**) *their* (when not referring to the subject)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

54. **Hīc,** *this* (near the speaker)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
A.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
A.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

55. **Iste,** *that* (near the person spoken to)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istarum	istorum
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
A.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
A.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

56. **Ille,** *that* (something more remote) is declined like **iste.**

57. **Is,** *this, that, he, she, it* (unemphatic)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
G.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
A.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
A.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

58. **Īdem,** *the same.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem *or* īdem	eaedem	eadem
G.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem *or* īsdem	eīsdem *or* īsdem	eīsdem *or* īsdem
A.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
A.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

59. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

Ipse, *himself,* is declined like **iste,** except that the nominative and accusative neuter singular is **ipsum.**

60. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

Quī, *who*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
A.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. **Quīcumque** and **quisquis,** *whoever,* are generalizing relatives. The **quī** of **quīcumque** is declined regularly. **Quisquis, quidquid,** and **quōquō** are the only common forms of **quisquis.**

b. The preposition **cum** is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun; as **quibuscum,** *with whom.*

61. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quī, quae, quod, the adjective *who? what?* is declined like the relative. **Quis, quid,** the substantive *who? what?* is used in the singular.

Quis, *who*

	SINGULAR	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*
N.	quis	quid
G.	cūius	cūius
D.	cui	cui
A.	quem	quid
A.	quō	quō

a. The enclitic **-nam** is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; **quisnam,** *who, pray?*

b. **Cum** is usually enclitic with the interrogative pronoun.

62. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The indefinite pronouns are **quī, quis,** and their compounds. **Quis** and **quī** in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

SUBSTANTIVE	ADJECTIVE
quis, quid, *any one*	**quī, quae (qua), quod,** *any*
aliquis, aliquid, *some one*	**aliquī, aliqua, aliquod,** *some*
quispiam, quidpiam, *some one*	**quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam,** *some*
quisquam, quicquam, *any one* (abl. sing. and entire plural supplied by **ūllus, -a, -um**)	(adjective supplied by **ūllus**)
quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs / **quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet** } *any one* etc., *you like*	**quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs** / **quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet** } *any you like*
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *a certain man*	**quīdam, quaedam, quoddam,** *a certain*
quisque, quidque, *each*	**quisque, quaeque, quodque,** *each*

a. In **quī** and **aliquī** the nominative and accusative plural neuter have the same forms as the nominative singular feminine.

b. In the declension of **quīdam, m** becomes **n** before **d;** as **quendam.**

VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

CONJUGATION	FINAL VOWEL OF STEM	PRESENT INFINITIVE
I.	**ā**	**-āre**
II.	**ē**	**-ēre**
III.	changeable	**-ere**
IV.	**ī**	**-īre**

64. All forms of a verb are based on one or another of three stems,— the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

67. FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum**

INDICATIVE

	Present		
SINGULAR	PLURAL		
laudō	laudāmus		
laudās	laudātis		
laudat	laudant		

Imperfect

laudābam	laudābāmus
laudābās	laudābātis
laudābat	laudābant

Future

laudābō	laudābimus
laudābis	laudābitis
laudābit	laudābunt

Perfect

laudāvī	laudāvimus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis
laudāvit	laudāvērunt or -ēre

Pluperfect

laudāveram	laudāverāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis
laudāverat	laudāverant

Future Perfect

laudāverō	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudem	laudēmus
laudēs	laudētis
laudet	laudent

Imperfect

laudārem	laudārēmus
laudārēs	laudārētis
laudāret	laudārent

Perfect

laudāverim	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

Pluperfect

laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus
laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis
laudāvisset	laudāvissent

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	laudā	laudāte
Fut.	laudātō	laudātōte
	laudātō	laudantō

PARTICIPLE

Pres. laudāns *Fut.* laudātūrus

SUPINE

Acc. laudātum *Abl.* laudātū

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudāre
Perf. laudāvisse
Fut. laudātūrus esse

GERUND

Gen. laudandī
Dat. laudandō
Acc. laudandum
Abl. laudandō

FIRST CONJUGATION
PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present		*Present*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudor	laudāmur	lauder	laudēmur
laudāris	laudāminī	laudēris *or* -re	laudēminī
laudātur	laudantur	laudētur	laudentur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
laudābar	laudābāmur	laudārer	laudārēmur
laudābāris *or* -re	laudābāminī	laudārēris *or* -re	laudārēminī
laudābātur	laudābantur	laudārētur	laudārentur
Future			
laudābor	laudābimur		
laudāberis *or* -re	laudābiminī		
laudābitur	laudābuntur		
Perfect		*Perfect*	
laudātus (-a, -um) sum	laudātī (-ae, -a) sumus	laudātus sim	laudātī sīmus
laudātus es	laudātī estis	laudātus sīs	laudātī sītis
laudātus est	laudātī sunt	laudātus sit	laudātī sint
Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
laudātus eram	laudātī erāmus	laudātus essem	laudātī essēmus
laudātus erās	laudātī erātis	laudātus essēs	laudātī essētis
laudātus erat	laudātī erant	laudātus esset	laudātī essent
Future Perfect			
laudātus erō	laudātī erimus		
laudātus eris	laudātī eritis		
laudātus erit	laudātī erunt		

IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE	
Pres.	laudāre	laudāminī	*Pres.*	laudārī
Fut.	laudātor		*Perf.*	laudātus esse
	laudātor	laudantor	*Fut.*	laudātum īrī

PARTICIPLE	GERUNDIVE
Perf. laudātus	laudandus

68. SECOND CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

INDICATIVE

	Singular	Plural
Present	moneō	monēmus
	monēs	monētis
	monet	monent
Imperfect	monēbam	monēbāmus
	monēbās	monēbātis
	monēbat	monēbant
Future	monēbō	monēbimus
	monēbis	monēbitis
	monēbit	monēbunt
Perfect	monuī	monuimus
	monuistī	monuistis
	monuit	monuērunt *or* -ēre
Pluperfect	monueram	monuerāmus
	monuerās	monuerātis
	monuerat	monuerant
Future Perfect	monuerō	monuerimus
	monueris	monueritis
	monuerit	monuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Singular	Plural
Present	moneam	moneāmus
	moneās	moneātis
	moneat	moneant
Imperfect	monērem	monērēmus
	monērēs	monērētis
	monēret	monērent
Perfect	monuerim	monuerimus
	monueris	monueritis
	monuerit	monuerint
Pluperfect	monuissem	monuissēmus
	monuissēs	monuissētis
	monuisset	monuissent

IMPERATIVE

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	monē	monēte
Fut.	monētō	monētōte
	monētō	monentō

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre
Perf. monuisse
Fut. monitūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Pres. monēns *Fut.* monitūrus

GERUND

Gen. monendī
Dat. monendō
Acc. monendum
Abl. monendō

SUPINE

Acc. monitum *Abl.* monitū

SECOND CONJUGATION
PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **moneor, monērī, monitus sum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
moneor	monēmur
monēris	monēminī
monētur	monentur

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris *or* -re	monēbāminī
monēbātur	monēbantur

Future

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis *or* -re	monēbiminī
monēbitur	monēbuntur

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monitus sum	monitī sumus
monitus es	monitī estis
monitus est	monitī sunt

Pluperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monitus eram	monitī erāmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis
monitus erat	monitī erant

Future Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monitus erō	monitī erimus
monitus eris	monitī eritis
monitus erit	monitī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monear	moneāmur
moneāris *or* -re	moneāminī
moneātur	moneantur

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monērer	monērēmur
monērēris *or* -re	monērēminī
monērētur	monērentur

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monitus sim	monitī sīmus
monitus sīs	monitī sītis
monitus sit	monitī sint

Pluperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus esset	monitī essent

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	monēre	monēminī
Fut.	monētor	
	monētor	monentor

INFINITIVE

Pres. monērī
Perf. monitus esse
Fut. monitum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. monitus

GERUNDIVE

monendus

69. THIRD CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**

INDICATIVE

	Singular	Plural
Present	dūcō	dūcimus
	dūcis	dūcitis
	dūcit	dūcunt
Imperfect	dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus
	dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
	dūcēbat	dūcēbant
Future	dūcam	dūcēmus
	dūcēs	dūcētis
	dūcet	dūcent
Perfect	dūxī	dūximus
	dūxistī	dūxistis
	dūxit	dūxērunt *or* -ēre
Pluperfect	dūxeram	dūxerāmus
	dūxerās	dūxerātis
	dūxerat	dūxerant
Future Perfect	dūxerō	dūxerimus
	dūxeris	dūxeritis
	dūxerit	dūxerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Singular	Plural
Present	dūcam	dūcāmus
	dūcās	dūcātis
	dūcat	dūcant
Imperfect	dūcerem	dūcerēmus
	dūcerēs	dūcerētis
	dūceret	dūcerent
Perfect	dūxerim	dūxerimus
	dūxeris	dūxeritis
	dūxerit	dūxerint
Pluperfect	dūxissem	dūxissēmus
	dūxissēs	dūxissētis
	dūxisset	dūxissent

IMPERATIVE

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	dūc*	dūcite
Fut.	dūcitō	dūcitōte
	dūcitō	dūcuntō

PARTICIPLE

Pres. dūcēns *Fut.* ductūrus

SUPINE

Acc. ductum *Abl.* ductū

*Irregular for dūce

INFINITIVE

Pres. dūcere
Perf. dūxisse
Fut. ductūrus esse

GERUND

Gen. dūcendī
Dat. dūcendō
Acc. dūcendum
Abl. dūcendō

THIRD CONJUGATION
PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **dūcor, dūcī, ductus sum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcor	dūcimur
dūceris	dūciminī
dūcitur	dūcuntur

Imperfect

dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris *or* -re	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur

Future

dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēris *or* -re	dūcēminī
dūcētur	dūcentur

Perfect

ductus sum	ductī sumus
ductus es	ductī estis
ductus est	ductī sunt

Pluperfect

ductus eram	ductī erāmus
ductus erās	ductī erātis
ductus erat	ductī erant

Future Perfect

ductus erō	ductī erimus
ductus eris	ductī eritis
ductus erit	ductī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcāris *or* -re	dūcāminī
dūcātur	dūcantur

Imperfect

dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēris *or* -re	dūcerēminī
dūcerētur	dūcerentur

Perfect

ductus sim	ductī sīmus
ductus sīs	ductī sītis
ductus sit	ductī sint

Pluperfect

ductus essem	ductī essēmus
ductus essēs	ductī essētis
ductus esset	ductī essent

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	dūcere	dūciminī
Fut.	dūcitor	
	dūcitor	dūcuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. dūcī
Perf. ductus esse
Fut. ductum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. ductus

GERUNDIVE

dūcendus

70. FOURTH CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiō	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

Future

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audīvī	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīvērunt *or* -ēre

Pluperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audīveram	audīverāmus
audīverās	audīverātis
audīverat	audīverant

Future Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audīverō	audīverimus
audīveris	audīveritis
audīverit	audīverint

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	audī	audīte
Fut.	audītō	audītōte
	audītō	audiuntō

PARTICIPLE

Pres. audiēns *Fut.* audītūrus

SUPINE

Acc. audītum *Abl.* audītū

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audīrem	audīrēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīret	audīrent

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audīverim	audīverimus
audīveris	audīveritis
audīverit	audīverint

Pluperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audīvissem	audīvissēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis
audīvisset	audīvissent

INFINITIVE

Pres. audīre
Perf. audīvisse
Fut. audītūrus esse

GERUND

Gen. audiendī
Dat. audiendō
Acc. audiendum
Abl. audiendō

FOURTH CONJUGATION
PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audior, audīrī, audītus sum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audior	audīmur
audīris	audīminī
audītur	audiuntur

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbāris *or* -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Future

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiar	audiēmur
audiēris *or* -re	audiēminī
audiētur	audientur

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audītus sum	audītī sumus
audītus es	audītī estis
audītus est	audītī sunt

Pluperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audītus eram	audītī erāmus
audītus erās	audītī erātis
audītus erat	audītī erant

Future Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audītus erō	audītī erimus
audītus eris	audītī eritis
audītus erit	audītī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris *or* -re	audiāminī
audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris *or* -re	audīrēminī
audīrētur	audīrentur

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audītus sim	audītī sīmus
audītus sīs	audītī sītis
audītus sit	audītī sint

Pluperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audītus essem	audītī essēmus
audītus essēs	audītī essētis
audītus esset	audītī essent

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres.	audīre	audīminī
Fut.	audītor	
	audītor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. audīrī
Perf. audītus esse
Fut. audītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. audītus

GERUNDIVE

audiendus

71. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captum**

INDICATIVE

	Singular	Plural
Present	capiō	capimus
	capis	capitis
	capit	capiunt
Imperfect	capiēbam	capiēbāmus
	capiēbās	capiēbātis
	capiēbat	capiēbant
Future	capiam	capiēmus
	capiēs	capiētis
	capiet	capient
Perfect	cēpī	cēpimus
	cēpistī	cēpistis
	cēpit	cēpērunt *or* -ēre
Pluperfect	cēperam	cēperāmus
	cēperās	cēperātis
	cēperat	cēperant
Future Perfect	cēperō	cēperimus
	cēperis	cēperitis
	cēperit	cēperint

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Singular	Plural
Present	capiam	capiāmus
	capiās	capiātis
	capiat	capiant
Imperfect	caperem	caperēmus
	caperēs	caperētis
	caperet	caperent
Perfect	cēperim	cēperimus
	cēperis	cēperitis
	cēperit	cēperint
Pluperfect	cēpissem	cēpissēmus
	cēpissēs	cēpissētis
	cēpisset	cēpissent

IMPERATIVE

	Singular	Plural
Pres.	cape	capite
Fut.	capitō	capitōte
	capitō	capiuntō

INFINITIVE

Pres. capere
Perf. cēpisse
Fut. captūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Pres. capiēns *Fut.* captūrus

GERUND

Gen. capiendī
Dat. capiendō
Acc. capiendum
Abl. capiendō

SUPINE

Acc. captum *Abl.* captū

THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: capior, capī, captus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capior	capimur
caperis	capiminī
capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect

capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbāris *or* -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future

capiar	capiēmur
capiēris *or* -re	capiēminī
capiētur	capientur

Perfect

captus sum	captī sumus
captus es	captī estis
captus est	captī sunt

Pluperfect

captus eram	captī erāmus
captus erās	captī erātis
captus erat	captī erant

Future Perfect

captus erō	captī erimus
captus eris	captī eritis
captus erit	captī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiar	capiāmur
capiāris *or* -re	capiāminī
capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

caperer	caperēmur
caperēris *or* -re	caperēminī
caperētur	caperentur

Perfect

captus sim	captī sīmus
captus sīs	captī sītis
captus sit	captī sint

Pluperfect

captus essem	captī essēmus
captus essēs	captī essētis
captus esset	captī essent

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Pres	capere	capiminī
Fut.	capitor	
	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. capī
Perf. captus esse
Fut. captum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. captus

GERUNDIVE

capiendus

DEPONENT VERBS

72. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the gerundive is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, supine.

73. Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

	Hortor, *urge*	**Vereor,** *fear*	**Sequor,** *follow*	**Partior,** *share*
		INFINITIVE		
Pres.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
Perf.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
Fut.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	partītūrus esse
		PARTICIPLE		
Pres.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
Perf.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
Fut.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
		GERUNDIVE		
	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus
		GERUND		
	hortandī, -ō, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	partiendī, etc.
		SUPINE		
	hortātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	partītum, -tū

74. SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the present stem, passive forms for those based on the perfect stem. They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust.*

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

75. The active periphrastic conjugation is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum:** thus,

Pres. **laudātūrus sum,** *I am about to praise,*
Imp. **laudātūrus eram,** *I was about to praise,* etc.

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation is formed by combining the gerundive with the verb **sum**; thus,

Pres. **laudandus sum,** *I am to be (must be) praised,*
Imp. **laudandus eram,** *I was to be praised,* etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM and Its Compounds

77. For the conjugation of **sum** see **66**. **Sum** is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions **ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super.**

78. In **absum, sum** is inflected in the same way, but **ā** is used for **ab** before f, giving **āfuī, āfutūrus,** etc. There is a present participle **absēns.**

79. In **prōsum, sum** is inflected in the same way, but the preposition **prō** has its original form **prōd** before all forms of **sum** beginning with **e**; as, **prōdesse, prōderam.** The present tense is, **prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt.**

80. **Possum,** *be able, can,* is a compound of **pot-** and **sum.**

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	possum, potes, potest possumus, potestis, possunt	possim
Imp.	poteram	possem
Fut.	poterō	
Perf.	potuī	potuerim
Plup.	potueram	potuissem
Fut. Perf.	potuerō	

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	posse	*Pres.* potēns
Perf.	potuisse	

81. **Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,** *bear*

ACTIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	ferō, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt	feram
Imp.	ferēbam	ferrem
Fut.	feram	
Perf.	tulī	tulerim
Plup.	tuleram	tulissem
Fut. Perf.	tulerō	

IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	fer	ferte	*Pres.*	ferre	*Pres.*	ferēns
Fut.	fertō	fertōte	*Perf.*	tulisse	*Fut.*	lātūrus
	fertō	feruntō	*Fut.*	lātūrus esse		

GERUND	SUPINE
ferendī, etc.	lātum, -tū

PASSIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	feror, ferris, fertur ferimur, feriminī, feruntur	ferar
Imp.	ferēbar	ferrer
Fut.	ferar	
Perf.	lātus sum	lātus sim
Plup.	lātus eram	lātus essem
Fut. Perf.	lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
Pres.	ferre,	feriminī	*Pres.*	ferrī	*Perf.* lātus
Fut.	fertor		*Perf.*	lātus esse	GERUNDIVE
	fertor,	feruntor	*Fut.*	lātum īrī	ferendus

82. **Volō, velle, voluī,** *be willing*
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling*
Mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imp.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
Fut. Perf.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
Imp.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	nōlī	nōlīte
Fut.	nōlītō	nōlītōte
	nōlītō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns

83. Fīō, *be made, become,* is the irregular passive of **faciō,** *make.* Note the ī before all vowels except **e** in the combination **-er.**

Principal parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	fīō, fīs, fit	fīam
	fīmus, fītis, fīunt	
Imp.	fīēbam	fierem
Fut.	fīam	
Perf.	factus sum	factus sim
Plup.	factus eram	factus essem
Fut. Per.	factus erō	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	fī, fīte	*Pres.*	fierī	*Perf.*	factus
		Perf.	factus esse		GERUNDIVE
		Fut.	factum īrī		faciendus

84. Eō, īre, īvī, itum, *go*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	eō, īs, it,	eam
	īmus, ītis, eunt	
Imp.	ībam	īrem
Fut.	ībō	
Perf.	īvī (iī)	īverim (ierim)
Plup.	īveram (ieram)	īvissem (īssem)
Fut. Per.	īverō (ierō)	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	ī, īte	*Pres.*	īre	*Pres.*	iēns (*Gen.* euntis)
Fut.	ītō, ītōte	*Perf.*	īvisse (īsse)	*Fut.*	itūrus
	ītō, euntō	*Fut.*	itūrus esse		

GERUND	SUPINE
eundī, etc.	itum, -tū

85. Dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give*, is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly **a**. **ā** appears only in the following active forms,— **dās, dā, dāns.**

86. DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects **meminī,** *I remember;* **ōdī,** *I hate;* and **coepī,** *I have begun.* Notice that **meminī** and **ōdī** have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

		INDICATIVE	
Perf.	meminī	ōdī	coepī
Plup.	memineram	ōderam	coeperam
Fut. Per.	meminerō	ōderō	coeperō
		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Perf.	meminerim	ōderim	coeperim
Plup.	meminissem	ōdissem	coepissem
		IMPERATIVE	
Sing.	mementō		
Plur.	mementōte		
		INFINITIVE	
Perf.	meminisse	ōdisse	coepisse
Fut.		ōsūrus esse	coeptūrus esse
		PARTICIPLE	
Perf.		ōsus	coeptus
Fut.		ōsūrus	coeptūrus

a. Instead of **coepī** the passive form **coeptus sum** is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it. Example: **laudārī coeptus est,** *he began to be praised.*

87. IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it.* They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:—

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as **pluit,** *it rains.*

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: **decet,** *it becomes*; **libet,** *it pleases;* **licet,** *it is permitted;* **miseret,** *it causes pity;* **oportet,** *it is right;* **paenitet,** *it repents;* **piget,** *it displeases;* **pudet,** *it shames;* **rēfert, rēferre,** *it concerns;* **taedet,** *it wearies.* All of these except **rēfert** belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as **accēdit,** *it is added,* from **accēdō,** *I approach.*

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as **pūgnātur,** *it is fought.*

SYNTAX

SENTENCES

88. A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a thought. It consists of at least two parts,—the subject (that of which something is said), and the predicate (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

89. A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate and expresses one thought; as **Caesar vēnit,** *Caesar came.*

90. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences connected in some way. Each sentence is called a clause.

a. If the clauses are connected by conjunctions with such meanings as *and, but, for, or,* they are equally independent and are called coordinate clauses. Example: **Caesar vēnit et Gallī fūgērunt,** *Caesar came and the Gauls fled.*

b If the clauses are connected by conjunctions with such meanings as *in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before,* the clause containing the conjunction is dependent on the other and is called a dependent (subordinate) clause; the other is called an independent (main) clause. Example: **ubi Caesar vēnit Gallī fūgērūnt,** *when Caesar came the Gauls fled.*

c. Some teachers restrict the name compound to such sentences as those described above in *a,* and give the name complex to those that have a dependent clause.

91. Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory, as in English.

CASES OF SUBSTANTIVES

THE FUNCTION OF CASES

92. The cases help to show in what relation to the rest of a sentence any given substantive stands. This is shown in English almost entirely

by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending *'s* in *the soldier's arms* indicates that *soldier* modifies *arms* and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences *the soldier* (subject) *fights, he kills the soldier* (direct object), *he gives the soldier* (indirect object) *a sword*, only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin **mīles** would be used in the first sentence, **mīlitem** in the second, and **mīlitī** in the third.

93. But each of the cases (except the vocative) expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. Examples: the accusative may express duration of time, but **mīlitem,** *a soldier*, could not be used in this sense, while **multōs annōs,** *many years*, is quite probably so used. **Dīcit pīlum mīlitem vulnerāvisse** might mean either *he says that a javelin wounded the soldier*, or *a soldier wounded the javelin*, but the latter makes no sense. **Persuāsit,** *he persuaded*, needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English. Examples: **ā mīlite interfectus est,** *he was killed by a soldier;* **cum mīlite vēnit,** *he came in company with a soldier.*

95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

A noun which explains another noun and refers to the same person or thing is put in the same case. Compare **97.** Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

a. A predicate noun is connected with the subject by **sum** or a verb of similar meaning. Such verbs are those meaning *appear, become, seem, be called, be chosen, be regarded*, and the like. Examples: **Pīsō fuit cōnsul,** *Piso was consul;* **Pīsō factus est cōnsul,** *Piso became consul;* **Pīsō appellātus est cōnsul,** *Piso was called consul.* For the predicate accusative with verbs of *calling*, etc., see **126.**

b. An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb. Examples: **Pīsō, cōnsul,** *Piso, the consul;* **Pīsōnī, cōnsulī,** *to Piso, the consul.*

96. NOMINATIVE

The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i. e. the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative modes). **Gallia est dīvīsa** (Caes. I, **1**, 1), *Gaul is divided.*

GENITIVE

A. Genitive with Nouns

97. A noun which explains or limits another noun, and does not refer to the same person or thing (compare **95**), is put in the genitive. The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by *of*, but often by *for* or by other prepositions. A genitive may be either (*a*) attributive, depending directly upon another noun; as **domus Caesaris**, *Caesar's house;* or (*b*) predicative, connected by **sum** or a verb of similar meaning, as **domus est Caesaris**, *the house is Caesar's.*

Attributive

98. Subjective and Objective Genitives. These depend on nouns which have corresponding verbal ideas, as **amor,** *love,* **amō,** *I love.* The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object it is an objective genitive. Examples: **amor patris,** *the love of the father,* may imply that *the father loves,* (subjective), or that some one *loves his father* (objective); **mīlitum** (subjective) **amor glōriae** (objective) (**mīlitēs amant glōriam**), *the soldiers' love for glory.*

99. Possessive Genitive. The genitive is used to express the possessor. The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Examples: **fīnibus Belgārum** (Caes. I, **1**, 17), *by the territory of the Belgae;* **fīnibus vestrīs,** *by your territory.*

a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede **causā** or **grātiā,** *for the sake of.* Examples: **hūius potentiae causā** (Caes. I, **18,** 15), *for the sake of this power;* **meā causā,** *for my sake.*

100. Descriptive Genitive. The genitive modified by an adjective is used to describe a person or thing by naming some permanent quality. Compare the descriptive ablative (**141**). The genitive is regularly used to express measure. Examples: **hūiusce modī senātūs cōnsultum** (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *a decree of this kind;* **trium mēnsium molita cibāria** (Caes. I, **5**, 8), *provisions for three months.*

101. Genitive of the Whole (Partitive Genitive). The genitive is used to express the whole of which a part is mentioned. It may depend

on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole. Examples: **eōrum ūna pars** (Caes. I, 1, 15), *one part of them;* **hōrum omnium fortissimī** (Caes. I, 1, 6), *the bravest of all these;* **ubinam gentium sumus** (Cic. Cat. I, 9), *where in* (not *of*) *the world are we?*

a. Note especially the genitive of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, or sometimes of a noun, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on **satis** used substantively. Examples: **quantum bonī** (Caes. I, 40, 18), *how much* (*of*) *good;* **quid cōnsiliī** (Cic. Cat. I, 1), *what* (*of*) *plan*; **satis causae** (Caes. I, 19, 6), *enough* (*of*) *reason.*

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with **dē** or **ex** is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with **quīdam**. Example: **ūnus ē fīliīs captus est** (Caes. I, 26, 12), *one of his sons was captured.*

c. English often uses *of* in apparently similar phrases when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive. Example: **hī omnēs** (Caes. I, 1, 3), *all of these.*

102. Appositional Genitive. The genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i. e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends. Example: **tuōrum comitum sentīna** (Cic. Cat. I, 12), *that refuse, your comrades.*

Predicative

103. Possessive Genitive. The possessive genitive (**99**) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as **est hominis,** *it is the part* (*duty, characteristic*) *of a man.* Example: **est hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis** (Caes. IV, 5, 4), *this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs.*

104. Descriptive Genitive. The descriptive genitive (**100**) is often used predicatively. Example: **senātūs cōnsultum est hūiusce modī,** *the decree is of this kind.*

105. The Genitive of Value. With **sum** and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of *valuing,* indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (**147**). The words commonly so used are **māgnī, parvī, tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris.** Example: **tantī ēius grātiam esse ostendit** (Caes. I, 20, 15), *he assured him that his friendship was of such value.*

B. Genitive with Adjectives

106. Many adjectives require or admit a genitive to complete their meaning. They are:

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as *conscious* (*of*), *desirous*

(*of*), *mindful* (*of*), *sharing* (*in*), *skilled* (*in*), and their opposites, and **plēnus**, *full* (*of*). Examples: **bellandī cupidī** (Caes. I, **2**, 14), *desirous of fighting;* **reī mīlitāris perītissimus** (Caes. I, **21**, 10), *most skilled in military science.*

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative (**122**), **similis**, *like;* **dissimilis**, *unlike.* The genitive is more common of living objects, and regular of personal pronouns. Example: **tuī similis** (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *like you.*

c. Occasionally other adjectives. Example: **locum medium utrīusque** (Caes. I, **34**, 2), *a place midway between them.*

C. Genitive with Verbs

107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting. Meminī, *bear in mind;* **reminīscor**, *remember;* and **oblīvīscor**, *forget*, govern either the genitive or the accusative. The genitive is regular of persons, the accusative of neuter pronouns. Examples: **reminīscerētur veteris incommodī** (Caes. I, **13**, 12), *he should remember the former disaster;* **veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī** (Caes. I, **14**, 7), *to forget the former insult.*

108. Verbs of Judicial Action. Verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, *convicting*, and *condemning* take a genitive of the charge. The penalty is expressed by the ablative, if at all. The person accused, etc., is the object of the active voice, the subject of the passive. Example: **mē inertiae condemnō** (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity.*

109. Verbs of Emotion. The impersonal verbs **miseret**, *pity;* **paenitet**, *repent;* **piget**, *dislike;* **pudet**, *be ashamed;* **taedet**, *be disgusted;* take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling. The personal verb **misereor**, *pity*, takes the genitive. Examples: **mē meōrum factōrum numquam paenitēbit** (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *I shall never repent of my deeds;* **mē ēius miseret** or **ēius misereor**, *I pity him.*

110. Interest and Rēfert. The impersonal verbs **interest** and **rēfert**, *it concerns, it is to the interest of*, take the genitive of the person concerned. But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, **interest** is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun. Examples: **reī pūblicae intersit** (Caes. II, **5**, 6), *it is to the interest of the state;* **meā interest**, *it is to my interest.*

111. Potior regularly governs the ablative (**145**). But in the phrase **rērum potīrī**, *to become master of affairs*, and occasionally elsewhere, it governs the genitive. Examples: **rērum potīrī volunt** (Cic. Cat. II, 19), *they wish to become masters of affairs;* **Galliae potīrī** (Caes. I, **3**, 25), *to become masters of Gaul.*

THE DATIVE

112. The dative expresses that to or for which anything is or is done. It may depend on a verb or an adjective or, very rarely, a noun; or may modify a whole sentence without depending on any one word.

113. Indirect Object. The indirect object is a dative used to denote the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb. It most commonly indicates the person to whom something is said or given. Because of differences between English and Latin idiom no one translation can be given for it.

114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs. Many verbs which govern an accusative of the direct object take also a dative of the indirect object, usually translated by *to*, less often by *for*. (For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see **116**). Example: **eī filiam dat** (Caes. I, **3**, 17), *he gives (to) him his daughter.*

a. **Dōnō**, *give, present*, and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing. Examples: **eī librum dōnō,** *I give (to) him a book;* **eum librō dōnō,** *I present him with a book.*

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially **cōnsulō**, *consult* or *consult for*, and **metuō,** *fear* or *fear for*. Examples: **sī mē cōnsulis** (Cic. Cat. I, 13), *if you consult me (ask my advice);* **cōnsulite vōbīs** (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), *consult for yourselves (for your own interests).*

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice. Example: **eī filia datur,** *his daughter is given to him.*

115. The Indirect Object With Intransitive Verbs. The dative is used with many intransitive verbs, most of which seem to be transitive in English. It must often be translated by the English direct object. (For the indirect object with intransitive verbs compounded with a preposition see **116**.)

The dative (usually of the person) is thus used with most verbs meaning *benefit* or *injure, command* or *obey, please* or *displease, serve* or *resist, trust* or *distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten,* and the like. Examples: **novīs rēbus studēbat** (Caes. I, **9**, 8), *he was anxious for a revolution;* **Allobrogibus imperāvit** (Caes. I, **28**, 8), *he commanded the Allobroges;* **cīvitātī persuāsit** (Caes. I, **2**, 4), *he persuaded the state.*

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as

audiēns sum, *obey*, and **fidem habēre**, *trust*. Example: **cui fidem habēbat** (Caes. I, **19**, 16), *whom he trusted*.

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun. Examples: **prōvinciae militum numerum imperat** (Caes. I, **7**, 4), *he levies a number of soldiers on the province;* **id eis persuāsit** (Caes. I, **2**, 7), *he persuaded them to this* (literally *he persuaded this to them*).

c. Not all verbs with the meanings given above govern the dative. The most important exceptions are the transitive verbs **dēlectō**, *delight*, **iubeō**, *command*, **iuvō**, *please*, **vetō**, *forbid*. Example: **Labiēnum iubet** (Caes. I, **21**, 5), *he commands Labienus*.

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (**124**, *b*), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of **115** can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. Examples: **Caesarem laudō** (transitive), *I praise Caesar*, becomes **Caesar laudātur**, *Caesar is praised;* but **Caesarī persuādeō** (intransitive), *I persuade Caesar*, becomes **Caesarī persuādētur**, *Caesar is persuaded* (literally *it is persuaded to Caesar*).

116. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I. Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the uncompounded verb is transitive the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by *from*, the dative is sometimes called the dative of separation.

The dative is required with most compounds of **ad, ante, con** (= **cum**), **dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub**, and **super**; and with some compounds of **ab, circum**, and **ex**. Examples: **cum omnibus praestārent** (Caes. I, **2**, 5), *since they excelled all;* **finitimis bellum inferre** (Caes. I, **2**, 13), *to make war upon their neighbors;* **mūnītiōnī Labiēnum praeficit** (Caes. I, **10**, 8), *he puts Labienus in command of the works;* **scūtō mīlitī dētrāctō** (Caes. II, **25**, 14), *having snatched a shield from a soldier*.

II. The dative is used with compounds of **satis** and **bene**. Example: **si Aeduis satisfaciant** (Caes. I, **14**, 19), *if they should make restitution to the Aedui*.

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs, **aggredior**, *attack;* **incendō**, *burn;* **interficiō**, *kill;* **oppūgnō**, *assault;* but

there are many others. Example: **eōs aggressus** (Caes. I, **12**, 10), *having attacked* (or *attacking*) *them.*

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed. Example: **illum in equum intulit** (Caes. VI, **30**, 16), *he put him on a horse.*

c. The dative is retained with the passive. Example: **mūnītiōnī Labiēnus praeficitur,** *Labienus is put in command of the works.*

117. Dative of Possessor. The dative is used in the predicate with **sum**, or a verb of similar meaning, to denote the possessor. It may be translated as a nominative with the verb *have.* Examples: **mihi est liber,** *I have a book* (literally *a book is to me*); **dēmōnstrant sibi nihil esse** (Caes. I, **11**, 13), *they declare that they have nothing* (literally *there is nothing to them*).

118. Dative of the Agent. The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation (**76**) to express the person who has the thing to do. **Tibi agendum est** means *a doing is to you,* i. e. *you must do.* The dative is really a dative of possessor, and is often called the dative of the *apparent agent.* Compare the ablative of the agent (**137**), which is used with the other forms of the passive. Example: **nōn exspectandum sibi statuit** (Caes. I, **11**, 15), *he decided that he must not wait* (literally *that a waiting was not to him,* or *that it must not be waited by him*).

a. The ablative of the agent (**137**) is often used with the passive periphrastic, especially if the dative would be ambiguous. Example: **cīvitātī ā tē persuādendum est,** *the state must be persuaded by you.*

b. The dative of the agent is used with the compound tenses of the passive voice. Example: **quī tibi cōnstitūtī fuērunt** (Cic. Cat. I, 16), *who have been doomed by you.*

119. Dative of Purpose. The dative is used to denote purpose or tendency, usually with **sum,** sometimes with other verbs. It is usually found in connection with another dative (indirect object or dative of possessor), and the construction is then sometimes called "two datives, to which and for which." Examples: **ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs** (Caes. III, **14**, 14), *one thing was of* (literally *for*) *great use;* **sibi eam rem cūrae futūram** (Caes. I, **33**, 2), *that he would take care of the matter* (literally *that that thing would be for a care to him*).

120. Dative of Reference. The dative of reference does not depend on any one word, but loosely modifies its whole clause or sentence. It

denotes the person with reference to whom the statement is made, and is variously translated. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun; but in this case it should not be called dative of possessor (**117**). Examples: **cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent** (Caes. I, **5**, 8), *they order each one to carry food for himself;* **sēsē Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt** (Caes. I, **31**, 4), *they cast themselves at Caesar's feet.*

121. Ethical Dative. The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns. Example: **Tongilium mihi ēdūxit** (Cic. Cat. II, 4,), *he took me out Tongilius, he took out my Tongilius,* or *he took out Tongilius, I am happy to say.*

122. Dative with Adjectives. Many adjectives require or admit a dative to complete their meanings. Such are especially adjectives meaning *friendly* or *unfriendly, like* or *unlike, useful* or *useless, equal, fit, near, suitable.* Examples: **plēbī acceptus** (Caes. I, **3**, 16), *acceptable (pleasing) to the people;* **proximī sunt Germānīs** (Caes. I, **1**, 10), *they are nearest to the Germans;* **castrīs idōneum locum** (Caes. VI, **10**, 5), *a place suitable for a camp.*

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative. Example: **ad amīcitiam idōneus**, *suitable for friendship.*

b. **Propior** and **proximus** sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition **prope.** Example: **proximus mare Ōceanum** (Caes. III, **7**, 7), *nearest the ocean.*

c. For **similis** and **dissimilis** see **106**, *b.*

ACCUSATIVE

123. Subject of Infinitive. The accusative is used as the subject of infinitives. Example: **certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse** (Caes. I, **12**, 5), *he was informed that the Helvetians had led across.*

124. Direct Object. The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object. The direct object may be either (*a*) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as **puerum laudat,** *he praises the boy;* or (*b*) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as **coniūrātiōnem fēcit,** *he made a conspiracy.*

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (**228, 229, 262, 277**).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the

passive. Examples: **puer laudātur**, *the boy is praised;* **coniūrātiō facta est**, *a conspiracy was made.*

c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially **ad, circum, in, per, praeter, sub, trāns**, have transitive meanings. Example: **īre**, *to go*, intransitive; but **flūmen trānsīre**, *to cross (go across) the river.*

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially **115**. Others, especially those expressing emotions, though intransitive in English, and usually so in Latin, may be transitive in Latin. Example: **honōrēs quōs dēspērant** (Cic. Cat. II, 19), *the offices of which they despair.*

Two Accusatives

Three Classes of Verbs Governing Two Accusatives

125. *A.* **Two Objects.** A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. Verbs of asking or demanding, and **cēlō**, *I conceal*, have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person. Example: **Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre** (Caes. I, **16**, 1), *he kept asking the Aedui for the grain.* But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab** or **ex**.

b. **Moneō**, *I warn, advise*, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing. Example: **eōs hōc moneō** (Cic. Cat. II, 20), *I give them this advice.*

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained. Example: **Aeduī frūmentum flāgitābantur**, *the Aedui were asked for the grain;* **(eī) hōc monentur**, *they are given this advice.*

126. *B.* **Object and Predicate Accusative.** Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing*, and the like, take a direct object, and a second accusative, either a noun or an adjective, as predicate accusative. The two accusatives refer to the same person or thing. Examples: **quem rēgem cōnstituerat** (Caes. IV, **21**, 14), *whom he had appointed king;* **Caesarem certiōrem fēcit**, *he informed Caesar (made Caesar more certain).*

a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (**95**, *a*). Examples: **quī rēx cōnstitūtus erat**, *who had been appointed*

king; **Caesar certior factus est** (Caes. I, **12**, 5), *Caesar was informed (made more certain).*

127. *C.* **Two Objects with Compounds.** Transitive verbs compounded with the preposition **trāns** may take one object depending on the verbal idea, another depending on the prepositional idea. Example: **trēs partēs flūmen trādūxērunt** (cf. Caes. I, **12**, 6), *they led three parts across the river.*

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verbal idea becomes the subject, the object of the prepositional idea is retained. Example: **trēs partēs flūmen trāductae sunt,** *three parts were led across the river.*

128. Adverbial Accusative. The neuter accusative of some pronouns and adjectives is used adverbially. So, **multum,** *much;* **plūs,** *more;* **plūrimum,** *most;* **nihil,** *not at all;* **plērumque,** *for the most part.* Also **id temporis** (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *at that time;* and the noun **partem** in the phrase **māximam partem** (Caes. IV, **1**, 15), *for the most part.*

129. Accusative in Exclamations. An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation. The nominative and vocative are less often used in the same way. Example: **Ō fortūnātam rem pūblicam** (Cic. Cat. II, 7), *Oh fortunate state!*

130. Accusative of Time and Space. The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space. The noun must be one meaning time or distance, as, **diēs,** *day;* **pēs,** *foot.* Compare **152** and **148.** Examples: **rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat** (Caes. I, **3**, 12), *he had held the royal power many years;* **milia passuum CCXL patēbant** (Caes. I, **2**, 18), *extended two hundred and forty miles.*

131. Place to Which. Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in.** Compare **134,** *a,* and **151.** Examples: **ad iūdicium coēgit** (Caes. I, **4**, 5), *he brought to the trial;* **in agrum Nōricum trānsierant** (Caes. I, **5**, 12), *they had crossed over into the Noreian territory.*

a. But names of towns and small islands, and **domum** or **domōs,** *home,* take no preposition. **Ad** is, however, sometimes used in the sense of *towards* (not *to*), *in the neighborhood of.* Examples: **sē Massiliam cōnferet** (Cic. Cat. II, 14), *he will go to Marseilles;* **domum reditiōnis** (Caes. I, **5**, 7), *of a return home;* **ad Genāvam pervenit** (Caes. I, **7**, 4), *he reaches the neighborhood of Geneva.*

132. VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. Example: **Catilīna** (Cic. Cat. I, 1).

133. ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has,—the instrumental and the locative. The true ablative meant separation (*from*), the instrumental meant association or instrument (*with* or *by*), and the locative meant place where (*in*). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases.

A. The True Ablative

134. Ablative of Separation. Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, either alone or with **ab, dē,** or **ex.** With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see **116, 1.** Examples: **suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent** (Caes. I, **1,** 14), *they repel them from their own territory;* **quae hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent** (Caes. IV, **34,** 10), *which kept the enemy from battle;* **ā Bibracte aberat** (Caes. I, **23,** 3), *he was distant from Bibracte.*

a. Place from which: with verbs expressing motion:—

1. Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with a preposition. Compare **131** and **151.** Examples: **ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent** (Caes. I, **2,** 4), *to go out from their territory;* **quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant** (Caes. I, **8,** 2), *who had gathered from the province.*

2. But no preposition is used with names of towns and small islands, or with **domō,** *from home.* Yet **ab** is used with names of towns to express *from the neighborhood of.* Examples: **Rōmā profūgērunt** (Cic. Cat. I, 7), *they fled from Rome;* **domō exīre** (Caes. I, **6,** 1), *to go out from home.*

b. With verbs meaning *deprive, free, be without,* and the like, and with adjectives of similar meanings, the ablative without a preposition is generally used. Examples: **māgnō mē metū līberābis** (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will free me of great fear;* **proeliō abstinēbat** (Caes. I, **22,** 12), *refused battle* (literally *abstained from battle*).

135. Ablative of Source. The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles **nātus** and **ortus,** to express *parentage* or *rank.* Examples: **amplissimō genere nātus** (Caes. IV, **12,** 13), *born of the highest rank;* **sorōrem ex mātre (nātam)** (Caes. I, **18,** 17), *his sister on his mother's side.*

136. Ablative of Material. The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with **ex,** less often **dē.** Example: **nāvēs factae ex rōbore** (Caes. III, **13,** 6), *the ships were made of oak.*

137. Ablative of Agent. With any form of the passive except the passive periphrastic (see **118**) the agent (*person* who performs the act) is expressed by the ablative with **ab.** Compare the ablative of means (**143**). Example: **exercitum ab Helvētiīs pulsum** (Caes. I, **7**, 14), *that his army had been routed by the Helvetians.*

138. Ablative of Cause. Cause is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. Examples: **grātiā et largītiōne** (Caes. I, **9**, 5), *because of his popularity and lavish giving;* **quod suā victōriā glōriārentur** (Caes. I, **14**, 11), *that they boasted* (*because*) *of their victory.*

a. Cause is also often expressed by **causā** and the genitive (**99**, *a*), or by the accusative with **ob, per,** or **propter.** Example: **propter angustiās** (Caes. I, **9**, 2), *because of its narrowness.*

139. Ablative of Comparison. With comparatives *than* may be expressed by the ablative. This is not to be confused with the ablative of measure of difference (**148**). Examples: **lūce sunt clāriōra tua cōnsilia** (Cic. Cat. I, 6), *your plans are clearer than day;* **nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum** (Caes. I, **15**, 15), *not more than five or six miles* (compare *b*).

a. **Quam,** *than,* may usually be used with a comparative. The following noun is then in the same case as the one with which it is compared. The ablative is generally used only to replace **quam** with the nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negatived.

b. **Plūs, minus, amplius, longius,** are often used instead of **plūs quam,** etc. Example: **mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū** (Caes. I, **41**, 12), *by a circuit of more than fifty miles.*

B. The Instrumental Ablative

140. Ablative of Accompaniment. Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum.** Example: **ut cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent** (Caes. I, **2**, 4), *to go out with all their troops.*

141. Descriptive Ablative. The ablative modified by an adjective describes a person or thing by naming some quality. It may be used either attributively or predicatively. Compare the descriptive genitive (**100**). Examples: **hominēs inimīcō animō** (Caes. I, **7**, 16), *men of unfriendly disposition;* **nōndum bonō animō vidērentur** (Caes. I, **6**, 12), *they did not yet seem* (*to be*) *well disposed* (*of a good spirit*).

142. Ablative of Manner. Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either **cum** or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.

Examples: **pars cum cruciātū necābātur** (Caes. V, **45**, 6), *some were killed with torture;* **māgnis itineribus** (Caes. I, **10**, 9), *by forced marches.*

a. In some common phrases the ablative means *in accordance with.* These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive,— **cōnsuētūdine, iūre, iussū (iniussū), lēge, mōribus, sententiā, sponte, voluntāte.** Examples: **iniussū suō** (Caes. I, **19**, 4), *without his orders;* **mōribus suīs** (Caes. I, **4**, 1), *in accordance with their customs;* **suā voluntāte** (Caes. I, **20**, 11), *in accordance with his wish.*

143. Ablative of Means. The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. Compare the ablative of the agent (**137**). Example: **rēgnī cupiditāte inductus** (Caes. I, **2**, 3), *influenced by the desire for royal power.*

a. Notice the ablative with the following words,— verbs and adjectives of *filling* (except **plēnus, 106**); **fīdō, cōnfīdō,** *trust in;* **nītor,** *rely upon;* **lacessō (proeliō),** *provoke (to battle);* **assuēfactus, assuētus,** *accustomed to;* **frētus,** *relying upon.* Examples: **nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant** (Caes. III, **9**, 13), *they trusted in the nature of the country;* **nūllō officiō assuēfactī** (Caes. IV, **1**, 18), *accustomed to no obedience.*

144. Ablative of the Way. The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means. Examples: **frūmentō quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat** (Caes. I, **16**, 6), *the grain which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone;* **eōdem itinere contendit** (Caes. I, **21**, 8), *he advances by the same road.*

145. Ablative with Special Verbs. The ablative of means is used with the following verbs, which in English are transitive,— **ūtor,** *use,* **fruor,** *enjoy,* **fungor,** *perform, fulfill,* **potior** (compare **111**), *get possession of,* **vescor,** *eat,* and their compounds. Examples: **eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō** (Caes. I, **5**, 10), *adopting (using) the same plan;* **imperiō potīrī** (Caes. I, **2**, 6), *to get possession of the government.*

146. Ablative with opus est. The ablative of means is used with **opus est (ūsus est),** *there is need of.* Example: **sī quō opus esset** (Caes. II, **8**, 17), *if there should be need of any (reserve).*

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with **opus** as predicate noun. Example: **sī quid opus esset** (Caes. I, **34**, 5), *if he needed anything.*

147. Ablative of Price. With verbs of *buying, selling,* and the like, price is expressed by the ablative. Compare the genitive of value, **105**. Example: **parvō pretiō redēmpta** (Caes. I, **18**, 9), *bought up at a low price.*

148. Ablative of Measure of Difference. The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the measure of difference. Compare **139**. Examples: **īnsula dīmidiō minor** (Caes. V, **13**, 7), *an island smaller by half;* **paucīs ante diēbus,** (Caes. I, **18**, 26), *a few days before* (literally *before by a few days*).

a. **Eō . . . quō**, in this construction, may be translated *the . . . the.* Example: **eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō accidissent** (Caes. I, **14**, 3), *he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened* (literally *by that amount . . . . by which*).

149. Ablative of Specification. The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true. This is the regular construction of supines in **-ū** (**296**). Examples: **linguā inter sē differunt** (Caes. I, **1**, 4), *they differ in language;* **māior nātū,** *older* (*greater in birth*); **perfacile factū** (Caes. I, **3**, 18), *very easy to do* (*as to the doing*).

a. The ablative is used with **dignus,** *worthy,* and **indignus,** *unworthy.* Example: **quī sē dignum custōdiā iūdicārit** (Cic. Cat. I, 19), *who has judged himself deserving of a guard.*

150. Ablative Absolute. The ablative absolute consists of a noun and participle in the ablative, syntactically independent of the rest of the sentence. It corresponds to the English nominative absolute, but is used very much more commonly. As Latin has no present participle of the verb *to be,* a noun and noun or noun and adjective may be used in the ablative absolute where English would connect them by the word *being.*

The ablative absolute is freely used as a concise means of expressing some attendant circumstance, often where English would, and Latin might, use a dependent clause instead. It may thus be translated by *when, after, if, though, because,* etc., and in many other ways. Notice the translation of the following examples. Examples: (translated by active past participle) **remōtīs equīs proelium commīsit** (Caes. I, **25**, 2), *having sent the horses away, he began the battle;* (translated by prepositional phrase) **M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus** (Caes. I, **2**, 2), *in the consulship of,* etc.; **eō dēprecātōre** (Caes. I, **9**, 4), *by his mediation;* (translated by subordinate clause) **omnibus rēbus comparātīs diem dīcunt** (Caes. I, **6**, 14), *when everything was ready they set a day;* **Sēquanīs invītīs īre nōn poterant** (Caes. I, **9**, 1), *if the Sequani should refuse they could not go;* **monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat** (Caes. I, **22**, 11), *though he had occupied the mountain he waited for our men;* (translated by coordinate clause) **locīs superiōribus occupātīs . . . . cōnantur** (Caes. I, **10**, 13), *they occupied advantageous positions and tried,* etc.

C. The Locative Ablative

151. Place in Which. Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with **in.** Compare **131** and **134,** *a.* Example: **in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt** (Caes. I, **1,** 14), *they fight in their territory.*

a. But no preposition is used with names of towns and small islands. They stand in the locative (**15,** *b;* **16,** *b*) if they are singular nouns of the first and second declensions; otherwise in the ablative. The locative **domī,** *at home,* is also in regular use. Examples: **nēmō Rōmae fuit** (Cic. Cat. II, 8), *there was no one at Rome;* **domī largiter posse** (Caes. I, **18,** 14), *he had great influence at home.*

b. No preposition is regularly used with **locō, locīs, parte, partibus** and any modifier; or with any noun modified by **tōtus.** Examples: **nōnnūllīs locīs trānsītur** (Caes. I, **6,** 8), *is crossed in several places;* **vulgō tōtīs castrīs** (Caes. I, **39,** 18), *everywhere throughout the entire camp.*

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So **ab** and **ex** are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used instead of the ablative with **in** if the construction is at all appropriate. Examples: **ūnā ex parte** (Caes. I, **2,** 8), *on one side;* **cotīdiānīs proeliīs contendunt** (Caes. I, **1,** 13), *they contend in (by means of) daily battles;* **memoriā tenēbat** (Caes. I, **7,** 13), *he held in (by means of) memory.*

152. Ablative of Time. Time in or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. Compare the accusative of time (**130**). Examples: **eō tempore** (Caes. I, **3,** 15), *at that time;* **id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant** (Caes. I, **13,** 4), *a thing which they had barely accomplished in (within) twenty days.*

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. Example: **eā tōtā nocte iērunt** (Caes. I, **26,** 14), *they marched during that whole night.*

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

153. Ablative. The following prepositions govern the ablative: **ab, absque, cōram, cum, dē, ex, prae, prō, sine, tenus.**

a. The forms **ab** and **ex** must be used before words beginning with a vowel or **h.** It is always safe to use **ā** and **ē** before words beginning with a consonant, though **ab** and **ex** are often found.

b. **Cum** is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative and interrogative.

154. Accusative or Ablative. In and **sub** with the accusative imply motion from outside *into* and *under,* respectively; with the ablative

they imply rest or motion *in* and *under*, respectively. **Subter** and **super** sometimes govern the ablative.

155. Accusative. All other prepositions govern the accusative.

USE OF ADJECTIVES

156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

A *predicate* adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb **sum** or a verb of similar meaning (see **95**, *a*); as, **flūmen est lātum,** *the river is wide.* An *attributive* adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as **flūmen lātum,** *the wide river.*

157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. Examples: **homō bonus,** *a good man;* **mulierī bonae,** *to a good woman;* **bellōrum māgnōrum,** *of great wars.*

a. An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns,—

1. If attributive, regularly agrees with the nearest noun. Examples: **vir bonus et mulier,** *a good man and woman;* **bella et victōriae māgnae,** *great wars and victories.*

2. If predicative, regularlv agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter. But the adjective may be neuter under almost any circumstances. Examples: **hominēs et mōrēs sunt bonī,** *the men and their characters are good;* **hominēs et arma sunt māgnī,** *the men and their arms are large*; **montēs et flūmina sunt māgna,** *the mountains and rivers are large.*

158. ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY

Adjectives are rarely used as substantives in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of *man* or *men.* The neuter is used in the sense of thing or things, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the genitive of the whole (**101**, *a*). Examples: **multī,** *many men;* **multōrum,** *of many men;* **multa,** *many things;* **multārum rērum,** *of many things.*

159. ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests

the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object. Examples: **invītus vēnit,** *he came unwillingly,* or better *he was unwilling to come;* **prīmus vēnit,** *he came first,* or *was first to come.*

160. ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean a part of an object. The most common of these are, **īmus, īnfimus,** *the bottom of;* **medius,** *the middle of;* **summus,** *the top of;* **prīmus,** *the first part of;* **extrēmus,** *the last part of.* Examples: **in colle mediō** (Caes. I, **24**, 4), *on the middle of* (*half way up*) *the slope;* **summus mōns** (Caes. I, **22**, 1), *the top of the mountain;* **prīmā nocte** (Caes. I, **27**, 13), *in the first part of the night.*

161. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by *rather* or *too,* the superlative by *very.* Examples: **nōn est saepius salūs perīclitanda** (Cic. Cat. I, 11), *safety must not be endangered too often;* **monte Iūrā altissimō** (Caes. I, **2**, 10), *by the very high mountain Jura.*

a. The superlative is often strengthened by **quam,** with or without a form of **possum.** Examples: **quam māximum numerum** (Caes. I, **3**, 3), *as great a number as possible;* **quam māximum potest numerum** (Caes. I, **7**, 5), *as great a number as possible.*

USE OF PRONOUNS

162. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast. Example: **ego maneō, tū abīs,** *I remain, you go.*

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

163. Reflexive pronouns refer back to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand, and correspond to *myself, himself,* etc., in such sentences as *I praise myself, he praises himself.* This use of *myself,* etc., must not be confused with the use in such sentences as *I myself praise him,* where *myself* emphasizes *I.* The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (**172**).

164. The Direct Reflexive. Sui is used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which it stands. It is

then called a direct reflexive. Example: **eum videō quī sē laudat,** *I see the man who praises himself.*

165. The Indirect Reflexive. In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject **suī** is also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which it stands. It is then called an indirect reflexive.

This is especially important in indirect discourse (**271**), where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of **suī**. Example: **Caesar dīcit mē sē laudāvisse,** *Caesar says that I praised him* (Caesar).

166. The Reciprocal Expression. The reflexive pronouns are used with **inter** to express the reciprocal idea, *one another, each other.* Example: **inter nōs laudāmus,** *we praise one another* or *each other.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

167. The possessive pronouns are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast. Example: **Caesar exercitum dūxit,** *Caesar led (his) army.*

a. **Suus** is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun **suī**, and is used in the same way. Examples: **Caesar suōs mīlitēs laudat,** *Caesar praises his (own) soldiers;* **Caesar ēius mīlitēs laudat,** *Caesar praises his* (not **Caesar's**) *soldiers.*

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

168. Hīc refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. Example: **hic liber,** *this book* (near me).

169. Iste refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person. Example: **iste liber,** *that book* (near you). It often expresses contempt.

170. Ille refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person. Example: **ille liber,** *that book* (yonder).

a. **Ille** and **hīc** are often used in the sense of *the former, the latter.* **Hīc** is usually *the latter,* as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned; but it may be *the former* if the former object is more important and therefore nearer in thought.

171. Is is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used

as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

a. When **is** serves as the antecedent of a relative it is to be translated variously, according to the kind of relative clause which follows.

1. When followed by a *determining clause* (**231**) it means *the, the man,* etc. Example: **is est quī laudat,** *he is the man who praises.*

2. When followed by a *conditional relative clause* (**250**) it means *a, a man, anyone* (= *everyone*), etc. Example: **is quī pūgnat errat,** *anyone who fights makes a mistake.*

3. When followed by a *characterizing clause* (**230**) it means *a, such a, such a man,* etc. Example: **is est quī pūgnet,** *he is a man who* (*such a man as*) *fights.*

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

172. **Ipse** emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by *self,* and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronouns. Examples: **ipse Caesar eum laudat,** *Caesar himself praises him;* **ipse Caesar sē laudat,** *Caesar* (*himself*) *praises himself.*

a. **Ipse** is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive. Examples: **meus ipsīus liber,** *my own book* (*the book of me myself*); **vester ipsōrum liber,** *your own book* (*the book of you yourselves*).

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

173. A relative pronoun agrees in gender and number with its antecedent; its case depends on its construction in the clause in which it stands. If it is used as subject the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (**157,** *a,* 2). The relative is never omitted. Examples: **Caesar, quem laudō,** *Caesar, whom I praise;* **ego, quī eum laudō,** *I, who praise him;* **Caesar et Cicerō, quī mē laudant,** *Caesar and Cicero, who praise me.*

a. It is often necessary to translate a relative by a conjunction and a personal or demonstrative pronoun (**222,** *a*). Example: **relinquēbātur ūna via, quā īre nōn poterant,** *there was left only one way, and by it they could not go.* Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun, without a conjunction. Example: Caes. I, 27, 2.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

174. **Quis,** *anyone,* is generally used after **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num**; in relative clauses; and in composition with the interrogative particle ec-. Examples: **sī quis laudat,** *if anyone praises;* **ecquid attendis,** *do you give any heed?*

175. **Aliquis (aliquī)** is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean *some one, some,* etc. Example: **aliquis dīcat,** *some one may say.*

176. **Quispiam** has almost exactly the same meaning as **aliquis,** but is rare. Example: **quispiam dīcat,** *some one may say.*

177. **Quisquam** and **ūllus** are the words commonly used in negative sentences (except with **nē**), or questions implying a negative, to mean *any, anyone,* etc. Examples: **neque quemquam laudō,** *nor do I praise anyone;* **num quemquam laudō,** *I do not praise anyone, do I?*

178. **Nesciō quis (nesciō quī),** originally meaning *I know not who,* is often used in a sense very much like that of **aliquis,** but with even more indefiniteness. Examples: **nesciō quis laudat,** *some one or other praises.*

THE VERB

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

179. If there is but one subject, the finite verb agrees with it in person and number, and in the compound tenses the participle agrees with it in gender. Examples: **Caesar laudātus est,** *Caesar was praised;* **mulierēs laudātae sunt,** *the women were praised.*

a. But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb, and a neuter noun a masculine participle in agreement. Examples: **multitūdō vēnērunt,** *a great number came;* **duo milia occīsī sunt,** *two thousand were killed.*

180. If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural, and in the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (**157,** *a,* 2). If the subjects differ in person the first person is preferred to the second and the second to the third. Examples: **homō et mulier occīsī sunt,** *the man and the woman were killed;* **ego et tū vēnimus,** *you and I came.*

a. The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor.* **Examples:**

Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus, *Caesar and Labienus came;* **neque Caesar neque Labiēnus vēnit,** *neither Caesar nor Labienus came;* **fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est** (Caes. I, 26, 12), *his daughter and one of his sons were taken.*

b. If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular. Example: **Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit** (Caes. I, 1, 5), *the Marne and Seine separate* (they make one boundary line).

THE VOICES

181. The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb can not be used in the passive, except impersonally. Examples: **laudat,** *he praises;* **laudātur,** *he is praised;* **eī crēditur** (115, *d*) *he is believed.*

THE MODES

182. The Latin verb has three modes,— the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative. The name *mode* is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is spoken of; for example, as a certainty or as willed.

183. The Indicative speaks of the action as certain, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact. Examples: **laudat,** *he praises;* **nōn laudat,** *he does not praise;* **laudatne?** *does he praise?*

184. The Subjunctive has three classes of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

a. The Subjunctive of Desire. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called volitive) or wish (then called optative). Examples: **laudet,** *let him praise* or *may he praise;* **imperō ut laudet,** *I command that he praise,* i. e., *I give the command "let him praise."*

b. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied, or, very seldom, it may express what may possibly take place. The latter use is the potential. Examples: **laudet,** *he would praise* (if there should be reason); **is est quī laudet,** *he is a man who would praise.*

c. The Subjunctive of Fact. Only in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express certainty and be translated just like the indicative. These uses of the subjunctive are the most difficult to understand and remember, because there seems to be no reason for using the subjunctive

rather than the indicative. Example: **laudātur cum laudet,** *he is praised because he praises.* Compare **laudātur quod laudat,** *he is praised because he praises.*

185. The Imperative is used only in independent sentences and expresses will. Example: **laudā,** *praise (thou).*

OTHER VERBAL FORMS

186. The Infinitive is not, strictly speaking, a mode, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mode in certain kinds of dependent clauses. Example: **dīcit Caesarem laudārī,** *he says that Caesar is praised.*

187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives. The gerund and the supine are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated by clauses in English.

THE NEGATIVES

188. There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

a. **Nōn,** *not,* and **neque,** *and not, nor,* are used everywhere except in expressions of will or wish; that is, they are used with the indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity, the subjunctive of fact, and the infinitive. Examples: **nōn laudat,** *he does not praise;* **nōn laudet,** *he would not praise.*

b. **Nē,** *not,* and **nēve,** *and not, nor,* are used with all the modal meanings which express will or wish; that is, with the subjunctive of desire and (in poetry only) the imperative. Examples: **nē laudet,** *let him not praise,* or *may he not praise.* **Nē quidem,** *not even,* is used in statements.

THE TENSES

189. The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things; **laudāvit,** *he praised,* simply puts the action in the past; **laudāverat,** *he had praised,* means that the action was already completed in the past time; **laudābat,** *he was praising,* means that the action was going on in the past time; and **laudātūrus erat,** *he was going to praise,* means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is, and it is important to understand exactly what each of its tenses means.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

190. The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present. Example: **laudat,** *he praises, he is praising, he does praise.*

a. The historical present speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and, therefore, should usually be translated by a past. Example: **oppida sua omnia incendunt** (Caes. I, 5, 4), *they burned* (*burn*) *all their towns.*

b. With such expressions as **iam diū, iam prīdem,** *for a long time,* **multōs annōs,** *for many years,* the Latin present is to be translated by the English perfect. Example: **multōs annōs tē moneō,** *I have been warning you for many years.* There are really two ideas, "I have been in the past" and "I still am." English expresses one of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the other.

c. For the present with **dum,** etc., see **234,** *a.*

191. The Imperfect puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time. See **189.** Example: **laudābat,** *he was praising.*

a. The imperfect is often used of repeated past action; as **laudābat,** *he used to praise,* or *he kept praising.* It is less often used of attempted past action; as **laudābat,** *he tried to praise.*

b. With the expressions mentioned in **190,** *b,* the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect. Example: **multōs annōs tē monēbam,** *I had been warning you for many years.*

192. The Future puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See **199.** Example: **laudābō,** *I shall* or *will praise,* or *be praising.*

193. The Perfect has two uses.

I. The present (or definite) perfect corresponds to the English perfect with *have.* It represents the action as completed at the present time. Example: **laudāvī,** *I have praised.*

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, **vēnī,** *I have come,* is nearly equivalent to *I am here.* A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially **nōvī, cōgnōvī,** *I know* (literally *I have found out*), and **cōnsuēvī,** *I am accustomed* (literally *I have become accustomed*).

II. The historical (or indefinite) perfect simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (**189**) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense. Example: **laudāvī**, *I praised.*

194. The Pluperfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time. See **189**. Example: **laudāveram**, *I had praised.*

a. The pluperfect of the verbs mentioned in **193**, I, *a*, are nearly equivalent to imperfects. Examples: **vēneram**, *I had come*, i. e., *I was there;* **cōnsuēveram**, *I was accustomed.*

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See **199**. Example: **laudāverō**, *I shall* or *will have praised.*

a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in **193**, I, *a*, are nearly equivalent to futures. Examples: **vēnerō**, *I shall have come*, i. e., *I shall be there;* **cōnsuēverō**, *I shall be accustomed.*

196. The Active Periphrastic (**75**) **Tenses** represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of **sum**. Examples: **laudātūrus est**, *he is about to praise;* **laudātūrus erat**, *he was about to praise;* **laudātūrus erit**, *he will be about to praise.*

Indicative Tenses in Narration

197. In telling of past events the indicative tenses used are the historical perfect (or the equivalent historical present), the imperfect, the pluperfect, and occasionally the imperfect periphrastic. The perfect is the narrating tense in which the successive main events of the story are told. The other tenses are the descriptive tenses in which the details which surround the main events are told. See **189**.

For example, suppose one wished to begin a story with the following points. "The Helvetians lived in a small country; they planned to leave; Caesar went to Gaul." Told in that way all the verbs would be perfects; but the story is badly told. One would certainly pick out some chief event or events and group the others about them; and whatever events he so picked out would be expressed by the perfect, while the rest would be imperfect and pluperfect. He might begin in this way, "The Helvetians, who lived........., planned.......... But Caesar went.........." Then *planned* and *went* are perfects, each being thought of as a separate step in the story; but *lived* is thought of as a subordinate

detail, telling something that was going on at the time of the main event, *planned,* and must be imperfect in Latin, though English uses the simple past tense. Or he might prefer to begin in this way, "The Helvetians, who lived........., had planned......... . But Caesar went." Then *went* is thought of as the first main event, and is the only perfect; *lived* is still imperfect; but *had planned* is thought of as a subordinate detail, giving something which had happened before the *went* and which led up to it. It is, therefore, a pluperfect.

198. The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfects and pluperfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it: in any narrative of past events the independent clauses use the perfect, the dependent clauses use the imperfect and pluperfect.

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important.

1. After **postquam, ubi,** etc. (see **237**), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also **235,** *a* and **236,** *a.*

2. After **dum,** *while* (see **234,** *a*) the present is regularly used.

The Future and Future Perfect

199. Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tense required by the meanings. For an example see **256.**

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

200. The tenses of the subjunctive seem to have two sets of meanings.

a. Where the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (**184,** *c*), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding tenses of the indicative.

b. Where the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (**184,** *a, b*) the act is future to the time of the verb. **Laudet,** *let him praise,* is a present command to praise in the future; **imperāvit ut laudāret,** *he*

commanded that he praise, is a past command to praise in a time future to the past, though it may be now really past. The perfect subjunctive in this use is often nearly the same as the present subjunctive, though not so often used.

201. The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses.

Present	= present *or* future
Imperfect	= imperfect *or* future to a past
Perfect	= perfect *or* future perfect (or future)
Pluperfect	= pluperfect *or* future perfect to a past

a. Some of these tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See **221**, **226**, and **254.**

b. Since the present has a future meaning as well as a present, and the perfect has a future perfect meaning as well as a perfect, the subjunctive needs no special forms for the future and future perfect. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used.

The Subjunctive Tenses in Dependence

202. When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, a little thinking about the real meaning of the English will enable one to use the right tense, just as in the indicative. When the tenses mean the same as those of the indicative they will be used in the same way (**197, 198**). When they have the future set of meanings, it will be found that a present or perfect is usually required after a tense of present or future meaning, and the imperfect and pluperfect after one of past meaning. For example: *I come,* or *I shall come, that I may praise,* **laudem;** *I came that I might praise,* **laudārem.** In the subjunctive the usage is more regular than in the indicative, so that the convenient but not very accurate rule, called the rule of sequence of tenses, can be followed.

Rule: In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.

203. Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive.

Principal Tenses

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present	**rogō,** *I ask*	Present	**quid faciat,** *what he is doing*
Future	**rogābō,** *I shall ask*	Perfect	**quid fēcerit,** *what he has done* (or *did*)
Present perfect	**rogāvī,** *I have asked*		
Future perfect	**rogāverō,** *I shall have asked*		

Historical Tenses

Imperfect	**rogābam,** *I was asking*	Imperfect	**quid faceret,** *what he was doing*
Historical perfect	**rogāvī,** *I asked*	Pluperfect	**quid fēcisset,** *what he had done*
Pluperfect	**rogāveram,** *I had asked*		

a. Notice that the perfect subjunctive, even when it means past time, is called a principal tense.

204. Exceptions to Rule of Sequence. Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on each other, and that the Romans probably did not even know that they had such a rule.

a. An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, *he marched around because the mountains are high*, is to be put into Latin, **cum sint** would be an exception to sequence and it is better to use the indicative construction **quod sunt.** The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect sometimes follows a perfect. Example, **singulās nostrī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ad terram pervēnerint** (Caes. III, **15,** 11), *our men took them one by one, so that very few reached land.*

b. A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used. Examples: **diem dīcunt quā diē conveniant** (Caes. I, **6,** 15), *they appoint a day on*

which they are to assemble; **omne frūmentum combūrunt ut parātiōrēs ad pericula subeunda essent,** *they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger.*

TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

205. Infinitives and participles can not be used as independent verbs (but see **281**). They take their time from the verb on which they depend, and express only the stage of progress of the act (see **189**), and therefore do not need forms enough to express all the tenses. That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

dīcō eum, *I say that he*	**laudāre** *is praising*	**laudātūrum esse** *will praise*	**laudāvisse** *has praised,* or *praised*
dīcam eum, *I shall say that he*	*is praising*	*will praise*	*has praised,* or *praised*
dīxī eum, *I said that he*	*was praising*	*would praise*	*had praised*

a. With such perfects as **dēbuī, licuit, oportuit, potuī,** Latin must use the present infinitive, though English says *ought to have,* etc. Example: **laudāre potuī,** *I could have praised.*

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by **fore (futūrum esse) ut,** *it would be that,* with the present or imperfect subjunctive. Examples: **dīcit fore ut timeat,** *he says that he will fear;* **dīxit fore ut laudārētur,** *he said that he would be praised.*

INDEPENDENT SENTENCES OR CLAUSES

STATEMENTS

206. The Indicative is used to state facts. Examples: **Caesar vēnit,** *Caesar came;* **Caesar nōn veniet,** *Caesar will not come.*

207. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity (**184,** *b*) is used to state what would take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in **254** and **257.** For the peculiar

use of tenses see those paragraphs. Examples: **Caesar veniat,** *Caesar would come;* **Caesar nōn vēnisset,** *Caesar would not have come*; **velim,** *I should like.*

208. The Potential Subjunctive (**184,** *b*) is seldom used to state what may or can happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase **aliquis dīcat,** *some one may say.* In an independent sentence the student should always express *may, might, can, could,* by such verbs as **possum** and **licet.** Example: **nēmō dubitet,** but usually **nēmō dubitāre potest,** *no one can doubt.*

QUESTIONS

Use of Modes

209. The indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity, and, rarely, the potential are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (**206-208**). Examples: **quis veniet,** *who will come?* **quis veniat?** *who would come?* **quis dubitet?** *who can doubt* (implying that no one can)?

210. A Deliberative Question is one that asks for an expression of some one's will. The answer, if any, is an expression of will. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive. Example: **quid faciam?** *what shall I do? what am I to do?*

a. Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do. Example: **cūr dubitem?** *why should I doubt?*

211. A rhetorical question is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the above questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mode. The opening sentences of Cicero's first oration against Catiline are rhetorical questions.

Introductory Words

212. Questions which can not be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. Examples: **quis vēnit?** *who came?* **quālis est?** *what sort of man is he?* **ubi est?** *where is he?*

a. The interrogative word is often emphasized by the enclitic **-nam.** Example: **ubinam gentium sumus** (Cic. Cat. I, 9), *where in the world are we?*

213. Questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* are usually, but

not always, introduced by an interrogative particle. In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

a. When the question asks for information, without implying the expectation of either answer, the enclitic **-ne** is added to the first word. This is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis. Examples: **scrībitne epistulam?** *is he writing a letter?* **epistulamne scrībit?** *is it a letter that he is writing?*

b. When the form of the question is to imply that the answer *yes* is expected, English inserts a *not* and Latin uses **nōn** as the first word, adding **-ne**. Example: **nōnne epistulam scrībit?** *is he not writing a letter?*

c. When the form of the question is to imply that the answer *no* is expected Latin uses **num** as the first word. Example: **num epistulam scrībit,** *he is not writing a letter, is he?*

Double Questions

214. Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. **Utrum** may stand at the beginning, not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or **-ne** may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The *or* is expressed by **an**; *or not* is **annōn.** Examples: **utrum pūgnāvit an fūgit? pūgnāvitne an fūgit? pūgnāvit an fūgit?** *did he fight or run away?* **pūgnāvit annōn?** *did he fight or not?*

Answers

215. Latin has no words answering exactly to *yes* and *no.* It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use **ita, sānē,** etc., for *yes,* **nōn, minimē,** etc., for *no.* Example: **epistulamne scrībit? scrībit,** *yes;* **nōn scrībit,** *no.*

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

216. These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate modes are the subjunctive of desire (**184,** *a*) and the imperative (**185**). The negative with the subjunctive is **nē** (**188,** *b*).

217. An Exhortation is a command or prohibition which includes one's self, and is expressed in the first person plural of the present subjunctive. Examples: **laudēmus,** *let us praise;* **nē eāmus,** *let us not go.*

218. A Command in the second person, either singular or plural, is

regularly expressed by the present imperative, or by the the future imperative if the present is lacking. Examples: **venīte,** *come* (*ye*)*;* **mementō,** *remember.*

219. A Prohibition in the second person, either singular or plural, is usually expressed by **nōlī, nōlīte,** *be unwilling,* and the present infinitive; or less often by **cavē** (with or without **nē**), *take care,* and the present subjunctive. Examples: **nōlīte dubitāre,** *do not doubt;* **cavē (nē) eās,** *do not go.*

a. The imperative with **nē** and the second person present or perfect subjunctive with **nē** are rarely found in good prose and are not to be used in writing Latin.

220. A Command or Prohibition in the third person, either singular or plural, is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive. Examples; **eat,** *let him go;* **nē veniant,** *let them not come.*

WISHES

221. Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (**184,** *a*) and are usually introduced by **utinam** (not to be translated). The peculiar use of the tenses must be noticed.

a. A wish for something in the future, which may therefore be regarded as still attainable, is expressed by the present subjunctive, less often by the perfect. Example: **utinam tibi istam mentem dī duint** (Cic. Cat. I, 22) *O that* (*I hope that*) *the gods may give you that purpose!*

b. A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive (compare the English *were*). A wish for something in the past is expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive (compare the English *had*). Both of these express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable. **Utinam** is always used. Examples: **utinam adesset!** *would that* (*I wish that*) *he were here!* **utinam omnīs cōpiās ēdūxisset** (Cic. Cat. II, 4), *would that* (*I wish that*) *he had taken all his forces!*

COORDINATE CLAUSES

222. A coordinate clause is a clause which is connected with another clause by means of a coordinating conjunction. The coordinating conjunctions are such as mean *and, but, or, for,* and the like.

a. When the relative pronouns must be translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun and a coordinating conjunction (**173,** *a*) the relative clause is in effect a coordinate clause, although **quī** usually introduces a subordinate clause.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

223. Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean *if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that,* and the like.

Neither the relatives nor any of the conjunctions have in themselves any effect on the mode of the verb in the dependent clause; but that clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (**184**, *a–c*). Dependent clauses are classified according to their meaning and use in the following groups: purpose clauses (**225**), result clauses (**226**), substantive clauses of desire (**228**), substantive clauses of result or fact (**229**), characterizing relative clauses (**230**), determining relative clauses (**231**), parenthetical relative clauses (**232**), temporal clauses (**233-242**), causal clauses (**243-245**), adversative clauses (**246, 247**), substantive **quod** clauses (**248**), conditional clauses (**249-259**), clauses of proviso (**260**), clauses of comparison (**261**), indirect questions (**262-264**), indirect discourse (**265-273**), attracted clauses (**274**), infinitive clauses (**277-280**).

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

224. A clause which gives the purpose of an act is usually quite distinct in meaning from one which states its result; yet in Latin form they are often identical, and sometimes difficult to distinguish. The subjunctive of desire (**184**, *a*) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (**184**, *c*) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (**188**), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the **ut** clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning; if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

225. The commonest expression of purpose in Latin is a subjunctive clause. The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see **228**. The connecting words are as follows:

a. In affirmative clauses:

1. If the principal clause contains a noun which can conveniently be used as an antecedent, a relative pronoun or adverb is commonly used. Example: **hominēs misit quī vidērent,** *he sent men to see,* literally *who were to see.*

2. If the purpose clause contains a comparative, **quō** is used. This

may be regarded as a conjunction, but is really an ablative of measure of difference. Example: **vēnit quō facilius vidēret,** *he came that he might see more easily,* literally *by which the more easily he might see.*

3. Otherwise, and most commonly, the conjunction **ut** is used. Example: **vēnit ut vidēret,** *he came to see, that he might see,* or *in order to see;* **venit ut videat,** *he comes to see.*

b. In negative clauses the conjunction **nē** is always used. Example: **hōc fēcit nē quis vidēret** (not **ut nēmō**), *he did this that no one might see,* or *to keep anyone from seeing.*

RESULT CLAUSES

226. Result is expressed in Latin by the subjunctive with **ut** (affirmative) or **ut nōn** (negative). The subjunctive is sometimes one of contingent futurity (**184,** *b*), to be translated by *would,* etc., or, more freely, *so as to* (tendency rather than result); but usually it is the subjunctive of fact (**184,** *c*), to be translated by the indicative. Notice that the imperfect subjunctive in this construction must usually be translated by the perfect indicative. But see **204,** *a,* at end. For the so-called relative clause of result see **230.** For the substantive clause of result see **229.** Examples: **mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent** (Caes. I, 6, 5), *a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check;* **incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicārī nōn possit** (Caes. I, 12, 3), *of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined;* **tam fortis est ut pūgnet,** *he is so brave that he would fight,* or *as to fight,* or *that he fights.*

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE AND OF RESULT

227. These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun. There is the same difference between the two substantive clauses as between clauses of purpose and those of result, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (**224**).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)

228. Although these clauses are usually called substantive clauses of purpose, they do not really express purpose but are expressions of will or wish used as objects, etc., of verbs. For example: **imperō ut eās,** *I command you to go,* does not mean *I command in order that you may go,* but rather *I give the command, "go".* This *go* would be expressed by the imperative in an independent sentence (**185**) but must be the subjunctive of desire in the dependent clause. The choice of a conjunction depends upon the meaning of the principal verb.

a. **Ut** and **nē** are regularly used after verbs meaning *advise, allow, ask, command, decide, persuade, strive, wish* and the like, and after verbs of *accomplishing* when the result is due to the conscious effort of a personal subject. **Ut** is often omitted after verbs of *asking, commanding,* and *wishing,* especially after **volō**. (But after most of these verbs the infinitive may be used instead, and it always is used after **iubeō,** *command,* **cōnor,** *attempt,* **patior, sinō,** *permit.* See **280,** *a*). Examples: **cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent** (Caes. I, **2,** 4), *he persuaded the citizens to leave;* **cīvitātī persuāsit nē exīrent,** *he persuaded the citizens not to leave;* **obsidēs utī dent perficit** (Caes. I, **9,** 11), *he causes them to give hostages.*

b. After verbs of *fearing* **ut** is used in the sense of *that not,* and **nē** in the sense of *that* or *lest,* their ordinary translations being reversed. But **nē nōn,** *that not,* is often used instead of **ut.** Examples: **timeō nē veniat,** *I fear that he will come,* originally **timeō: nē veniat,** *I am afraid: let him,* or *may he, not come;* **timeō ut** (or **nē nōn**) **veniat,** *I fear that he will not come,* originally **timeō: veniat,** *I am afraid: let him,* or *may he, come;* **ut** was then used as the opposite of **nē.**

c. Verbs of *hindering, opposing,* and *preventing* take two objects,—an accusative of the person hindered, etc., and a clause of the thing hindered, etc. In the passive the accusative becomes the subject. The conjunctions are **nē** (after an affirmative principal clause), **quīn** (after a negative), and **quōminus** (after both positives and negatives). Examples: **eum impediō nē,** or **quōminus, veniat,** *I hinder him from coming;* **eum nōn impediō quīn,** or **quōminus, veniat,** *I do not hinder him from coming.*

SUBSTANTIVE *UT* CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them do not of themselves express result, although they appear to do so when they depend on expressions with such meanings as *the result is.* They sometimes contain the contingent future subjunctive (**184,** *b*), but usually the subjunctive of fact (**184,** *c*).

a. A substantive clause of result with **ut** or **ut nōn** is used with verbs of accomplishing when the result is brought about by no conscious effort of a personal agent. Compare **228,** *a.* Example: **montēs efficiunt ut nōn exīre possint,** *the mountains make (that they can not) it impossible for them to leave.*

b. A substantive clause of fact with **ut** or **ut nōn** is used as the subject of impersonal verbs meaning *the result is, it happens, it remains, there is added,* and the like. (With most of these verbs an indicative **quod**

clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See **248.**) Examples: **hīs rēbus fīēbat ut vagārentur** (Caes. I, 2, 12), *the result was that they wandered.*

c. A substantive clause of fact with **ut** or **ut nōn** is used as a predicate nominative or as subject with such phrases as **mōs est, cōnsuētūdō est, vērum est.** (But a substantive clause of desire may be used with such phrases, especially with **iūs est, lēx est.**) Example: **mōs est ut ex equīs pūgnent,** *it is their custom to fight on horseback.*

d. A substantive clause of fact with **quīn** is used after negatived expressions of doubting. (After an affirmative expression of doubting an indirect question with **num, an,** or **sī** is used, as *whether* is in English. **Dubitō** with the infinitive means *hesitate.*) Example: **nōn est dubium quīn hōc fēcerit,** *there is no doubt that he did this.*

CHARACTERIZING RELATIVE CLAUSES

230. Characterizing clauses, like result clauses (**226**), contain sometimes the contingent future subjunctive (**184,** *b*), but usually the subjunctive of fact (**184,** *c*). They are, however, introduced by a relative instead of by **ut.** Some of them approach very nearly to result clauses in meaning and are usually called result clauses.

It is difficult, but important, to distinguish them from some other relative clauses, which contain the indicative. The following points distinguish them: (1) They are used to tell *what kind* of a person or thing the antecedent is. This distinguishes them from **231.** (2) The antecedent must be *indefinite,* or *incomplete in itself,* so that the relative clause is necessary to make complete sense. This distinguishes them from the clauses in **232,** which may also tell what kind of a person or thing the antecedent is. (3) The antecedent must not be a *universal* indefinite (like *every one, any one*), which includes all of a class marked out by a relative clause. This distinguishes them from the relative conditional clauses (**250**).

Characterizing clauses are used especially after such expressions as **is** (**171,** *a,* 3) **est quī, est quī,** *there is a man who;* **nōn** or **nēmō** or **nūllus est quī,** *there is no one who;* **sī quis est quī,** *if there is anyone who;* **quis est quī?** *who is there who?* **sōlus** or **ūnus est quī,** *he is the only man who.* Examples: **is est quī pūgnet,** *he is a man who fights;* **erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent** (Caes. I, 6, 1), *there were only two ways by which they could leave home;* **tam improbus quī nōn fateātur** (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *so villainous as not to admit.*

a. The subjunctive in the characterizing clause is sometimes to be translated by *can, could,* or by *should* (in the sense of *ought*). **Examples:**

ūnum [iter] vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur (Caes. I, 6, 4), *one road by which wagons could be moved,* etc.; **nūlla causa est cūr nōn veniat,** *there is no reason why he should not come.*

DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

231. Determining clauses are indicative relative clauses which are used to tell *who* or *what* the antecedent is, not *what kind* (**230**). Example: **is** (**171,** *a,* 1) **est quī pūgnat,** *he is the* (not *a*) *man who fights.*

PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES

232. A parenthetical relative clause is one which is not needed to make a complete sentence but which is thrown in like a parenthesis to state some fact about a person or thing mentioned in the principal clause. The mode is the same as that of an independent sentence, usually indicative. Such a clause is properly set off by commas, though if the same fact were stated without a relative, parentheses would generally be used. These clauses are very common. Examples: **Dumnorīgī, quī prīncipātum obtinēbat, persuādet** (Caes. I, 3, 15), *he persuaded Dumnorix, who held the chief power;* without a relative this would be **Dumnorīgī (is . . . . obtinēbat) persuādet: Caesar, quī fortis erat, pūgnāvit,** *Caesar, who was brave, fought;* this tells *what kind* of a person Caesar was, but is not a subjunctive characterizing clause because the antecedent is complete in itself. See **230,** (2).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

233. There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. **Cum** must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

While, as long as

234. Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. **Cum** with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

a. **Dum,** *while* (not *as long as*) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time. See **198,** *a,* 2. Example: **dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est** (Caes. I, 46, 1), *while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar.*

b. **Dum, dōnec, quoad,** and **quam diū,** *as long as, while* (in the sense of *as long as*) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb. Example: **quam diū mihi īnsidiātus es, mē dēfendī** (Cic. Cat. I, 11), *as long as you plotted against me I defended myself.*

Until

235. Conjunctions meaning *until* show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. The action of the subordinate clause is therefore subsequent to that of the principal clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of modes.

a. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *until*, are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen. The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: **Gallī fuērunt līberī dum Caesar vēnit,** *the Gauls were free until Caesar came.*

b. The same conjunctions are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen. Examples: **Gallī exspectāvērunt dum Caesar venīret,** *the Gauls waited until Caesar should come,* or *for Caesar to come,* or *until Caesar came.*

Before

236. Conjunctions meaning *before* also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of modes is based is the same as that given in **235**.

a. **Priusquam** and **antequam,** *before,* are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen. The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: **Gallī inter sē pūgnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit,** *the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.*

b. The same conjunctions are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen. Example: **Gallī māgnās cōpiās comparāre cōnātī sunt priusquam Caesar venīret,** *the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive,* or *arrived.*

c. These conjunctions are often written as two words, the **prius** or **ante** standing in the principal clause, and the **quam** at the beginning of the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where quam does. Example: **Gallī prius inter sē pūgnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit,** translated as in *a.*

After

237. Conjunctions meaning *after* represent the subordinate act as taking place before the act of the principal clause. There is therefore no chance for the choice of modes found in **235** and **236,** and the indicative

is always used. For past time the perfect or historical present is always used, although English is apt to use the pluperfect. See **198**, *a*, 1. The conjunctions are **postquam**, *after;* **ut, ubi**, *when* (in the sense of *after*, not in the sense of *while*); **simul āc, cum prīmum**, *as soon as* (*immediately after*). (**Cum** with the pluperfect subjunctive has the same meaning.) Example: **ubi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt** (Caes. I, **7**, 7), *when they were informed of it they sent envoys.*

Cum

238. Cum, *when*, is a relative adverb or conjunction, as is shown by its original form **quom**. The use of modes with it is much the same as with the declined relative. Its antecedent is a word of time, sometimes expressed, usually understood, in the principal clause. Besides the meaning *when*, it has taken on the meanings *since* (causal) and *although* (adversative).

239. Causal and adversative **cum** is used with the subjunctive of all tenses. Compare the causal relative (**245**) and adversative relative (**247**). Examples: **quae cum ita sint, perge** (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *since this is so, go on;* **hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt** (Caes. I, **9**, 3), *since they could not persuade them they sent envoys;* **cum ad vesperum pūgnātum sit** (Caes. I, **26**, 5), *although they fought till evening.*

240. An inaccurate, but convenient, statement for temporal **cum** (*when*) is as follows: temporal **cum** is generally used with the subjunctive of the imperfect and pluperfect tenses when the principal verb is past, always with the indicative of the other tenses when the principal verb is present or future. See examples under **241** and **242**, which give more accurate statements for the same clauses.

241. Indicative Clauses. The indicative is used with temporal **cum** in the following clauses:

a. Clauses of date. These are used strictly to tell *what* time (not *what kind* of time), and correspond exactly to determining relative clauses (**231**). (But a subjunctive is often found where an indicative might be expected.) Example: **cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, prīncipēs erant Aeduī** (Caes. VI, **12**, 1), *at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Aedui were the leaders.* Compare **cum esset** (Caes. II, **1**, 1) which seems almost the same thought.

b. Generalizing (conditional) clauses. In these **cum** means *whenever.* They correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (**250**). (The subjunctive is sometimes used in them. See **242**, *b.*) Example: **haec**

cum dēfixerat contrāria duo statuēbat (Caes. IV, 17, 11), *when he had set them firmly* (in each of several cases) *he would put two others opposite.*

c. Inverted clauses. These are found in sentences which contain an event and a situation and which are more naturally expressed as in **242**, *a.* Sometimes that natural order of expression is inverted, so that the situation is expressed in the principal clause (by an imperfect or pluperfect indicative), and the event in the **cum** clause (by a perfect or historical present indicative). Example: **summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur, cum Cōnsidius accurrit** (compare **242**, *a*, example), *the top of the mountain was in the possession of Labienus, when up rode Considius.*

242. Subjunctive Clauses. The subjunctive is used with temporal **cum** in the following clauses:

a. Situation and narrative clauses. A situation clause describes the situation (condition of things, accompanying circumstances) under which an event took place, the event being told in the principal clause. It corresponds, in some degree, to a characterizing relative clause (**230**). Such a clause almost invariably tells a new point in the narrative, and may therefore be called a narrative clause. Situation and narrative clauses are thus the same thing, but sometimes the one or the other name seems more applicable. In writing Latin, if it seems doubtful whether a clause belongs here or under **241**, *a*, it almost certainly belongs here. (The causal and adversative clauses [**239**] grow out of this clause, because almost every clause which describes the situation gives a reason for [causal] or against [adversative] the main event.) Example: **cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, neque adventus cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius accurrit** (Caes. I, 22, 1), *when the top of the mountain was in the possession of Labienus, and his approach had not been noticed, Considius rode up.*

b. Generalizing clauses. The generalizing clause (**241**, *b*) is sometimes in the subjunctive. Example: **cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere .... poterant** (Caes. I, 25, 8), *when the iron point had bent* (in each of many cases), *it could neither be drawn out,* etc.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions **cum, quod, quia, quoniam,** and **quandō,** or by the relative. The conjunctions **nam, enim, etenim,** *for,* introduce coordinate clauses.

244. Quod, quia, quoniam, and **quandō,** *because, since,* are regularly used with the indicative. But clauses with **quod, quia,** and **quoniam** often give a reason, not on the authority of the writer, but on that of the

person of whom he writes; that is, the reason is quoted. This is an instance of implied indirect discourse (**273**), and the subjunctive must be used. Examples: (with the indicative) **reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt, quod contendunt** (Caes. I, **1**, 13), *they surpass the other Gauls because they fight;* (with the subjunctive) **quod sit dēstitūtus queritur** (Caes. I, **16**, 19), *he complained because* (as he said) *he had been deserted.*

245. **Cum,** *since, because,* and sometimes **quī,** *since he,* etc., are used with the subjunctive. If **praesertim,** *especially,* stands in a subjunctive **cum** or **quī** clause, the clause is probably causal. For examples with **cum** see **239.**

ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

246. **Quamquam,** *although,* and **etsī, tametsī,** *even if, although,* are used with the indicative. (**Quamquam** sometimes introduces an independent sentence, and is then best translated by *and yet.*) Example: **ea, quamquam iam est perīculum dēpulsum, tamen dēfendite** (Cic. Cat. III, 29), *although the danger is now averted, yet defend them.*

247. **Cum,** *although,* and less commonly **quamvīs** (in Cicero), *however much, however, although,* **quī,** *although he,* etc., **ut,** *although,* are used with the subjunctive. Examples: (for **cum** see **239**) **quamvīs senex sit fortis est,** *however old he may be he is brave;* **ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent** (Caes. III, **9**, 17), *though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations.*

SUBSTANTIVE *QUOD* CLAUSES

248. **Quod,** *that,* with the indicative is used to state a fact which is made the subject or object of a verb, or, more commonly, the appositive of a neuter pronoun. It is often interchangeable with the subjunctive **ut** clauses of fact given in **229,** *b.* Example: **illa praetereō, quod Maelium occīdit** (Cic. Cat. I, 3), *I pass over this, that he slew Maelius.*

a. Sometimes the **quod** clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of *as to the fact that, whereas.* Example: **quod ūnum pāgum adortus es, nōlī ob eam rem dēspicere** (compare Caes. I, **13**, 13), *as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account.*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

249. A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a condition and a conclusion; as, *if he comes* (condition) *I shall see him* (conclusion). The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states

the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends. The conclusion is the principal clause.

Connectives

250. The connectives are the conjunctions **sī**, *if*, **sī nōn**, *if not*, **nisi**, *unless*, **sīn**, *but if*, and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense. Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like *anyone*, *everyone*, *always*, *everywhere* (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, *anyone who thinks will see*, means *if anyone thinks he will see*; *whenever I saw him he used to say*, means *if at any time I saw him he used to say*. See **171**, *a*, 2, and compare this use of the relative with those given in **230-232**.

Classes of Conditional Sentences

251. There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time.

The difficulties of Latin conditional sentences disappear as soon as the student can determine exactly what is meant by every form of English conditional sentences. He should notice the English of the example even more carefully than the Latin, and feel clearly just what each English sentence means.

A. Present or Past

252. In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as to the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which implies the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

253. Undetermined Present or Past. In these the form determines nothing as to the truth or falsity of a statement. They are expressed in English and Latin alike, by the present and past tenses of the indicative. Examples: **sī fortis est eum laudō**, *if he is brave I praise him;* **quī fortis est prō patriā pūgnat**, *whoever is brave fights for his country;* **nisi prō patriā pūgnāvit nōn fortis fuit**, *unless he fought for his country he was not brave.*

254. Present and Past Contrary to Fact. In these the form of statement implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled. The imperfect subjunctive is used to ` time, the pluperfect to

express past time (compare the use of tenses in **221,** *b*). Examples: **sī fortis esset eum laudārem,** *if he were brave I should praise,* or *be praising, him* (implying *but he is not, and I do not*); **nisi prō patriā pūgnāvisset eum nōn laudāvissem,** *unless he had* (*if he had not*) *fought for his country I should not have praised him* (implying *but he did, and I do;* the contrary of the negative supposition); **sī pūgnāvisset eum laudārem,** *if he had fought, I should praise,* or *be praising, him* (implying *but he did not, and I do not;* notice the change of tense).

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning *could* or *ought,* or such expressions as *it would be hard,* or *just,* the verb is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or pluperfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact. This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used. Examples: **sī fortis esset pūgnāre poterat,** *if he were brave he could fight* (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); **sī fortis fuisset pūgnāre dēbuit** or **dēbuerat,** *if he had been brave he ought to have fought* (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).

B. Future

255. There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, and could be none, since one can not be sure of a nonfulfillment of a future condition.

256. More confident (vivid) future. This is expressed in Latin by the future or future perfect indicative in both clauses. The English may mislead; for, though it uses the future in the conclusion, it commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. *If I see him I shall tell him,* means *if I shall see him I shall tell him,* and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present, or, at most, the perfect. *If he arrives first he will tell him,* means *if he shall have arrived first,* and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect. Examples: **sī pūgnābit eum laudābō,** *if he fights* or *is fighting* (*shall fight* or *shall be fighting*) *I shall praise him;* **quī pūgnāverit laudābitur,** *whoever fights* or *has fought* (*shall have fought*) *will be praised.*

257. Less confident (vivid) future. This is expressed in English by *if he should,* or *were to, he would . . . ,* and in Latin by the present or

perfect subjunctive in the contingent future (**184**, *b*) meaning. The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in **256**. Examples: **quī pūgnet laudētur,** *whoever should fight,* or *should be fighting, would be praised;* **sī nōn pūgnāverit eum nōn laudem,** *if he should not fight,* or *should not have fought, I should not praise him.*

Mixed Conditions

258. In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another. Example: **sī veniat hīc adsumus,** *if he should come we are here.*

Condition Omitted or Implied

259. Instead of being expressed by a clause as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought. Examples: **victus ad tē veniam,** (*if*) *conquered I shall come to you*; **dīcat,** *he would say* (if he should be asked); **velim,** *I should like.* The last two are simply the independent subjunctive of contingent futurity (**207**).

CLAUSES OF PROVISO

260. Dum, modo, and **dummodo** are used with the subjunctive in the sense of *if only, provided that.* Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often **nē**. This is because the construction originally meant *only let* (*him come: I will,* etc.), and the mode is the subjunctive of desire (**184**, *a*). Examples: **māgnō mē metū līberābis dummodo mūrus intersit** (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will rid me of much fear if only there be* (*only let there be*) *a wall between us;* **modo nē** (or **nōn**) **discēdat eum vidēbō,** *if only he do not leave I shall see him.*

CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

261. The subjunctive is always used with **āc sī, quam sī, quasi, ut sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī,** *as if, just as if.* The English translation might lead one to expect the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, but the tenses follow the rule of sequence. Examples: **currit quasī timeat,** *he runs as if he were afraid;* **cucurrit quasī timēret,** *he ran as if he were afraid.*

INDIRECT QUOTATION

A. Indirect Questions

262. For direct questions see **209–214**. A direct question may be

quoted in the exact words in which it was asked, as *he asked "where are you going?"*: or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as *he asked where I* (or *he*) *was going.* In the latter form it is an indirect question. The mode in all indirect questions is the subjunctive.

263. All the subjunctive questions of **209** and **210** retain the same modal meanings in the indirect form. Examples: **rogō quis veniat,** *I ask who would come;* **rogō quid faciam,** *I ask what I am to do;* **rogāvī quid facerem,** *I asked what I was to do.*

264. All indicative questions change to the subjunctive of fact **(184, c),** which must be translated by an indicative.

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (**212**), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form. Examples: **rogō quis vēnerit,** *I ask who came*; **mihi dīxit ubi esset,** *he told me where he was.*

b. When the direct question can be answered by *yes* or *no* (**213**) the indirect form is introduced by **num** or **-ne,** *whether* (no difference in meaning). **Sī** is also used in the sense of *to see whether* or *whether.* Examples: **rogō num veniat,** *I ask whether he is coming;* **rogāvī vēnissetne,** *I asked whether he had come;* **exspectāvit sī venīrent,** *he waited to see whether they would come.*

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (**214**), but *or not* is expressed by **necne.** Examples: **rogāvī utrum pūgnāvisset an fūgisset,** *I asked whether he had fought or run away;* **rogāvī utrum pūgnāvisset necne,** *I asked whether he had fought or not.*

B. Indirect Discourse

265. *Direct discourse* repeats the exact words of a remark or a thought. Example: *he said, "the soldiers are brave." Indirect discourse* repeats a remark or thought with such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction. Example: *he said that the soldiers were brave.* Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking,* which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse he means a clause that was principal in the direct form.

Principal Clauses

266. Declarative Sentences. Every principal clause containing a

statement requires the infinitive in indirect discourse (**279**). The subject of the infinitive is almost invariably expressed. Example: **mīles est fortis**, *the soldier is brave*, becomes **dīxit mīlitem esse fortem,** *he said that the soldier was brave.*

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see **205.** It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative.

267. Imperative Sentences. Every sentence containing a command requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse. This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is **nē**. Examples: **ad Id. Apr. revertiminī**, *return about the thirteenth of April*, becomes **respondit: . . . . ad Id. Apr. reverterentur** (Caes. I, **7**, 20), *he replied . . . . : (that) they were to return*, etc.; **is ita ēgit: . . . nē . . . . dēspiceret** (Caes. I, **13**, 13), *he should not despise* (from an original **nōlī dēspicere,** *do not despise*).

268. Interrogative Sentences. I. An original indicative question (**209**), if real (**211**), requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse. Example: **respondit: . . . quid sibi vellet** (Caes. I, **44,** 25), *what did he want* (for an original **quid tibi vīs,** *what do you want*)*?*

II. An original indicative question (**209**), if rhetorical (**211**), requires the infinitive in indirect discourse; for it is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (**266**). Example: **respondit: . . . num memoriam dēpōnere posse** (Caes. I, **14,** 8), *could he forget* (for an original *I can not forget* [*can I?*])*?*

III. An original subjunctive question (**209, 210**), whether real or rhetorical, remains subjunctive in indirect discourse. Example: **incūsāvit: . . . cūr quisquam iūdicāret** (Caes. I, **40,** 6), *why should anyone suppose* (for an original **iūdicet.** See **210,** *a*)*?*

Subordinate Clauses

269. Every original indicative or subjunctive subordinate clause requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse. Infinitives remain unchanged. Example: **incūsāvit: . . . ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod . . . superāssent** (Caes. I, **40,** 18), *from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered* (for original **iūdicārī, potest, habeat, superāvistis**).

a. But a coordinate relative clause (**222,** *a*), being equivalent to a clause connected by **et,** or some other coordinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under **269**: since **quō** connects with the preceding sentence **posse** might have been a subjunctive.

Tenses of the Subjunctive

270. The tenses of the subjunctive have the same meanings and follow the same rule in indirect discourse as elsewhere (**200-204**). The quotation depends on the verb of *saying* or *thinking* and is in primary sequence if that verb is primary, secondary if it is secondary.

a. But after a past verb of *saying* or *thinking* the quoter very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. Example: **respondit: . . . cum ea ita sint . . . sēsē pācem esse factūrum** (Caes. I, **14**, 17), *he replied . . . that although these things are so he will make peace.*

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of saying or thinking; for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present. Example: **dīcit Caesarem laudātum esse quod fortis esset,** *he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave.* (Notice that the English is *was,* not *is.*)

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful; keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence. So for example a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after **dīcit,** imperfect after **dīxit,** in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after **dīcit,** pluperfect after **dīxit,** in either case retaining the perfect stem.

Other Changes

271. If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of **suī** or **suus** (rarely of **ipse**). All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English. Example: **hunc mīlitem laudō,** *I praise this soldier,* may become **dīcō mē hunc mīlitem laudāre,** *I say that I praise this soldier,* or **dīcit sē illum mīlitem laudāre,** *he says that he praises that soldier.* Adverbs will be changed in the same way, *now* to *then, here* to *there,* etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

Conditions in Indirect Discourse

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its

verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to **266, *a*.** The present and perfect subjunctive of less confident future conclusions become the future infinitive, in **-ūrus esse.** The imperfect and pluperfect of conclusions contrary to fact becomes an infinitive not elsewhere used, in **-ūrus fuisse**; but the imperfect sometimes becomes the future infinitive, in **-ūrus esse.**

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. **Sī pūgnāret eum laudārem,** *if he were fighting I should praise him,* becomes, after either **dīcit** or **dīxit, sī pūgnāret sē eum laudātūrum fuisse** (or **esse**); **sī pūgnāvisset eum laudāvissem,** *if he had fought I should have praised him,* becomes, after either **dīcit** or **dīxit, sī pūgnāvisset sē eum laudātūrum fuisse.**

C. Implied Indirect Discourse

273. A sentence often implies that its subordinate clause is a quotation even if there is no verb of saying or thinking. The verb of that subordinate clause must be a subjunctive. This is especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses or substantive clauses of purpose, and is more common in Cicero than in Caesar. Examples: **Sulpicium mīsī quī, sī quid tēlōrum esset, efferret** (Cic. Cat. III, 8), *I sent Sulpicius to bring out whatever weapons there were;* the original words were *bring out whatever weapons there are* (**est**): **ut salūtī providerētis, cum maleficium vidērētis** (Cic. Cat. III, 4), *that you might look out for safety when you should see the evil;* not to be mistaken for the ordinary subjunctive with **cum**; the original thought was *they shall look out for safety when they shall see* (**vidēbunt**). See also **244.**

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

274. Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive. This is called attraction. Example: **essent** (Caes. I, **27,** 5), a determining clause (**231**).

THE INFINITIVE

(For the tenses of the infinitive see **205.**)

A. Without Subject Accusative

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

275. Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning, just as they do in English. Such an infinitive may be used with verbs meaning *be able, be*

accustomed, attempt, begin, cease, determine, ought, wish, and the like. Some of these verbs are intransitive; with others the infinitive may be regarded as taking the place of a direct object. Examples: **īre potest,** *he can go;* **īre potuit,** *he could have gone,* literally *he was able to go;* **cōnstituērunt comparāre** (Caes. I, **3**, 2), *they determined to prepare.*

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb. Example: **fortis esse cōnātur,** *he tries to be brave.*

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

276. The infinitive without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as **decet, libet, licet, oportet, placet,** and of **est** in such expressions as **necesse est, satis est.** (The infinitive with these verbs often has an expressed accusative subject. See **278.**) Examples: **īre oportet,** *one must go,* literally *to go is right;* **īre oportuit,** *one ought to have gone* (**205**, *a*), literally *to go was right;* **eī īre licuit,** *he might have gone,* literally *to go was permitted to him.*

a. A subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, and a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accusative. But **licet** governs the dative and the predicate is usually dative. Examples: **fortem esse oportet,** *one ought to be brave;* **virō licet esse fortī,** *a man may be brave,* literally *it is permitted to a man to be brave.*

B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

277. The infinitive with a subject accusative (**123**) forms an infinitive clause (**186**).

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT

278. The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) with subject accusative is used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in **276**. Examples: **mē īre oportet,** *I ought to go;* **Caesarem īre oportuit,** *Caesar ought to have gone* (**205**, *a*).

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT

279. The most common use of the infinitive clause is as the object of verbs which mean either *to ascertain a fact* or *to have knowledge of a fact* or *to make a fact known.* All tenses of the infinitive are used. This is the indirect discourse construction. For examples see **205** and **266.**

a. When these verbs are made passive either the personal construction or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more common, except with a few such expressions as **dictum est,** *it has been said.*

Examples: (personal) **Caesar vēnisse fertur,** *Caesar is said to have come;* (impersonal) **Caesarem vēnisse dictum est,** *it has been said that Caesar came.*

280. Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following verbs.

a. Regularly with **iubeō,** *order,* **vetō,** *forbid,* **patior, sinō,** *permit,* which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (**228,** *a*). Example: **mīlitēs pūgnāre iussit,** *he ordered the soldiers to fight.*

b. With **volō, nōlō, mālō, cupiō,** regularly when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when it is the same (compare **275**). Examples: **volō eum īre,** *I wish him to go;* **cupiō mē esse clementem** (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I desire to be merciful.*

c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of *hoping* and *promising,* though the complementary infinitive (**275**) may be used. Example: **spērat se esse ventūrum,** *he hopes to come.* But compare **posse spērant** (Caes. I, **3,** end).

C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

281. The Historical Infinitive is used in lively narrative like an independent past tense of the indicative, with its subject in the nominative. Example: **cotīdiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre,** *Caesar daily demanded the grain.*

PARTICIPLES

282. Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (**156**). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (**158**). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see **205.**

283. Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coordinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating. Examples: **victus fūgit** may mean *he was conquered and fled, when he had been conquered he fled,* or *because he had been conquered he fled;* **victus fugiet** may be translated by similar clauses, or by *if he is conquered he will flee.* See also the examples under **150.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

284. The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English verbal adjective in *-ing,* but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as *seeing*, usually, and such forms as *being seen*, always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle.

1. They are often used where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. For example: *seeing this he fled*, means *having seen*, etc., and may be translated **hōc vīsō** (**150**) **fūgit.**

2. They are very often used where Latin uses **dum** with the present indicative (**234**, *a*,) or **cum** with the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (**242**, *a*). Examples: *he was killed* (*while*) *fighting*, either **dum pūgnat occīsus est,** or **cum pūgnāret occīsus est;** *seeing this he fled*, **cum hōc vīdissēt fūgit.**

b. Remember that *he is running* is always **currit,** never **est currēns.**

285. FUTURE PARTICIPLES

I. The future active participle is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of **sum,** making either the active periphrastic conjugation (**75** and **196**) or the future active infinitive.

II. The gerundive in some uses is the equivalent of a future passive participle, and is sometimes so named. (For the other gerundive construction see **288.**)

a. It is used with the verb **sum** to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (**76**). This denotes duty or necessity; as **laudandus est,** *he is to be praised, he must* (*ought, deserves to*) *be praised.* The English form is usually active: remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (**118**). Examples: **Caesar est mihi laudandus,** *I must praise Caesar*, literally, *Caesar must be praised by me;* **mihi pūgnandum fuit** (impersonal), *I had to fight*, literally *it had to be fought by me.*

b. The gerundive is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning *to have* (a thing done) or *to undertake* (to do a thing); especially **cūrō,** *have* (literally *take care*), **dō,** *give over,* **suscipiō,** *undertake.* Examples: **pontem faciendum cūrat** (Caes. I, 13, 2), *he has a bridge made:* **cōnsulibus senātus rem pūblicam dēfendendam dedit,** *the senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls.*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as *having been seen*, but no perfect active participle (but see *a*), corresponding to such English forms as *having seen.* The English

perfect active participle with a direct object can usually be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, **150**). Examples: **vīsus fūgit,** *having been seen he fled;* **Caesare vīsō fūgit,** *having seen Caesar he fled;* literally, *Caesar having been seen he fled.* See also **150.**

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in **286** is not to be made. Example: **Caesarem cōnspicātus fūgit,** *having seen Caesar he fled.*

b. Besides the ordinary compound tenses of the passive, the perfect participle is sometimes used with **habeō.** This emphasizes the resulting fact rather than the past act. Example: **māgnās cōpiās coēgit,** *he collected great forces;* **māgnās cōpiās coāctās habuit,** same translation, but implies *he had collected large forces and still had them.*

c. Note the translation of such phrases as **post urbem conditam,** *after the founding of the city;* literally, *after the city founded.*

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal noun in *-ing,* except that it does not so commonly govern a direct object (see **289**). It does regularly govern any other case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb. Examples: **fugiendī causā** (**99**, *a*), *for the sake of fleeing;* **ad persuādendum eī** (**115**), *for persuading him;* **urbem videndī causā,** *for the sake of seeing the city.*

GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is a passive adjective. In attributive (**156**) agreement with a noun it forms the so-called gerundive construction, which is commonly used in place of the gerund with a direct object. (For its other uses see **285**, II.) In this construction the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. There is no exact English equivalent; the translation is the same as for a gerund with a direct object. For example, the gerund **urbem videndī causā** and the gerundive **urbis videndae causā** (literally, *for the sake of the city to be seen*) both mean *for the sake of seeing the city.*

CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

289. If the verb is intransitive the gerund must be used; for the gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive

only impersonally. If the verb is used transitively the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition. A direct object may be used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition.

USE OF CASES

290. Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

291. The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives. With **causā** and **grātiā** it forms a common expression of purpose. Examples: **bellandī cupiditās,** *a desire of fighting;* **Caesaris** (or **Caesarem**) **videndī cupidus,** *desirous of seeing Caesar;* **bellandī causā vēnit,** *he came to fight (for the sake of fighting).*

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun an irregular construction is used,—**meī, tuī, suī, nostrī,** or **vestrī** with a genitive in **-ī** (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number. Example: **suī cōnservandī causā,** *for the sake of saving themselves.* The usual gerund would be **sē cōnservandī;** the gerundive, **suī cōnservandōrum.**

292. The Dative is very rare.

293. The Accusative is used with a few prepositions, especially **ad.** With **ad** it often expresses purpose. Examples: **parātus ad proficiscendum,** *ready to set out;* **ad Caesarem videndum** (gerundive, see **289**), *he came to see Caesar.*

294. The Ablative is used, with the prepositions **ab, dē, ex, in** and as the ablative of means or cause. Examples: **in quaerendō reperiēbat,** *in questioning (them) he learned;* **lapidibus subministrandīs** (Caes. III, **25**, 4), *by furnishing stones.*

THE SUPINE

295. The Accusative of the supine is used, not very commonly, after verbs of motion to express purpose. It may govern a direct object. Examples: **grātulātum vēnērunt,** *they came to congratulate him;* **lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium** (Caes. I, **11**, 5), *they sent envoys to ask aid.*

296. The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification (**149**). It does not take a direct object. It is used chiefly of the verbs **audiō, cōgnōscō, dīcō, faciō, videō,** and with the adjectives **facilis, difficilis, crēdibilis, incrēdibilis, iūcundus, iniūcundus, optimus, mīrābilis,** and the expressions **fās est, nefās est, opus est.** For example see **149.**

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary the declension of nouns is indicated by the ending of the genitive. The figures 1, 2, and 4, after verbs, indicate that the principal parts are formed like those of **laudō, moneō,** and **audiō,** respectively. If the principal parts are otherwise formed they are given in full. The supine in **-um** is given as the fourth form, although the nominative singular masculine of the perfect passive participle is now more commonly given. It is true that the supine of many verbs is not found in extant literature; but the nominative masculine of the perfect passive participle from intransitive verbs (e. g. **ventus**) is not even theoretically possible. Furthermore, there seems to be no justification for including a passive form among the active principal parts.

A

A., *see* **Aulus**

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.,* from, by, on the side of

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, put away, withdraw, hide

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead away

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold from, keep from

absum, -esse, āfuī, be away *or* distant

āc, *see* **atque** (**āc** *is used only before consonants*)

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go to, approach, be added

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, fall to *or* upon, befall, happen

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**capiō**], take to, receive, accept

accurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, run *or* hasten to

accūsō, 1 [**causa**], call to account, reprimand, accuse

aciēs, -ēī, F., battle line

ācriter, *adv.,* sharply

ad, *prep. with acc.,* to, toward, against, near; (*with numerals*) *adv.,* about

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead *or* bring to, influence

adgredior, *see* **aggredior**

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, bring in, summon

admīror, 1, wonder at, admire

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send to, let in, let go, allow

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, rise against, attack

adscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, take to, receive, adopt

adsum, -esse, -fuī, be at hand *or* near, be present, assist

adventus, -ūs, M. [**veniō**], a coming to, arrival, approach

adversus, -a, -um (*perf. pass. part. of* **advertō**), turned to, over against, opposite, unfavorable

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, turn to *or* towards

aedificium, -ī, N., a building

Aeduus, -ī, M., an Aeduan

aegerrimē, *adv.* (*sup. of* **aegrē**), with the greatest difficulty

Aemilius, -ī, M., *a Roman name*

aequō, 1, make even *or* equal

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**ad** + **faciō**], do something to, treat, affect

affinitās, -ātis, F., alliance by marriage

ager, agrī, M., field, territory

aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [**ad** + **gradior,** step], go to, approach, attack

agmen, -inis, N., an army (*on the march*)

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, put in motion, drive, do, discuss

aliēnus, -a, -um [**alius**], another's, foreign, unfavorable

aliquī (-quis), -qua, -quod (-quid), some, any

alius, -a, -ud, another, other (*of more than two*)

Allobrogēs, -um, M., *a powerful Gallic people between the Rhone and Isere*

alō, alere, aluī, alitum (altum), nourish, sustain

Alpēs, -ium, F., the Alps

alter, -era, -erum, one (*of two*), the other, second

altitūdō, -inis, F. [**altus**], height, depth

altus, -a, -um, high, deep

Ambarrī, -ōrum, M., *clients of the Aeduans, between the Saone and Rhone*

amīcitia, -ae, F. [**amīcus**], friendship

amīcus, -a, -um, friendly; (*as subst.*) M., friend

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send away, let go, lose

amor, -ōris, M. [**amō**], love, desire

amplus, -a, -um, large *or* full, ample

anceps, -cipitis [**ambō,** both + **caput,** head], two-headed, twofold, doubtful

angustiae, -ārum, F. [**angō,** squeeze], narrowness, a narrow pass *or* defile

angustus, -a, -um [**angō**], narrow

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, attend to, punish

animus, -ī, M., soul, mind, feeling, spirit, courage

annus, -ī, M., a year

annuus, -a, -um, for a year, annual

ante, *adv. or prep. with acc.*, before

anteā, *adv.*, formerly

antīquus, -a, -um [**ante**], ancient, former

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum, uncover, open, disclose

appellō, 1, call (*by name*), address

Aprīlis, -e, of April, April

apud, *prep. with acc.*, among, near, with

Aquilēia, -ae, F., Aquileia

Aquitānī, -ōrum, M., the Aquitani, Aquitanians

Aquitānia, -ae, F., Aquitania

Arar, Araris, M., the Saone (*a Gallic river*)

arbitror, 1 [**arbiter,** a judge], decide, think

arma, -ōrum, N., arms

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsum [**ad**+**scandō**, climb], climb up, ascend
ascēnsus, -ūs, M., a climbing up, ascent
atque (**āc**), *conj.*, and also, and
attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum [**ad**+**tangō**, touch], touch *or* border upon, lie near to, reach
auctōritās, -ātis, F., influence, authority, advice
audācia, -ae, F. [**audāx**], boldness
audācter, *adv.*, boldly
audeō, audēre, ausus sum, be bold, dare
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, increase
Aulus (*abbr.* **A.**), Aulus, *a Roman name*
aut, *conj.*, or: **aut . . . aut,** either .... or
autem, *conj.*, on the other hand, but, moreover
auxilium, -ī, N [**augeō**], help, aid; (*in pl.*) auxiliaries
āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, turn off *or* away
avus, -ī, M., grandfather

B

Belgae, -ārum, M., the Belgae, Belgians, *a powerful people of Northeastern Gaul*
bellō, 1, make *or* wage war, fight
bellicōsus, -a, -um, full of war, warlike
beneficium, -ī, N., kindness, benefit
Bibracte, -is, N., Bibracte
bīduum, -ī, N., two days
biennium, -ī, N. [**annus**], two years
bipartītō, *adv.* [**pars**], in two divisions
Biturīgēs, -um, M., the Bituriges
Bōii, -ōrum, M., the Boii
bonitās, -ātis, F. [**bonus**], goodness, fertility
bonus, -a, -um, morally good, good
bracchium, -ī, N., the forearm

C

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, fall
Caesar, Caesaris, M., *full name* **Gāius Iulius Caesar** (*See p. 12*)
C. (*abbr. for* **Gāius**), Caius *or* Gaius, *a Roman name*
calamitās, -ātis, F., disaster, defeat
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, take, seize
caput, capitis, N., head
carrus, -ī, M., cart
Cassiānus, -a, -um, Cassian, of Cassius
Cassius, -ī, M., *a Roman name*
castellum, -ī, N. [*diminutive of* **castrum**], a small fort, fortress, redoubt
Casticus, -ī, M., Casticus
castra, -ōrum, N. [**castrum,** fort], a fortified camp, camp
cāsus, -ūs [**cadō**], a falling, fall, accident, calamity, chance
Catamantāloedis, -is, M., *a Sequanian chief*
Caturīgēs, -um, M., the Caturiges
causa, -ae, F., cause, reason
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, take precautions
celeriter (*comp.* **celerius,** *sup.* **celerrimē**), *adv.* quickly
Celtae, -ārum, M., the Celts

centum, *indecl. num.*, one hundred
cēnsus, -ūs, M., enumeration
certus, -a, -um, sure, certain: **aliquem certiōrem facere,** to inform some one
Ceutronēs, -um, M., the Ceutrones
cibārius, -a, -um, pertaining to food; (*as subst.*) **cibāria, -ōrum,** N., food, provisions
circiter, *adv.*, about
circuitus, -ūs, M. [circum+eō], a going round, circuit
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around, about
circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround
citerior, -ōris, *comp. adj.* (*no positive*), nearer, hither
citrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, this side, within
cīvitās, -ātis, F., citizenship, state, citizens
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, shut, close
cliēns, -entis, M. F., client, dependent
coemō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, purchase
coepī, coepisse, *defect. verb*, began
coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, control
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, drive together, collect, compel
cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, learn thoroughly; (*in perf.*) have learned, know
cohortor, 1, urge earnestly, exhort, encourage
colligō, 1, bind together
collis, -is, M., hill
collocō, 1, place together, station: **nūptum collocāre,** to give in marriage
colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, speak together, converse
combūrō, -būrere, -būssī, -būstum, burn up, consume
commemorō, 1, recount, state, mention
commeō, 1, resort to *or* visit (*frequently*)
committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send together, commit, combine, join
commodē, *adv.*, conveniently
commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, remind forcibly
commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move deeply, disturb, excite
commūniō, 4, fortify completely, intrench
commūtātiō, -ōnis, F., a changing, change
commūtō, 1, change entirely, reverse
comparō, 1, prepare, furnish, equip
comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, ascertain
complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, embrace
compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill, fill up, complete
complūrēs, -a (-ia), several, many
comportō, bring *or* carry together
cōnātum, -ī, N., *or* **cōnātus, -ūs,** M., trial, attempt
concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go away, give way, yield
concīdo, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down, slay
conciliō, 1, call together, win over, conciliate

concilium, -ī, N., assembly, council

concursus, -ūs, M., running together, onset

condiciō, -ōnis, F., a speaking together, agreement, terms

condōnō, 1, pardon

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead *or* bring together, hire

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, bring together, collect, compare: **sē cōnferre,** to retreat

cōnfertus, -a, -um, crowded

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, do thoroughly, complete, accomplish

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, trust in, rely on

cōnfīrmō, 1, make firm, establish, assure, promise

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw together, conjecture

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F. [**iūrō,** swear], a swearing together, conspiracy

cōnor, 1, try, attempt

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, search out

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, related by blood; (*as subst.*) M., kinsman

cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, decree, appoint

cōnscius, -a, -um [**sciō**], knowing, conscious

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, write together, enroll, levy

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue, obtain

Cōnsidius, -ī, M., Considius

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, settle, encamp

cōnsilium, -ī, N., counsel, plan

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, take a stand, stand still, stop

cōnsōlor, 1, console, comfort, solace

cōnspectus, -ūs, M. [**cōnspiciō**], a looking at, sight

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, see, perceive

cōnspicor, 1, perceive

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [**statuō,** set], set together, arrange, determine

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, accustom, habituate; (*in perf.*) to have become (=be) accustomed, be wont

cōnsul, -ulis, M., consul

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, destroy, consume

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum [**tendō,** stretch], stretch tight, strive, fight, hasten

continenter, *adv.* [**contineō**], continuously

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**teneō**], hold together, bind

contrā, *prep. with acc., and adv.,* opposite, against

contumēlia, -ae, F., affront, indignity

conveniō, -venīrē, -vēnī, -ventum, come together, meet, assemble: **convenit** (*impers.*), it is fitting, it is agreed

conventus, -ūs, M., a coming together, assembly

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, turn: **signa convertere,** change front, wheel about

convocō, 1, call together, summon, assemble

cōpia, -ae, F., plenty; (*in pl.*) forces, troops

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, well supplied, plentiful, abounding

cotīdiānus (quo-), -a, -um, daily, usual

cotīdiē (quo-), *adv.*, daily

Crassus, -ī, M., Crassus

creō, 1, create, elect, appoint

cremō, 1, burn to ashes, consume

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, grow, increase

cultus, -ūs, M. [colō, cultivate], style of living, civilization, culture

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with

cum (quum), *conj.*, when, since, although

cupidē, *adv.*, eagerly

cupiditās, -ātis, F., eager desire, longing, cupidity

cupidus, -a, -um, desirous of, eager for

cupiō, -ere, -īvī (-ii), -ītum, desire, favor

cūrō, 1, care for; (*with object and gerundive*), have (*App.* **285,** *b*)

custōs, -ōdis, M. F., guard, sentinel

D

damnō, 1, condemn

dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from, for, concerning

dēbēo, 2 [dē+habeō], have *or* keep from, owe, be bound

decem, *indecl. num.*, ten

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, entrap, deceive

decuriō, -ōnis, M., (*the leader of a squad of ten cavalry*) a decurion

dēditīcius, -a, -um, surrendered; (*as subst.*) prisoner

dēditiō, -ōnis, F., a giving up, surrender

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, keep *or* ward off, defend

dēfessus, -a, -um (*perf. part. of* **dēfetīscor**), wearied, exhausted

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw *or* cast down, dislodge

deinde, *adv.*, then (*of consequence or sequence*)

dēlīberō, 1, ponder, deliberate

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [legō, choose], pick out, select

dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum [minus], lessen, diminish

dēmōnstrō, 1, show plainly, point out

dēmum, *adv.*, at length

dēnique, *adv.*, at length, lastly

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, place *or* lay aside

dēpopulor, 1, ravage, lay waste

dēprecātor, -ōris, M., mediator

dēsignō, 1, signify

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, stand off, abandon

dēspērō, 1 [**spēs,** hope], be hopeless, despair

dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look down on, despise

dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [statuō], set aside, forsake, abandon

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum [stringō, draw], draw off, unsheathe, draw

dēterreō, 2, frighten off, deter, discourage

deus, -ī, M., a god

dexter, -tra (-tera), -trum, the right: **dextra** (*supply* **manus,** hand), the right hand

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, say, tell, speak
dictiō, -ōnis, F., a speaking, pleading, delivery
diēs, -ēī, M. *or* F., day, a set day *or* time
differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, carry *or* bear apart, differ, defer
difficilis, -e [dis+facilis], not easy, difficult
dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send apart, dismiss
dis-, dī-, *an inseparable prefix with the force of* apart, asunder
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go apart, separate
discō, discere, didicī, learn
disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw apart, cast asunder
dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, place apart, arrange
dītissimus, -a, -um (*sup. of* **dīves**), richest
diū, *adv.*, for a long time
diūturnus -a -um, [diū], of long duration, long
Dīviciācus, -ī, M., *an Aeduan chief*
Dīvicō, -ōnis, M., *a Helvetian chief*
dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsum, divide, separate
dō, dare, dedī, datum, give
doleō, 2, suffer pain, grieve
dolor, -ōris, M., pain, grief
dolus, -ī, M., treachery, deceit
domus, -ūs, house, home: **domī,** at home
dubitō, 1, doubt, hesitate
dubitātiō, -ōnis, F., hesitation
dubius, -a, -um, doubtful
ducentī, -ae, -a [duo+centum], two hundred
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, lead, draw, consider
dum, *conj.*, while, until
Dumnorīx, -igis, M., *an Aeduan chief*
duo, duae, duo, two
duodecim [decem], *indecl. num.*, twelve
dux, ducis [dūcō], M. F., leader, guide

E

ē, ex, *prep. with abl.*, from, out of
ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead forth, draw out
effēminō, 1, weaken, enervate
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, bear away *or* out, lift up, elate
ego (*dat.*, **mihi,** *acc.*, **mē**), I
ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, go out, march forth
ēgregius, -a, -um, preeminent
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy
ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send forth, discharge
enim, *conj.*, for
ēnūntiō, 1, tell out, reveal, report
eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, go
eō, *adv.*, to that place, thither
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place
eques, equitis, rider, horseman, knight; (*in pl.*) cavalry
equester, -tris, -tre [eques], belonging to a horseman, cavalry, equestrian
equitātus, -ūs, M., cavalry
equus, -ī, M., horse
ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum [rapiō], snatch away, rescue: **sē ēripere,** to escape
et, *conj.*, and
etiam, *conj.*, and also, even

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, pull *or* tear out
ex, *see* **ē**
exemplum, -ī, N., example
exercitus, -ūs [exerceō, exercise], an exercised, trained body, an army
exeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum, go out
existimō, 1, reckon, think
existimātiō, -ōnis, F., opinion
expediō, 4 **[pēs]**, extricate; (*in perf. pass. part.*) unencumbered, (*of troops*) without baggage
explōrātor, -ōris, M. **[explōrō,** investigate], scout, spy
expūgnō, 1, take by storm, overpower
exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow out *or* up, enforce
exspectō, 1, look out, await, expect
extrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, without, beyond
extrēmus, -a, -um (*sup. from* **exter**), outermost, furthest, extreme
exūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum, burn up

F

facile, *used as adv.*, easily
facilis, -e, easy
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, make, do
facultās, -ātis, F. **[faciō]**, means *or* opportunity of doing, opportunity, means
famēs, -is, F., hunger, want
familia, -ae, F., slaves of a household, household, retinue
familiāris, -e [familia], belonging to the household, private; (*as subst.*) friend: **rēs familiāris,** private property
faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, favor
ferē, *adv.*, almost
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, carry, bring, inflict
ferrum, -ī, N., iron
fidēs, -eī, F., confidence, faith, assurance of good faith, protection
fīlia, -ae, F., daughter
fīlius, -ī, M., son
fīnis, -is, M., end, limit, boundary; (*in pl.*) territory, confines
fīnitimus, -a, -um [fīnis], bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring; (*as subst.*) neighbors
fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made *or* done, happen (*used as pass. of* **faciō**)
fīrmus, -a, -um, strong, firm
flāgitō, 1, demand repeatedly, press for
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, weep
flūmen, -inis, N. **[fluō]**, a flowing stream, river
fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxum, flow
fortis, -e, strong, brave
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely
fortitūdō, -inis, F. **[fortis]**, bravery
fortūna, -ae, F., chance, fortune
fossa, -ae, F. **[fodiō,** dig], ditch, trench
frāter, frātris, M., brother
frāternus, -a, -um, pertaining to a brother, brotherly, fraternal
frīgus, -oris, N., coldness, cold
frūctus, -ūs, M., enjoyment, crops, fruit
frūmentārius, -a, -um [frūmentum], abounding in grain, fruitful

frūmentum, -ī, N., grain
fuga, -ae, F. [fugiō, flee], flight
fugitīvus, -ī, M., deserter

G

Gabīnius, -ī, M., *a Roman name*
Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul
Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic
Gallus, -ī, M., a Gaul
Garumna, -ae, M., the Garonne (*a river of Gaul*)
Genāva, -ae, F., Geneva
Germānī, -ōrum, M., the Germans
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, carry on, wage, do
gladius, -ī, M., sword
glōria, -ae, F., glory
glōrior, 1, glory, boast
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek, Grecian
Grāiocelī, -ōrum, M., the Graioceli
grātia, -ae, F., favor, popularity
graviter, *adv.* [**gravis**], heavily, severely: **graviter ferre,** be annoyed *or* vexed

H

habeō, 2, have, hold
Helvētia, -ae, F., Helvetia (*now Switzerland*)
Helvētii, -ōrum, M., the Helvetii, Helvetians
Helvētius (Helvēticus), -a, -um, of the Helvetii, Helvetian
hīberna, -ōrum, N., winter quarters (*supply* **castra**)
hīc, haec, hōc, this
hiemō, 1 [**hiems,** winter], pass the winter
Hispānia, -ae, F., Spain
homō, -inis, M. F., a human being, man
honor, -ōris, M., honor, distinction, office
hōra, -ae, F., hour
hortor, 1, arouse, urge
hostis, -is, M. F., stranger, (*public*) enemy; (*in pl.*) the enemy
hūmānitās, -ātis, F., refinement

I (*vowel*)

ibi, *adv.*, in that place, there
ictus, -ūs, M., stroke, blow
īdem, eadem, idem, the same
Īdūs, -uum, F. (*pl.*), the Ides
īgnis, -is, M., fire
īgnōrō, 1 [**in,** *neg.* +**gnārus,** knowing], not know, be ignorant
ille, illa, illud, that (*used of what is remote*)
illīc [**ille**], *adv.*, there
immortālis, -e, immortal
impedīmentum, -ī, N., impediment, hindrance; (*in pl.*) heavy baggage, baggage-train
impediō, 4, obstruct, hamper
impendeō, -ēre [**pendeō,** hang], overhang, impend
imperium, -ī, N., a command, right of command, supreme power
imperō, 1, command, enjoin, make requisition for
impetrō, 1, obtain by entreaty, accomplish
impetus, -ūs, M. [**petō**], attack, assault
importō, 1, bring in, import
improbus, -a, -um, base, wicked
imprōvīsō, *adv.* [**prō+vīsus,** seen], unawares, unexpectedly
impūne, *adv.* [**in+poena,** punishment], without punishment, with impunity

impūnitās, -ātis, F., freedom from punishment, impunity
in, *prep. with acc.* (*of motion*), into, to, against; *with abl.* (*of rest*), in, on, over
in- (**im-, un-,** *etc.*), *inseparable negative particle,* not
incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, set fire to
incitō, 1 [**citō,** urge], urge on, incite
incolō, -colere, -coluī, -cultum [**colō,** cultivate], dwell in, inhabit
incommodum, -ī, N. [**commodus,** convenient], an inconvenience, disadvantage, disaster
incrēdibilis, -e [**crēdō,** believe], incredible
inde, *adv.,* from that place, thence
indicium, -ī, N., information, evidence
indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead in *or* into, lead on, induce
īnferior, -ius [**īnferus**], lower (*in place*); later (*in time*)
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum, bring into *or* upon, wage upon, attack
īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, bend in, curve
īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxum, flow into, flow
inimīcus, -a, -um [**amīcus**], unfriendly
initium, -ī, N. [**in+eō**], beginning
iniūria, -ae, F. [**iūs,** right], wrong, injustice
iniussū, M. (*abl. of assumed* **iniussus**), without command
inopia, -ae, F., need
inopīnāns, -antis, unawares
īnsciēns, -entis [**sciō,** know], not knowing, unaware
īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue
īnsidiae, -ārum, F., ambuscade, treachery
īnsīgnis, -e, remarkable; (*as subst.*) N., sign, decoration
īnsolenter, *adv.,* insultingly
īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, set up, establish
īnstitūtum, -ī, N., an established course, custom, institution
īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, stand upon *or* near, approach, attack
īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, build, draw up
intellegō (**-ligō**), **-legere, -lēxī, -lēctum,** learn, understand
inter, *prep. with acc.,* between, among
intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go between, interpose, intercede
interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut off
interdiū, *adv.,* during the day, by day
interdum, *adv.,* between whiles, sometimes
intereā, *adv.,* meanwhile
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill
interim, *adv.,* meanwhile
intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, leave *or* break off, interrupt
interneciō, -ōnis, F., extermination
interpres, -etis, M. F., interpreter
intersum, -esse, -fuī, be between, intervene

intervāllum, -ī, N., interval
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *int. pron.*, self, himself, herself, *etc.*
is, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, this, that, he, she, it, *unemphatic*
ita, *adv.*, so, thus
Ītalia, -ae, F., Italy
itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore
item, *adv.*, in like manner, likewise, so also
iter, itineris, N. [eō, go], a going, way, journey, march

I (*consonant*)

iactō, 1, toss, discuss
iam, *adv.*, now, already, at length
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, order
iūdicium, -ī, N., a judging, judgment, court
iūdicō, 1, judge
iugum, -ī, N., yoke, ridge
iūmentum, -ī, N., yoke *or* draught animal, beast of burden
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, join
Iūra, -ae, M., *the mountain range running from the Rhine to the Rhone*
iūs, iūris, N., right, justice, law
iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, N., oath
iūstitia, -ae, F., justice
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, help, aid: **iuvat** (*impers.*) it pleases

K

Kalendae (Calendae), -ārum, F., the Calends (*the first day of a month*)

L

L., *see* **Lūcius**
Labiēnus, -ī, M., *one of Caesar's lieutenants*
lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, provoke, challenge, assault
lacrima, -ae, F., tear
lacus, -ūs, M., lake
largior, 4, give freely, bribe
largiter, *adv.*, largely, freely
largītiō, -ōnis, F., giving freely, bribery
lātē, *adv.* [**lātus**], broadly, widely
lātitūdō, -inis, F. [**lātus**], width
Latobrīgī, -ōrum, M., the Latobrigi
lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide
latus, -eris, N., side, flank
lēgātiō, -ōnis, F., embassy
lēgātus, -ī, M., ambassador, lieutenant
legiō, -ōnis, F., legion
Lemannus, -ī, M., *lake* Leman *or* Geneva
lēnitās, -ātis, F., smoothness, gentleness
lēx, lēgis, F., law
līberālitās, -ātis, F., generosity, liberality
līberē, *adv.*, freely
līberī, -ōrum, M., children
lībertās, -ātis, F., freedom, liberty
liceor, 2, bid (*at an auction*)
licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.*, it is permitted
Lingonēs, -um, M., the Lingones
lingua, -ae, F., tongue, language
linter, lintris, F., canoe, ferry-boat
Liscus, -ī, M., *a chief of the Aedui*
littera (lītera), -ae, F., a letter of the alphabet; (*in pl.*) a letter (*epistle*)

locus, -ī, M. (*in pl.*, N.), place
longē, *adv.* [**longus,** long], far, by far, long
longitūdō, -inis, F. [**longus**], length
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak
Lūcius, -ī (*abbr.* **L.**), M., *a Roman name*
lūx, lūcis, F., light

M

M., *see* **Mārcus**
magis, *comp. adv.* (*sup.* **māximē**), more, rather
magistrātus, -ūs, M., magistracy, magistrate
māgnopere, *adv.*, greatly, especially
māgnus, -a, -um (*comp.* **māior,** *sup.* **māximus**), great, large
maleficium, -ī, N., mischief, wickedness
mandō, 1, entrust, order
manus, -ūs, F., hand, armed force (*regarded as the instrument of war*)
Mārcus, -ī, M., *a Roman name*
matara, -ae, F., a Gallic javelin
māter, mātris, F., mother, matron
mātrimōnium, -ī, N., marriage
Mātrona, -ae, M., the Marne
mātūrō, 1, ripen, hasten
mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, complete, early
māximē, *sup. adv.* [**māgnus**], very greatly, most, especially
māximus, *see* **māgnus**
mē (*acc. of* **ego**), me
medius, -a, -um, in the middle of
memoria, -ae, F., recollection, memory
mēnsis, -is, M., month
mercātor, -ōris, M., merchant
mereor, 2, deserve, earn, merit
meritum, -ī, N., desert, merit
Messāla, -ae, M., *a Roman name*
mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, measure
mihi (*dat. of* **ego**), me
miles, -itis, M., soldier
mīlitāris, -e, pertaining to a soldier, military
mīlle, *num. adj.*, a thousand; (*in pl. as subst.*) **mīlia (mīllia), -ium,** N., **mīlia passuum,** miles
minimē, *adv.*, least, by no means
minimus, -a, -um (*sup. of* **parvus,** small), least, very little
minor (*comp. of* **parvus**), smaller, less
minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum [**minus**], make smaller, lessen
minus, *adv.* [**minor**], less
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, send
modo, *adv.*, only
molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, grind
moneō, 2, advise, remind, warn, admonish
mōns, montis, M., mountain
morior, morī, mortuus sum, die
moror, 1, tarry, delay
mors, mortis, F. [**morior**], death
mōs, mōris, M., manner, custom; (*in pl.*) customs, character
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, move
mulier, mulieris, F., woman
multitūdō, -inis, F. [**multus**], great number, multitude
multus, -a, -um, much; (*in pl.*) many
mūniō, 4 [**moenia,** walls], build a wall, fortify
mūnītiō, -ōnis, F., fortification

mūrus, -ī, M., wall

N

nam, *conj.*, for
Nammēius, -ī, M., *a Helvetian chief*
nātūra, -ae, F., nature, character
nāvis, -is, F., ship
nē, *conj.*, not to, that ... not, lest; (*after words of fearing*) that
-ne, *enclitic interrog. particle*
nec, *see* **neque**
necessāriō, *adv.*, necessarily, unavoidably
necessārius, -a, -um, necessary; (*as subst.*) M., kinsman
negō, 1, say not, deny
nēmō, -inis, M. F., no one
neque (nec), *conj.*, and not, and also: **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor
nervus, -ī, M., sinew, tendon; (*in pl.*) power, strength
nēve (neu), *adv.*, and not, nor
nex, necis, F., death
nihil (nihilum), *indecl. noun*, nothing
nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless
nītor, nītī, nīsus *or* **nīxus sum,** rest upon, rely upon, strive
nōbilis, -e [nōscō, know], famous, high-born, noble
nōbilitās, -ātis, F., nobility, nobles
noctū, *adv.* **[nox]**, by night
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, not wish, be unwilling
nōmen, -inis, N., name
nōminātim, *adv.*, by name
nōn, *adv.*, not
nōnāgintā, ninety
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, (*not none*) some; (*in pl. as subst.*) some, several
nōnnumquam, (*not never*) sometimes
Nōrēia, -ae, F., Noreia (*a town of the Norici*)
Nōricus, -a, -um, of the Norici, Norican
nōs (*nom. and acc. pl. of* **ego**), we, us
noster, -tra, -trum [nōs], our, ours
novem, nine
novus, -a, -um, new: **novae rēs,** new state of affairs, revolution
nox, noctis, F., night
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, veil one's self (*for marriage*), marry
nūdus, -a, -um, naked, exposed, unprotected
nūllus, -a, -um [nē+ūllus, any], not any, no, none
num, *interrog. particle implying a negative answer*
numerus, -ī, M., number
nūntiō, 1, report, announce
nūntium, -ī, N., report, message
nūntius, -ī, M., one who reports, messenger
nūper, recently

O

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of; (*in composition*) to, against
obaerātus, -ī, M., one involved in debt, debtor
obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw in front, oppose
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, forget
obsecrō, 1, beseech, implore

obses, -idis, M. F., hostage
obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, bind
obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold, possess
occāsus, -ūs, M., falling, setting
occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum [**caedō,** cut], cut off, kill, slay
occultō, 1, hide, conceal
occupō, 1 [**capiō**], take possession of, seize, occupy
Ōceanus, -ī, M., ocean
Ocelum, -ī, N., *a city of Gallia Cisalpina*
octō, eight
octōdecim, eighteen
octōgintā, eighty
oculus, -ī, M., eye
ōdī, ōdisse, *def. verb,* hate
offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, strike against, stumble, offend
offēnsiō, -ōnis, F., a striking against, offence
omnīnō, *adv.* [**omnis**], altogether, in all
omnis, -e, all, every
oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers. verb,* it is necessary, one ought
oppidum, -ī, N., stronghold, town
oppūgnō, 1, fight against, storm
ops, opis (*not used in nom. sing.*), power, strength: (*in pl.*) resources, means
opus, -eris, N., work
ōrātiō, -ōnis, F. [**ōrō**], speaking, oration
Orgetorīx, -īgis, M., *a chief of the Helvetii*
oriēns, -entis [**orior**], rising
orior, orīrī, ortus sum, rise
ōrō, 1, speak, plead, entreat
ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum [**ob+tendō,** stretch], expose to view, exhibit

P

pābulātiō, -ōnis, F., foraging
pābulum, -ī, N., food, fodder
pācō, 1 [**pāx**], pacify, subdue
paene, *adv.,* almost
pāgus, -ī, M., canton, district
pār, paris, equal
parātus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **parō**], prepared, ready
pāreō, 2, obey
parō, 1, prepare, provide
pars, partis, F., part, direction
parvus, -a, -um (*comp.* **minor,** *sup.* **minimus**), small, little
passus, -ūs, M., step, pace (*five Roman feet*): **mīlia passuum,** miles
pateō, -ēre, -uī, lie open, extend
pater, patris, M., father
patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, permit
paucī, -ae, -a, few
pāx, pācis, F., peace
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, drive, beat
per, *prep. with acc.,* through, by means of
perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead through
perfacilis, -e, very easy
perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**faciō**], do thoroughly, accomplish, complete
perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, break through
perfuga, -ae, M., deserter
perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, flee, desert
perīculum, -ī, N., danger, risk

peritus, -a, -um, experienced, practised, skilled
permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move thoroughly, rouse
perniciēs, -ēī, F., destruction
perpaucus, -a, -um, very little, very few
perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break through
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow after, pursue
persevērō, 1, continue, persist
persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, pay in full
persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, convince, persuade
perterreō, 2, frighten thoroughly
pertineō, -ēre, -uī, reach through, tend, pertain
perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, come through, arrive
pēs, pedis, M., foot
petō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītum, attack, aim at, seek
phalanx, -angis, F., phalanx
pīlum, -ī, N., javelin
Pīsō, -ōnis, M., *a Roman name*
plēbs, plēbis (plēbēs, -ēī), F., common people, plebeians
plūrimus, -a, -um (*sup. of* **multus**), very much, most, very many
plūs, plūris (*comp. of* **multus**), more
poena, -ae, F., punishment, penalty
polliceor, 2, promise
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, put, place
pōns, pontis, M., bridge
populātiō, -ōnis, F., ravaging
populor, 1, devastate
populus, -ī, M., people
portō, 1, carry, bring
portōrium, -ī, N., tax, tariff
poscō, -ere, poposcī, demand
possessiō, -ōnis, F., possession
possum, posse, potuī [potis, able **+sum],** be able, can
post, *prep. with acc.*, behind, after
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards
posterus, -a, -um, following
postquam, *conj.*, after, as soon as
postrīdiē, *adv.*, on the day after
potēns, -entis, powerful
potentia, -ae, F., power, ability
potestās, -ātis, F., power
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, get *or* obtain possession of
prae, *prep. with abl.*, before; (*in composition*) before, over, very
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go before, surpass, precede
praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take in advance, give precepts, order
praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear before, choose, prefer
praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, set before *or* over, place in command
praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send before *or* in advance
praeoptō, 1, choose rather, prefer
praesentia, -ae, F., the present moment
praesertim, *adv.*, especially
praesidium, -ī, N., protection, guard, garrison
praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, stand before, excel, present, furnish
praesum, -esse, -fuī, be before *or* over, command

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, past, by, beyond, except
praetereō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum, go by *or* beyond; (*p. p. as subst.*) **praeterita, -ōrum,** N., the past
praetor, -ōris, M., commander, governor, judge
prēndō (prehendō), prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum, lay hold of, grasp
pretium, -ī, N., price
prex, precis, F., prayer
prīdiē, *adv.*, on the day before
prīmum, *adv.*, in the first place, first
prīmus, -a, -um, *sup. adj.*, first
prīnceps, -ipis, chief; (*as subst.*) chief, leader
prīncipātus, -ūs, M., leadership, chief position
prīstinus, -a, -um, former
prius, *comp. adv.*, sooner
priusquam, *adv.*, before, sooner than
prīvātim, *adv.*, privately, as private citizens
prīvātus, -a, -um, private, personal
prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, for, in behalf of, in proportion to
probō, 1, try, prove, approve
Procillus, -ī, M., Gaius Valerius Procillus (*a Gallic chief*)
prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [dō], transmit, hand down
proelium, -ī, N., battle
profectiō, -ōnis, F., setting out, departure
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, set out, depart
prohibeō, 2, keep from, prohibit, prevent
prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw forth, cast down
prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, near
prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive before, propel
propinquus, -a, -um, near, neighboring; (*as subst.*) relative, kinsman
prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, place *or* set forth, declare
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of
propterea, *adv.*, for this reason
prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, look forward, look out for
prōvincia, -ae, F., province
proximē, *adv.* [prope], next, nearest, last
proximus, -a, -um, nearest, last
pūblicē, *adv.*, publicly, at state cost
pūblicus, -a, -um, public
Pūblius, -ī (*abbr.* **P.**), M., *a Roman name*
puer, -ī, M., boy, child
pūgna, -ae, F., fight, battle
pūgnō, 1, fight
pūrgō, 1, clear, acquit
putō, 1, compute, reckon, think
Pӯrēnaeus, -a, -um, of the Pyrenees

Q

quā, *adv.*, by which way, where
quadrāgintā, forty
quadringentī, -ae, -a, four hundred
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, seek, ask
quālis, -e, of what sort
quam, *adv. and conj.*, how, as, than; (*with sup.*) as possible

quantus, -a, -um, how great; **tantus . . . quantus,** so (*or* as) great ......as
quā rē, *adv.*, wherefore, for this reason
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth
quattuor, four
-que, *enclitic conj.*, and
queror, querī, questus sum, complain
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron. and interrog. adj.*, who, which, what
quidem, indeed: **nē . . . quidem,** not even, not either
quīn, *conj.*, that, but that, from: **quīn etiam,** nay more
quīndecim, fifteen
quīngentī, -ae, -a, five hundred
quīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*, five each, five
quīnque, five
quīntus, -a, -um, fifth
quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? (*as indef.*) any one, any thing
quisquam, quidquam (quicquam), any one, any thing
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), each one, every one, each, every
quod, *conj.*, because
quoque, *conj.*, also
quum, *see* **cum**

R

rapīna, -ae, F., plunder, rapine
ratiō, -ōnis, F., reckoning, plan, reason
ratis, -is, F., raft
Rauracī, -ōrum, M.., the Rauraci
re- (red-), *inseparable prefix with the force of* **back, again**
recēns, -entis, fresh, recent
recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back, receive
redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go back, return
redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, [**emō,** buy], buy back, buy up
redintegrō, 1, restore, renew
reditiō, -ōnis, F., a going back, return
redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back, withdraw
referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring *or* carry back, report
rēgnum, -ī, N. [**rēx**], sovereignty, royal power
rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw back
relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, leave behind, abandon
reliquus, -a, -um, the rest of, remaining; (*as subst.*) remainder
reminīscor, -ī, call to mind, remember
removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move back
renūntiō, 1, bring back word, report
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, drive back, repulse
repentīnus, -a, -um, sudden, unexpected
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, find out, discover
reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, blame, censure
repūgnō, 1, fight back, resist
rēs, reī, F., thing, affair, matter
rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, cut off, break down

rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī (-scii), -scītum, learn
resistō, -sistere, -stitī, stand back, stop, resist
respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, answer, reply
respōnsum, -ī, N., reply
rēs pūblica (rēspūblica), reī pūblicae, F., state
restituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, set up again, restore
retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**teneō**], hold back, retain
revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, turn back, return; **revertor, -ī,** *dep., is generally used in the tenses of incomplete action*
Rhēnus, -ī, M., the Rhine
Rhodanus, -ī, M., the Rhone
rīpa, -ae, F., bank (*of a river*)
rogō, 1, ask
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman; (*as subst.*) **Rōmānī, -ōrum,** M., the Romans
rota, -ae, F., wheel
rūrsus, *adv.*, again

S

saepe, *adv.*, often
salūs, -ūtis, F., safety
Santonēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), M., the Santones
sarcinae, -ārum, F., soldiers' packs, luggage
satis, *adv. and adj.*, sufficiently, enough, sufficient
satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, do enough, satisfy, make amends
scelus, -eris, N., crime
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know
scūtum, -ī, N., shield
sēcrētō, *adv.*, secretly, in private
secundus, -a, -um, following, favorable, second
sed, *conj.*, but
sēdecim [**sex**], sixteen
sēditiōsus, -a, -um, seditious
Segusiāvī, -ōrum, M., the Segusiavi
sēmentis, -is, F., sowing, planting
semper, *adv.*, always
senātus, -ūs, M., senate
senex, senis, old; (*as subst.*) old man
sēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*, six each, six
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, be sensible of, feel, perceive, think
sēparātim, *adv.*, separately
septentriōnēs, -um (septentriō, -ōnis), M., seven stars, the Great Bear, the north
septimus, -a, -um, seventh
sepultūra, -ae, F., burial
Sēquana, -ae, M., the Seine
Sēquanī, -ōrum, M., the Sequani, Sequanians
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
servitūs, -ūtis, F., slavery
servus, -ī, M., slave
seu, *see* **sīve**
sex, six
sexāgintā, sixty
sī, *conj.*, if
sīgnum, -ī, N., signal, standard
silva, -ae, F., forest
simul, *adv.*, at the same time, at once
sīn, *conj.*, but if
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without
singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*, one at a time, one by one, single

sinister, -tra, -trum, left
sīve (seu), *conj.*, or if; **sīve . . . sīve,** whether . . . or, either . . . or
socer, soceri, M., father-in-law
socius, -ī, M., ally
sōl, sōlis, M., the sun
sōlum, *adv.*, only
solum, -ī, N., soil, ground
sōlus, -a, -um (*gen.* **-īus,** *dat.* **-ī**), alone, only
soror, -ōris, F., sister
spatium, -ī, N., space, period
spectō, 1, look, face
spērō, 1 [**spēs**], hope, look for
spēs, -eī, F., hope
spontis (*gen.;* **sponte,** *abl.*), of one's own accord, willingly
statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, set up, establish, determine
studeō, -ēre, -uī, be eager for, desire
studium, -ī, N., eagerness, attachment
sub, *prep. with acc. or abl.*, under, near, beneath
subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, draw up *or* away, withdraw
subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go under *or* near, undergo
subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw below, discharge, subject
sublevō, 1, lift up, aid
subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, stand still, withstand, resist
subsum, -esse, -fuī, be under *or* near
subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, carry *or* bring up, convey
succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go under *or* near, approach, succeed
suī, sibi, sē (sēsē), *reflex. pron. of 3d person*, himself, herself, *etc.*
Sulla, -ae, M., *a Roman dictator*
sum, esse, fuī, be
summa, -ae, F., highest point, sum
summoveō (sub-), -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, remove
summus, -a, -um (*pos.* **superus**), highest
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take, claim
sūmptus, -ūs, M., expense
super, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, above, over
superō, 1, surpass, conquer
supersum, -esse, -fuī, be over, survive
superus, -a, -um (*comp.* **superior,** *sup.* **suprēmus, summus**), upper, high
suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, be at hand *or* in store
suppliciter, *adv.*, humbly
supplicium, -ī, N., punishment
suscipiō (sub-), -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, undertake, undergo
suspicio, -ōnis, F., mistrust, suspicion
sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold up *or* out, sustain
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their

T

T. *see* **Titus**
tabula, -ae, F., board, writing tablet
taceō, 2, be silent, keep silent
tam, *adv.*, so
tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, yet
tandem, *adv.*, at length
tantus, -a, -um, so great
tēlum, -ī, N., dart, missile

temperantia, -ae, F., self-control, moderation
temperō, 1, control, refrain
temptō (tentō), 1, try, attack
tempus, -oris, N., time
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, hold
terra, -ae, F., earth
tertius, -a, -um, third
testis, -is, M. F., witness
Tigurinus, -a, -um, of the Tigurini (*a canton of the Helvetii*)
timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear
timor, -ōris, M., fear
Titus, -ī (*abbr.* **T.**), M., *a Roman name*
tolerō, 1, endure, support
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, lift up, take away destroy
Tolōsātēs, -um, M., the Tolosates
tōtus, -a, -um (*gen.* **-īus,** *dat.* **-ī**), all, the whole of, entire
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give over, hand down, surrender
trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead across
trāgula, -ae, F., a Gallic javelin
trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go across, cross
trānsfigō, -figere, -fīxī, -fixum, thrust through, transfix
trecentī, -ae, -a, three hundred
trēs, tria, three
tribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, assign, bestow, attribute
trīduum, -ī, N., three days
trīgintā, thirty
triplex, -icis, threefold, triple
Tulingī, -ōrum, M., the Tulingi
tum, *adv.*, then, at that time
tuus, -a, -um, thy, your

U

ubi, when, where
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, avenge, punish
ūllus, -a, -um (*gen.* **-īus,** *dat.* **-ī**), any
ulterior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, farther
ūnā, *adv.*, together
unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence
undique [unde], *adv.*, from all parts, on all sides
ūnus, -a, um (*gen.* **-īus,** *dat.* **-ī**), one
urbs, urbis, F., city
ut (utī), *conj.* (*with subj.*) that, in order that, to; (*with indicative*) as, when
uter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* **-īus,** *dat.* **-ī**), which of two, which
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, use
uxor, -ōris, F., wife

V

vacō, 1, be vacant *or* unoccupied
vadum, -ī, N., ford, shoal
vagor, 1, wander
valeō, 2, be strong *or* powerful, avail
vāllum, -ī, N., palisade, rampart
vāstō, 1, lay waste, devastate
vectīgal, -ālis, N., tax, revenue
vel, or: **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, come
Verbigenus, -ī, M., *a canton of the Helvetii*
verbum, -ī, N., word
vereor, 2, reverence, fear
vergō, vergere, incline, verge, be situated

vergobretus, -ī, M., *the title of the chief magistrate of the Aeduans*
Verucloetius, -ī, M., *a Helvetian chief*
vērus, -a, -um, true
vesper, -eris (-erī), M., evening
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours
veterānus, -a, -um, old, veteran; (*as subst.*) veteran soldier, veteran
vetus, -eris, old, former
vexō, 1, harass
via, -ae, F., way
victōria, -ae, F., victory
vīcus, -ī, M., village
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, see; (*in pass.*) be seen, seem
vigilia, -ae, F., watch of the night, watch
vīgintī, twenty
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, conquer
vinculum, -ī, N., bond
virtūs, -ūtis, F., virtue, valor
vīs, vīs, F., force, violence; (*in pl.*) **vīrēs**, strength
vīta, -ae, F., life
vītō, 1, shun, avoid
vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, scarcely
vocō, 1, call, summon
Vocontiī, -ōrum, M., the Vocontii
volō, velle, voluī, wish
voluntās, -ātis, F., willingness, choice, desire
vōs, *nom. and acc. pl.* [**tū**], you
vulgus (**volg-**), **-ī**, N., the multitude, public, rabble
vulnerō (vol-), 1, wound, injure
vulnus (**vol-**), **-neris**, N., a wound

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

This vocabulary contains all the words used in the longer exercises of the ninety one Lessons. It does not contain all the words used in the dictation exercises and the exercises based on chapters 15 to 29, since they follow the Latin text so closely that the student should not need the help of a general vocabulary for them. Only anglicized proper names are given.

A

a, an, *usually lacking, sometimes* quīdam
able, be, possum
about, circum; *with numerals,* ad
accomplish, cōnficiō
accordance, in—with, *abl.* (App. 142, *a*)
according to, *see* **accordance**
account, on—of, ob, per, propter, *or abl.* (App. 138)
across, trāns
advocate, dēprecātor
affect, afficiō
against one's will, invītus (*sometimes in abl. abs.*)
aid, auxilium
all, omnis
all, in, omnīnō
allow, concēdō, patior
allowed, it is, licet
ally, socius
almost, ferē, paene
also, etiam, item, quoque
although, cum *with subj.*
ambassador, lēgātus
among, apud, inter
ancestors, māiōrēs
and, āc, atque, et, -que
and not, and...not, neque
announce, nūntiō, ēnūntiō, renūntiō
annoyed, be, graviter ferō
another, alius
any, quī (quis), ūllus
anyone, quis, quisquam
appoint, cōnscīscō, cōnstituō
April, Aprīlis
Aquitanians, Aquītānī
are, *see* be
arms, arma
army, exercitus
arouse, commoveō, incendō, permoveō
arrival, adventus
arrive, perveniō
as...as possible, quam *with sup., with or without* **possum**
as to the fact that, quod
ascribe, tribuō
ashes, burn to, combūrō
ask, rogō
assemble, conveniō (*intrans.*)
assert, exsequor
at, ad, *or abl.* (App. 151, *a;* 152)

attack, adorior, aggredior, expūgnō, oppūgnō
attempt, (*noun*) cōnātus; (*verb*) cōnor, temptō
attended with, cum (*prep.*)
avenge, ulcīscor

B

bank (*of a stream*), rīpa
battle, proelium
be, to, sum; *its forms not expressed when used as an auxiliary*
beast of burden, iūmentum
because, quod
because of, *see* **account, on—of**
before, (*prep.*) ante, prō
beginning, initium
Belgians, Belgae
besides, praeter
best known, *sup. of* **well known**
between, inter
beyond (=*outside of*), extrā; (=*across*), trāns
bind, obstringō
boast of, glōrior
boat, linter, nāvis
both...and, et...et, nōn sōlum... sed etiam
bound (*geographically*), contineō
boundaries, fīnēs
brave, fortis
bravely, fortiter
bravery, fortitūdō
breadth, lātitūdō
break down, rescindō
break through, perrumpō
bridge, pōns
bring in, importō
bring together, cōgō, condūcō
brother, frāter
building, aedificium
burn, combūrō, cremō, exūrō, incendō
but, autem, sed
by, ā, ab (App. 137); *abl.* (App. 143); *dat.* (App. 118)
by far, longē, multō
by means of, per, *or abl.* (App. 143)

C

Calends, Kalendae
call, appellō
camp, castra
can, possum
canton, pāgus
carry, portō
cart, carrus
case, causa
cause, (*noun*) causa; (*verb*) cūrō, perficiō
Celts, Celtae
chance, cāsus
character, mōrēs
check, prohibeō
chief, prīnceps
children, līberī, puerī
choose, dēligō
citizens, cīvitās
civilization, cultus
collect, cōgō, condūcō
command, imperō, iubeō
commit, committō
commit suicide, sibi mortem cōnscīscō
common people, plēbs
compel, cōgō
complete, cōnficiō, perficiō
concerning, dē
condemn, damnō
conscious, cōnscius, *usually with reflexive pronoun*

consideration, from this, quā ex parte
conspiracy, coniūrātiō
construct, perdūcō
consul, cōnsul
consume, cōnsūmō
contend, contendō
country, ager, fīnēs
courage, animus, fortitūdō, virtūs
crime, scelus
cross, trānseō
cultivation, cultus
custom, īnstitūtum, mōs
cut to pieces, concīdō

D

daily, (*adj.*) cotīdiānus; (*adv.*) cotīdiē
danger, perīculum
daughter, fīlia
day, diēs
debtor, obaerātus
decide, cōnstituō, iūdicō, putō, statuō
deep, altus
defeat, pellō
defend, dēfendō
deliberate, dēlīberō
depart, discēdō, proficīscor
departure, profectiō
deserts, meritum
deserve, mereor
design, cōnsilium
desire, (*noun*) cupiditās; (*verb*) cupiō, studeō, volō
desirous, cupidus
desist, dēsistō
destroy, cōnsūmō, rescindō
determine, cōnstituō, statuō
devastate, populor, vāstō
die, morior
difficult, difficilis
direction, pars
disappoint, dēiciō
disaster, calamitās
distant, be, absum
district, pāgus
divide, dīvidō
do, agō, faciō
done, be, fīō
draw, dūcō
dwell, incolō

E

each one, quisque
each other, *see* App. 166
eager, cupidus; **be—for,** studeō
easily, facile
east, oriēns sōl
easy, facilis
eighty, octōgintā
either...or, aut...aut, vel...vel
embassy, lēgātiō
end, fīnis
endure, patior, subeō
enemy, hostis, hostēs
enlist, cōnscrībō
envoy, lēgātus
establish, cōnfīrmō, īnstituō
every, omnis, quisque
example, exemplum
expectation, spēs
extend, pateō, pertineō,—**to,** attingō
eye, oculus

F

fact, as to the—that, quod
far, longē
farther, ulterior
farthest, extrēmus
father, pater
father-in-law, socer
few, very, perpaucī
field, ager

fight, bellō, bellum gerō, contendō; **—a battle,** proelium faciō
fill with, afficiō
finish, perficiō
fire, īgnis
first, prīmus, prīnceps
five, quīnque
flight, fuga
flour, molita cibāria
flow, fluō;**—into,** īnfluō
follow, sequor;**—up,** cōnsequor, persequor
fond, cupidus
foot, pēs
for, (*prep.*) dē, prō, *or cases*; (*conj.*) enim, nam
for a long time, diū
force, vīs
forced march, iter māximum
forces, cōpiae
ford, vadum
forget, oblīvīscor, memoriam dēpōnere
form, faciō
former, prīstinus, superior, vetus
fort, castellum
fortification, mūnītiō, opus
forty, quadrāgintā
four, quattuor
fourth, quārtus
friend, amīcus; **near—,** necessārius
friendly, amīcus
friendship, amīcitia
from, ab, dē, ex, *or abl.* (App. 134)
fruitful, frūmentārius

G

gain possession, potior
Garonne, Garumna
garrison, praesidium
Gaul, Gallia; **a—,** Gallus
Geneva, lake, Lemannus
German, Germānus
get control *or* **possession of,** potior
get permission, impetrō
give, dō
give oneself up to, mandō, *with reflexive*
glory, glōria
go, eō, sē recipere
go across, trānseō
go back and forth, commeō
go forth *or* **out,** exeō
god, a, deus
good, bonus
grain, frūmentum; **ground—,** molita cibāria
grandfather, avus
grant, concēdō
great, māgnus
grief, dolor
guard, praesidium
guard, off one's, inopīnāns

H

happen, accidō, fīō
harass, vexō
hasten, contendō, mātūrō
have, habeō; *as auxiliary, not expressed, or* sum
he, *see* App. 51, *a*
hear, audiō
help, auxilium
Helvetian, Helvētius
her, *see* App. 51, *a*; 53
hesitation, dubitātiō; **feel less—,** minus dubitātiōnis datur
high, altus
higher, superior
hinder, impediō, prohibeō
his, *see* App. 53
hither, (*adj.*) citerior

hold, habeō, obtineō, occupō, teneō
hold under obligations, obstringō
home, domus
hope, (*noun*) spēs; (*verb*) spērō
hostage, obses
house, domus
hundred, centum

I

I, ego, *or verb ending*
Ides, Īdūs
if, sī
impede, impediō
import, importō
impunity, with, impūne
in, in *with abl.*, *or abl.*, *or locative* (App. 151)
in all, omnīnō
in order that, quō, ut; **—not,** nē
in that place, ibi
incline, vergō
induce, addūcō, indūcō
inflict, ferō, īnferō
influence, addūcō, indūcō
influence, by one's, sponte *with possessive pronoun*
inform, certiōrem faciō
informed, be, certior fīō
inhabit, incolō
injustice, iniūria
insolently, īnsolenter
insult, contumēlia
intend, mihi, *etc.*, in animō est, *or act. periphrastic conjugation*
intention, to have the, *or* **it is one's,** *see* **intend**
intervene, intercēdō
into, in *with acc.*
is, *see* **be**
it, *see* App. 51, *a*; *as expletive, not expressed*

J

join, *or*—**together,** iungō
journey, iter

K

keep away, prohibeō
kill, concīdō, interficiō, occīdō
kindness, beneficium
know, intellegō
known, well, nōbilis

L

lake, lacus
language, lingua
large, māgnus
last, extrēmus
law, lēx
lay waste, dēpopulor, populor, vāstō
lead, dūcō
lead across, trānsdūcō
lead away, abdūcō
lead forth *or* **out,** ēdūcō
lead through, perdūcō
lead together, condūcō
learn, discō
leave, *trans.*, relinquō; *intrans.*, exeō, proficīscor
leave behind, relinquō
led on, inductus
left, reliquus; **to be—,** relinquor
legion, legiō
length, longitūdō
less, minus
levy, cōnscrībō;**—upon,** imperō
liberality, largītiō
lieutenant, lēgātus
long, *of space,* longus; *of time,* (*adj.*) diūturnus; (*adv.*) diū

look, spectō
lower, īnferior

M

made, to be, fīō
magistrate, magistrātus
make, faciō; (= *cause*) efficiō, perficiō
make upon, īnferō
man, homō, vir
manliness, virtūs
many, complūrēs, multī
march, (*noun*) iter; (*verb*) iter faciō, eō
Marne, Mātrona
marriage, mātrimōnium
marry, *of a man,* in mātrimōnium dūcō; *of a woman,* nūbō
me, mē
mediator, dēprecātor
memory, memoria
mention, commemorō
merchant, mercātor
merit, meritum
mile, mīlle passuum
mind, animus
mischief, maleficium
month, mēnsis
most, māximē, plūrimum, *or sup. ending*
mount, mountain, mōns
much, (*adj.*) multus; (*adv.*) multō
multitude, multitūdō

N

name, nōmen
narrow, angustus
near, ad, circum
nearer, citerior
nearest, proximus
neighbors, fīnitimī
next, proximus
new, novus
nine, novem
no one, nēmō, nūllus
nobles, the, nōbilitās
none, nūllus
north, septentriō, septentriōnēs
not, nē, nōn (App. 188)
not only . . . but also, nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam
not yet, nōndum
noted, nōbilis
nothing, nihil
now, nunc
number, numerus

O

O, *voc.*
oath, iūsiūrandum
obligation, under, obstrictus
obtain (one's request), impetrō
ocean, Ōceanus
of, dē, ex, *or gen. or other case forms*
off one's guard, inopīnāns
often, saepe
old, vetus
on, *of place,* in *with abl.; of direction,* ab, dē, ex
on account of, ob, per, propter
on all sides, undique
on the side of, ab
on this side of, citrā
one, ūnus
one another, *see* App. 166
onset, concursus, impetus
opportunity, facultās
or, aut, vel
order, imperō, iubeō
other, *of more than two,* alius; **the—,** *of two,* alter
ought, dēbeō, oportet
our, noster
out of, ex

over, in *with abl.*, trāns
overhang, impendeō
overtake, cōnsequor
own, *implied in possessive pron.*, *or see* App. 172, *a*

P

pace, passus
pack animal, iūmentum
part, pars
pass, eō
passage, iter
pay (in full), persolvō
peace, pāx
penalty, poena
people, populus; **common—,** plēbs
period of time, spatium
permission, ask, rogō ut mihi, *etc.*, liceat; **get—,** impetrō
permit, committō, concēdō, patior
permitted, it is, licet
persuade, persuādeō
place, locus; **to the same—,** eōdem
place over, praeficiō
plan, cōnsilium
planting, sēmentis
plead a case, causam dīcō
pleading, dictiō
pledge, fidēs
point out, dēmōnstrō
popularity, grātia
possess, habeō, obtineō, occupō
possession, gain *or* **get—of,** potior
possessions, possessiōnēs
power, royal *or* **supreme,** rēgnum
powerful, potēns; be **the most** *or* **very—,** plūrimum possum
praise, laudō
prepare, comparō
prepared, parātus
prevent, prohibeō
private, prīvātus
promise, polliceor
property, fortūnae, *or neut. plur. of possessive pron.*
prosperity, rēs secundae
province, prōvincia
public, pūblicus
punish, ulcīscor
punishment, poena
purchase, coëmō
pursue, cōnsequor
put away, dēpōnō
Pyrenees, Pȳrēnaeus

R

raft, ratis
ready, parātus
reason, causa; **for this—,** propter-eā, quā dē causā
receive, adscīscō, recipiō
recent, recēns
recently, nūper
recollect, reminīscor
recollection, memoria
refinement, hūmānitās
refrain, dēsistō, temperō
rely on *or* **upon,** nītor
remain, relinquor
remarkable, īnsignis
remember, memoriā teneō, reminīscor
renown, glōria
reply, respondeō
report, nūntiō, ēnūntiō, renūntiō
rest, the—of, reliquus
restrain, prohibeō
retainer, cliēns
retinue, familia
retreat, recipiō *with reflexive*
return, revertō, revertor
revolution, novae rēs
Rhine, Rhēnus
Rhone, Rhodanus

rich, dīves
right, iūs
rise, orior
river, flūmen
road, iter, via
Roman, Rōmānus
rouse, commoveō, incendō, permoveō
royal power, rēgnum

S

same, īdem, **to the—place,** eōdem
Saone, Arar
satisfy, satisfaciō
say, dīcō;**— . . . not,** negō
scout, explōrātor
second, alter, secundus
see, videō
Seine, Sēquana
seize (upon), occupō
seldom, very, minimē saepe
select, dēligō
-self, -selves, ipse (App. 172), suī (App. 163)
senate, senātus
send, mittō
separate, dīvidō
Sequanian, Sēquanus
set fire to, incendō
set out, proficīscor
several, complūrēs, nōnnūllī
severely, graviter
she, *see* App. 51, *a*
show, dēmōnstrō, ostendō
side, pars; **on this—of,** citrā
sides, from all, undique
signal, īnsīgnis
since, cum *with subj.*
skiff, linter
slaughter, interneciō
slavery, servitūs
slay, concīdō, interficiō, occīdō
slope, vergō
so, ita, tam
so long a time, for, tam diū
so that, ut, utī
soldier, mīles
some, aliquis, nōnnūllus
sometimes, interdum, nōnnumquam
son, fīlius
Spain, Hispānia
speech, ōrātiō
spirit, animus
state, cīvitās
station, dispōnō
storm, expūgnō, oppūgnō
strength of fortifications, mūnītiō
subdue, pācō
sufficient, satis
suicide, *see* **commit**
sun, sōl
supply, cōpia
supreme power, rēgnum
surpass, praecēdō
suspicion, suspīciō

T

take, capiō, sūmō
taught, be, discō, īnstituor
ten, decem
tend, pertineō
territory, ager, fīnēs
that, (*pron.*) ille, is; (*conj.*) quīn, quod, ut, *or infinitive*
the, *lacking*
their, eōrum, ipsōrum, suus (App. 53)
them, *see* App. 51, *a*
there, ibi
these, *see* **this**
they, *see* App. 51, *a*
thing, rēs; **things,** *often neut. plur. of adj. or pron.*

think, arbitror, existimō, putō
third, tertius
thirteenth of April, Īdūs Aprīlēs
this, hīc, is
those, *see* **that**
thousand, mīlle
three, trēs
through, per
time, for a long, diū
to, (*prep.*) ad, *or case forms;* (*conj.*) ut, *relative clause, or infinitive*
together, ūnā
too (=**also**), quoque
tongue, lingua
toward, ad
town, oppidum
troops, cōpiae
try, cōnor, temptō
twenty, vīgintī
two, duo

U

under, sub
under obligations, obstrictus
undergo, subeō
understand, intellegō
undertake, suscipiō
unfriendly, inimīcus
unimpeded, expedītus
until, dum
unwilling, invītus
upon, *dat. with some compound verbs*
upper, superior
us, nōs, nōbis
use, ūtor; —**force,** vim faciō

V

valor, virtūs
very, *usually superlative ending*
very few, perpaucī
vexation, dolor
victory, victōria
village, vīcus
violence, iniūria, vīs
visit, commeō ad

W

wage, gerō
wagon, carrus
wait, exspectō
wall, mūrus
wander, vagor
wanting, be, absum
war, bellum
warlike, bellicōsus
warn, moneō
was, *see* **be**
waste, lay, *see* **lay—**
watch, vigilia
way, iter, via
we, nōs *or verb ending*
weaken, effēminō
wealthy, dīves
well known, nōbilis
went, *see* **go**
were, *see* **be**
west, occāsus sōlis
when, cum, ubi; **when?** quandō
whether . . . or, sīve . . . sīve
which, *relat. pron.;* **which?** *inter. pron.;*—**of two?** uter
while, dum
who, whom, *rel. pronoun;* **who? whom?** *inter. pron.*
whole, omnis, tōtus; **as a—,** omnis; **the—of,** tōtus
wide, lātus
widely, lātē
will, *fut. ending*
will, against one's, *see* **against**
winter, pass the, hiemō;—**quarters,** hīberna
wish, volō
with, cum, *or abl.*

withdraw, discēdō
within, *abl. of time* (App. 152)
without, extrā, sine
wonder, admīror
work, opus
wrong, wrongdoing, iniūria

Y

year, annus
yet, autem, tamen
yoke, iugum
you, *pers. pron., or verb ending*
your, tuus, vester

GLOSSARY

The glossary is intended to furnish the Latin forms of grammatical terms and of words convenient for class-room conversation. It is retained in the revision for the convenience of those teachers who may wish to make use of Latin conversation in the class room.

ablative, **ablātīvus, -a, -um** (*adj.*, *sc.* **cāsus**)
absolute, **absolūtus, -a, -um**
accent (noun), **accentus, -ūs,** M.
according to, **secundum** (*prep. with acc.*)
accusative, **accūsātīvus** (*adj.*, *sc.* **cāsus**)
active, **āctivus, -a, -um; agēns, -entis**
adjective, **adiectīvum, -ī,** N.
advance (noun), **prōgressus, -ūs,** M.
advance (verb), **prōgredior,** 3, **-gressus**
adverb, **adverbium, -iī,** N.
agent, **agēns, agentis,** M., F.
agree, **congruō,** 3, (*c. abl.*); **concordō,** 1
agreement, **concordātiō, -ōnis,** F.
alphabet, **alphabētum, -ī,** N.; **elementa, -ōrum,** N.
American, **Americānus, -a, -um**
answer (noun), **respōnsum, -ī,** N.
answer (verb), **respondeō,** 2
antecedent, **antecēdēns, -entis**
apposition, **appositiō, -ōnis,** F.
begin, **incipiō,** 3, (*imperative,* **incipe,** *pl.* **incipite**)
beginning, **initium, -iī,** N.; **principium, -iī,** N. (*from the beginning,* **ā principiō**)
ball, **pila, -ae,** F.
bell, **tintinnābulum, -ī,** N.
book, **liber, -brī,** M.
boy, **puer, -ī,** M.
breakfast, **prandium, -iī,** N.
campus, **campus, -ī,** M.
cardinal, **cardinālis, -e**
case, **cāsus, -ūs,** M.
causal, **causālis, -e**
cause, **causa, -ae,** F.
chair, **sella, -ae,** F., *and* **sedēs, -is,** F.
chapter, **caput, -itis,** N.
class, **classis, -is,** F.
classmate, schoolmate, **condiscipulus, -ī,** M.
clause, **incīsiō, -ōnis,** F.
close (verb), **claudō,** 3, **-sī, -sum**
coat, **tunica, -ae,** F.; **tēgmen, -minis,** N.; **vestis, -is,** F.
college, **collēgium, -iī,** N.
come, **veniō,** 4, **vēnī, ventum**
common, **commūnis, -e;** common appellative, **appellātīvus, -a, -um**
comparative, **comparātīvus, -a, -um**
compare, **cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**

compound, **compositus, -a, -um**
concessive, **concessivus, -a, -um**
condition, **condiciō, -ōnis**, F.
conditional, **condiciōnālis, -e**
conjugation, **coniugātiō, -ōnis**, F.
conjunction, **coniūnctiō, -ōnis**, F.
consecutive (of a clause), **contextus, -a, -um**
consonant, **cōnsonāns, -antis**, F., (*sc.* **litera**); **cōnsona, -ae**, F.
construction, **cōnstrūctiō, -ōnis**, F.
conversation, **colloquium, -iī**, N.
converse, **colloquor, 3**
copula, **copula, -ae**, F.
correct, **rēctus, -a, -um**
correctly, **rēctē**
crayon, pencil, **graphium, -iī**, N.
daily newspaper, **diurna urbis ācta**
dative, **datīvus** (*adj.*, *sc.* **cāsus**), (*of agent*) **agentis**, etc.
declarative, **dēclārātīvus, -a, -um**
declension, **dēclīnātiō, -ōnis**, F.
decline, **dēclīnō, 1**, (*used both with nouns and verbs*)
declinable, **dēclīnābilis, -e**
defective, **dēfectīvus, -a, -um**
degree, **gradus, -ūs**, M.
degree of difference, **mēnsūrae** (*sc.* **ablātīvus**)
demonstrative, **dēmōnstrātīvus, -a, -um**
deponent, **dēpōnēns, dēpōnentis**
derive, **trahō, 3**
description, **dēscrīptiō, -ōnis**, F.,
desire, **optātiō, -ōnis**, F.; **dēsīderium, -iī**, N.
desk, **scrīnium, -iī**, N.
determinative, **dēfīnītus, -a, -um**
dictation, **dictātiō, -ōnis**, F.
dinner, **cēna, -ae**, F.
diphthong, **diphthongus, -ī**, M.
direct discourse, **ōrātiō rēcta**
discuss, **trāctō, 1; agō, 3, ēgī, āctum**
dissyllable, **dissyllabus, -ī**, M.
distributive, **distribūtīvus, -a, -um**
door, **iānua, -ae**, F.
drink, **bibō, 3**, (*perf.*, **bibī**)
English, **Anglicus, -a, -um**; *in English*, **Anglicē**
erase, besmear, **linō, 3, līvī (lēvī), litum**
erasure, **litūra, -ae**, F.
essay, **disputātiō, -ōnis**, F.
etymology, **etymologia, -ae**, F.
evening, **vesper, -erī**, M.
examination, **exāminātiō, -ōnis**, F.
example, **exemplum, -ī**, N.
exception, **exceptiō, -ōnis**, F.
exercise, practice, **exercitātiō, -ōnis**, F.
exhortation, **hortātiō, -ōnis**, F.
feminine, **fēminīnus, -a, -um; fēmineus, -a, -um**
find, **inveniō, 4; reperiō, 4, -perī, -pertum**
finite, **fīnītus, -a, -um**
floor, **tabulātiō, -ōnis**, F.
flower, **flōs, flōris**, M.
flower, (a litttle flower), **flōsculus, -ī**, M.
formation, **fōrmātiō, -ōnis**, F.
future, **futūrus, -a, -um**
future perfect, **futūrum exāctum** (*sc.* **tempus**)
gender, **genus, generis**, N.
genitive, **genetīvus** (*adj.*, *sc.* **cāsus**), **genitīvus**
gerund, **gerundium, -iī**, N.
gerundive, **gerundīvus, -a, -um** (*sc.* **modus**)
girl, **puella, -ae**, F.,

go on, proceed, **perge** (*pl.* **pergite,** *imper. of* **pergō**)
good-by, **valē**
good-morning, **salvē** (a general greeting, — "How are you?" "Save you" etc.)
governs (is joined with), **iungitur; coniungitur** (cum); **regit**
grammar, **grammatica, -ōrum** (*pl.*, *n.*); **grammatica, -ae,** F.
grass, **grāmen, grāminis,** N.
Greek, **Graecus, -a, -um**: *in Greek,* **Graecē**
hand, **manus, -ūs,** F.
hat, cap, **galērus, -ī,** M.; **pilleum, -ī,** N.
hence, **hinc**
here, **hīc**
historical, **historicus, -a, -um**
history, **historia, -ae,** F.
hither, **hūc**
house, **domus, -ūs,** F.
how? **quōmodo** (also relative)
how great? how much? **quantus, -a, -um** (also relative)
how many? **quot** (also relative)
imperative, **imperātīvus, -a, -um**
imperfect, **imperfectus, -a, -um**
impersonal, **impersōnālis, -e**
in English, **Anglicē**
inflect, **īnflectō** 3
in Gallic, in French, **Gallicē**
in Greek, **Graecē**
in Latin, **Latīnē**
increase, **crēscō,** 3
indeclinable, **indēclīnābilis, -e**
indicative, **indicātīvus** (*adj. sc.* **modus**)
indirect, **indīrēctus, -a, -um; obliquus, -a, -um**
indirect discourse, **ōrātiō oblīqua**
infinitive, **īnfīnītīvus, -a, -um**
instrument, **īnstrūmentum, -ī,** N.
interjection, **interiectiō, -ōnis,** F.
intransitive, **intrānsitīvus, -a, -um**
irregular, **irrēgulāris, -e**
janitor, **iānitor, -ōris,** M.
Latin, **Latīnus, -a, -um**; *in Latin,* **Latīnē**
labial, **labiālis, -e**
language, **lingua, -ae,** F.; **sermō, sermōnis,** M.
learn, **discō,** 3, **didicī**
letter (of the alphabet), **littera,** (**lītera**) **-ae,** F.
letter (a written document), **litterae** *pl.*, and **epistula, -ae,** F.
library, book-case, **librārium, -iī,** N.
limit, **līmitō,** 1
lingual, **linguālis, -e** (assumed)
liquid, **liquidus, -a, -um**
locative, **locātīvus, -a, -um**
long, **longus, -a, -um; prōductus, -a, -um**
man, **homō, -inis,** M: **vir, -ī,** M.
manner, **modus, -ī,** M.
masculine, **masculīnus, -a, -um**
mean, **significō,** 1
means, **īnstrūmentum, -ī,** N.
meaning, **significātiō, -ōnis,** F.
mistake (noun), **error, -ōris,** M.
mistake (verb), **errō,** 1
mode or mood, **modus, -ī,** M; **status, -ūs,** M.
monosyllable, **monosyllabum, -ī,** N. (*sc.* **verbum**)
morning, **māne** (*indecl.*)
mother, **māter, -tris,** F.
mute, **mūtus, -a, -um**
negative, **negātīvus, -a, -um**
news, **nova, -ōrum,** *pl.* N.
neuter, **neuter, -tra, -trum**
no, **nōn, nōn est, minimē,**

minimē vērō (by no means, no indeed)
nominative, **nōminātīvus** (*adj.*, *sc.* **cāsus**)
note (noun), **notātum, -ī,** N. (assumed); **annotātiō, -ōnis,** F.
note (verb), **notō,** 1
noun, **nōmen, nōminis,** F.
numeral, **numerālis, -e**
object (gram. term), **obiectum, -ī,** N. (*really adj.*, *sc.* **verbum**)
officer, **officiālis, -is,** M.
open, **aperiō,** 4, **-ruī, -rtum**
open (*adj.*), **apertus, -a, -um**
optative, **optātīvus** (*adj.*, *sc.* **modus**)
oration, **ōrātiō, -ōnis,** F.
ordinal, **ōrdinālis, -e**
page, **pāgina, -ae,** F.
palatal, **palātālis, -e**
paradigm, **paradīgma, -atis,** N.
part (of speech), **pars** or **fōrma (ōrātiōnis)**
participle, **participium, -iī,** N.
partitive, **partītīvus, -a -um**
passive (see *voice*)
perfect, **perfectus, -a, -um**
periphrastic, **circuitus, -a, -um**
person, **persōna, -ae,** F.
personal, **persōnālis, -e**
phrase, **locūtiō, -ōnis,** F; **phrasis, -is,** F.
play (noun), **lūsiō, -ōnis,** F.
play (verb), **lūdō,** 3
pluperfect, **plūsquam perfectum** (*adj.*, *sc.* **tempus**)
plural, **plūrālis, -e**
positive, **positīvus, -a, -um**
practice(noun),**exercitātiō,-ōnis,**F.
practice (verb), **exercitō,** 1
predicate, **praedicātīvus, -a, -um** (*sc.* **pars** *or* **rēs**)
prefer, **mālō, mālle, māluī**
preparatory, **praeparātōrius, -a, -um**
preposition, **praepositiō, -ōnis,** F.
present (adj.), **praesēns, -entis**
president, **praeses, -idis,** M.
principal parts, **partēs prīmae** *or* **prīmāriae**
prize, **donum, -ī,** N.
professor, **professor, -ōris,** M.
pronoun, **prōnōmen, -inis,** N
pronunciation, **ēnūntiātiō, -ōnis,** F.
proper, **proprius, -a, -um**
pupil, **discipulus, -ī,** M.
purpòse, **fīnis, -is,** M.
quality, **quālitās, -ātis,** F.
quantity, **quantitās, -ātis,** F.; **cōpia, -ae,** F.
question, **quaestiō,-ōnis,**F.;**interrogātiō, -ōnis,** F.
rains (it rains), **pluit**
read, **legō,** 3
recitation, **recitātiō, -ōnis,** F.
recite, **recitō,** 1
reference, **relātiō, -ōnis,** F.
reflexive, **reflexīvum (verbum** *aut* **prōnōmen)**
regular, **rēgulāris, -e**
relative, **relātīvus, -a, -um**
reply, **respondeō,** 2, **-dī, -sum**
result, **cōnsecūtiō, -ōnis,** F.;**ēventus, -ūs,** M.
review (noun), **recōgnitiō,** -ōnis, F.
review (verb), **recōgnōscō,** 3, **-nōvī, -nitum;** (review lesson) **pēnsum recōgnōscendum**
roof, **tēctum, -ī,** N.
root, **rādīx, -īcis,** F.
rule (noun), **rēgula, -ae,** F.
rule (verb), **regō,** 3

school, **lūdus, -ī,** M.; **schola, -ae,** F.
search for, **investīgō,** 1
secondary, **secondārius, -a, -um**
sentence, **sententia, -ae,** F.
separation, **sēparātiō, -ōnis,** F.
sequence, **continuātiō, -ōnis,** F.
short, **brevis, -e**
sibilant, **sībilus, -a, -um**
sick, **aeger, -gra, -grum; aegrōtus, -a, -um**
singular, **singulāris, -e**
sister, **soror, -ōris,** F.
sit, **sedeō,** 2, **sēdī, sessum**
sound, **sonus, -ī,** M.
specification, **respectus, -ūs,** M.
speech, **ōrātiō, -ōnis,** F. (*see part of speech*)
stand, **stō,** 1, **stetī, statum**
statement, **assertiō, -ōnis,** F.
stem, **basis, -is,** F.
study (noun), **studium, -iī,** N.
study (verb), **studeō,** 2, **studuī**
subject, **subiectīva** (*adj., sc.* **pars** *or* **rēs**); **subiectīvum,** (*adj., sc.* **verbum**)
subjunctive, **subiūnctīvus, -a, -um; coniūnctīvus, -a, -um**
subjunctive of characteristic, **subiūnctīvus (coniūnctīvus) dēscrīptiōnis**
subordinate, **subiectus, -a, -um**
substantive, **substantīvum, -ī,** N.
substantively, **substantīvē**
suffice, **sufficiō,** 3; *it is sufficient,* **sufficit; satis est**
superlative, **superlātīvus, -a, -um**
supine, **supīnum** (*adj., sc.* **verbum**)
supper, **vesperna, -ae,** F.
syllable, **syllaba, -ae,** F.
syntax, **syntaxis, -is,** F.
table, **mēnsa, -ae,** F.
teacher, **magister, -trī,** M.; **magistra, -ae,** F.; **praeceptor, -ōris,** M.
temporal, **temporālis, -e**
tense, **tempus, -oris,** N.
term, **terminus, -ī,** M.
termination, **terminātiō, -ōnis,** F.
text, **textus, -ūs,** M.
thence, **illinc**
there, **illīc**
thither, **illūc**
to-day, **hodiē**
to-morrow, **crās**
transitive, **trānsitīvus, -a, -um**
translate into Latin, **in Latīnum verte (transfer, redde)**
treat, **trāctō,** 1
tutor, **tūtor, -ōris,** M.
university, **ūniversitās, -ātis,** F.
vacation, holidays, **fēriae, -ārum,** F.
verb, **verbum, -ī,** N.
vocabulary, **vocābulārium, -ī,** N. **index vocābulōrum (verbōrum)**
vocative, **vocātīvus** (*adj., sc.* **cāsus**)
voice, **vōx, -cis,** F.
voice (gram.), **modus, -ī,** M., **vōx, -cis,** F.
voice, active, **faciendī modus; vōx āctīva**
voice, passive, **patiendī modus; vōx passīva**
vowel, **vocālis** (*adj., sc.* **litera**)
walk, **ambulō,** 1
water, **aqua, -ae,** F.
well, be well, in good health, **valeō,** 2, **-uī**
what kind of? (*relative,* of which kind), **quālis, -e**
whence? **unde** (*also relative*)
where? **ubi, quō in locō** (*also relative*)
which? **quis** *or* **quī, quae, quid** *or* **quod** (*also relative*)
whither? **quō** (*also relative*)

why? **cūr, quā rē, quā dē causā** (*also relative*)
window, **fenestra, -ae,** F.
woman, **mulier, mulieris,** F.
word, **verbum, -ī,** N; **vōx, vōcis,** F.
yes, **certē, certissimō, ita, ita est, ista sunt**
yesterday, **herī** (*adv.*), **hēsternō diē**

INDEX

The index is more complete for the Appendix than for the rest of the book, and when information on grammatical points is sought, the references to the Appendix should be consulted first. These references are in bold face type.

A

Ablative, *see* Cases
absum, 78
āc sī, 261
Accent, 14–16, **10–12**
accomplishing, verbs of, **228**, *a*, **229**, *a*
Accusative, *see* Cases
Active, *see* Voice
Adjectives, **comparison** of, 157, 175, **39–45**; regular, **39**; irregular, **40–42**; defective, **43**, **44**; by **magis, māximē, 45**; meanings, 710, **161**
declension of, first and second declension, 110, 115, 222, **31**; with gen. in **-īus**, 210, 211, **32**; of third declension, 150, 151, 158, **33–38**
use of, **156–161**; predicate and attributive, **156**; agreement, 109, **157**; used substantively, 614, **158**; for adverbs, 647, **159**; with partitive meaning, Ch. 22, 1, **160**; with gen., **106**; with dat., **122**; with abl., **134**, *b*, **143**, *a*, **149**, *a*
Adverbs, formation and comparison, 179, 207, **46**; numeral, **47**
Adversative clauses, *see* Clauses
after, **237**
Agent, *see* dat. and abl. *under* Cases
Agreement, adjectives, 109, **157**; relative, 219, **173**; substantives, 159, 160, **95**; verb, 44, **173**, **179**, **180**
aliquis, 62, **175**
Alphabet, 1
although, **239**, **246**, **247**
annōn, 214
Answers, **215**
Antecedent, 219; repeated, 451
antequam, 236
Apposition, appositive, 159, 160 **95**, *b*
Article, 28
as if, **261**
as long as, **234**, *b*
assuēfactus, assuētus, 143, *a*
atque=*as* or *than*, Ch. 28, 17
Attempted action, **191**, *a*
Attraction, **274**
Attributive, adj., **156**, **157**, *a*, **1**; gen., *see* Genitive *under* Cases

B

Base, 58
because, **243–245**
before, **236**
bōs, 27

C

Caesar, p 12
Calends, 478
Cardinal numbers, 47
Cases, **function** of, 54, **92–94**; with prepositions, **153–155**
nominative, 96
genitive, 97–111; attributive, **98–102**; predicative, **103–105**; subjective and objective, **98**; possessive, 588, **99, 103**; descriptive *or* of quality, **100, 104**; of measure, 423, **100, 104**; of the whole *or* partitive, 623, **101**; appositional, **102**; of value, **105**; with adjectives, **106**; with verbs, 665, **107–111**
dative, 112–122; indirect object, 494, **113–116**; ind. obj. with transitive verbs, **114**; ind. obj. with intransitive verbs, **115**; ind. obj. with phrases, **115**, *a;* ind. obj. with compound verbs, 598, 717, **116**; of separation, Ch. **17**, 8, **116**, I, end; of possessor, 622, **117**; of agent, 624, **118**; of purpose, Ch. **18**, 29, **119**; two datives, **119**, of reference, **120**; ethical, **121**; with adjectives, **122**
accusative, 123–131; subject of infinitive, **123**; direct object, **124**; object with compound verbs, **124**, *c;* two accusatives, **125–127**; two objects, **125**; obj. and predicate acc., **126**; two objects with compound verbs, 632, **127**; adverbial, **128**; in exclamations, **129**; of time, 310, **130**; of space, **130**; of place, 415, **131**; with prepositions, **154, 155**
vocative, 132
ablative, 133–152, true abl., **134–139**; instrumental abl., **140–150**; locative abl., **151, 152**; of separation, 551, **134**; of place from which, 424, 496, **134**, *a;* of source, **135**; of material, **136**; of agent, 320, **137**; of cause, 204, **138**; of comparison, Ch. **15**, 15, **139**, of accompaniment, 600, **140**; descriptive *or* of quality, 468, **141**; of manner, 599, **142**; of accordance, 353, **142**, *a;* of means, 205, **143**; of way, **144**, with special verbs, **145**; with **opus est, 146**; of price, Ch. **18**, 9, **147**; of measure *or* degree of difference, 684, **148**, of specification, 404, **149**; with **dignus** and **indignus, 149**, *a;* absolute, 189, **150**; of place in which, **151**; of time, 332, **152**; with prepositions, **153, 154**
locative, 15, *b*, **16**, *b*, **151**, *a*
causā, 99, *a*, **138**, *a*, **291**
Causal clauses, *see* clauses
Cause, *see* abl. *under* Cases and Clauses
cavē, 219
Characterizing *or* characteristic clauses, *see* Clauses
Clauses. defined: coordinate, **90**, *a*, **222**; principal (main), **90**, *b;* subordinate *or* dependent, **90**, *b*, **223–274, 277–280**; purpose, 358, 359, **224, 225**; result, 448, **224, 226**; substantive of desire (purpose), 359, **227, 228**; of result (fact), 449, **227, 229**; characterizing (of characteristic),

453, 230; determining, 231; parenthetical relative, 232; temporal, 233–242; causal, 239, 242, *a*, 243–245; adversative (concessive), 239, 242, *a*, 246, 247; substantive quod, 248; conditions and conclusions, 249–259; of proviso, 260; of comparison, 261; indirect questions, 556, 630, 262–264; indirect discourse, 511, 512, 535, 265–273; implied indirect discourse, Ch. 27, 7, 273; attracted, 274; infinitive, 277–280
coepī, 86
cōgnōvī, 193, I, *a*, 194 *a*, 195, *a*
Commands, 216–220
Comparatives, declension of, 34; abl. with, 139, 148
Comparison, *see* Adjectives, Adverbs, Ablative, Clauses
Complementary infinitive, 277, 275
Concessive clauses, *see* Adversative *under* Clauses
Conclusions, *see* Clauses
Conditional **cum**, 241, *b;* relative, 250
Conditions, *see* Clauses
Conjugation, 43, 82, 63, *and see* Verbs
cōnsuēvī, 193, I, *a*, 194, *a*, 195, *a*
cōnsulō, 114, *b*
Consuls, 190
Contingent futurity, *see* Modes
Coordinate clauses, *see* Clauses
cum, conj., 238–242; adversative (concessive), 716, 239, 247; causal, 486, 239, 245; **inversum**, 241, *c;* temporal, 105, 380, 240–242
cum, enclitic preposition, 86, 299, 153, *b*
cum primum, 237

D

Dative, *see* Cases
Declarative sentences, *see* Statements
Declension, 33, 56, 14, *and see* Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns
Defective verbs, *see* Verbs
Deliberative questions, 210
Demonstratives, *see* Pronouns
Dependent clauses, *see* Clauses
Deponent, *see* Verbs
Descriptive cases, *see* genitive and ablative *under* Cases; tenses, 198; clauses, 230, 242, *a*
Desire, subjunctive of, *see* Modes; substantive clause of, *see* Clauses
Determining clause, 231
diēs, 366, 30, *a*
dignus, 149, *a*
Distributives, 47
dō, 85
domus, 29, *d*, 131, *a*, 134, *a*, 2, 151, *a*
dōnec, 234, *b*, 235, *a*, *b*
dōnō, 114, *a*
doubting, expressions of, Ch. 17, 8, 229, *d*
dubitō, 229, *d*
dum, Ch. 27, 7, 234, *a*, *b*, 235, *a*, *b*, 260
dummodo, 260
duo, 49

E

Emotion, verbs of, 109
Enclitics, 76, 12
enim, 243
eō, verb, 84

eō . . . quō, 148, *a*
etenim, 243
etsi, 246
Exhortations, 217

F

Fact, clauses of, *see* Clauses; subjunctive of, 184, *c*
fearing, expressions of, Ch. 19, 11, 228, *b*
Feminine, *see* Gender
ferō, 18
fīdō, 143, *a*
filling, verbs and adjectives of, 143, *a*
fīō, 83
Foot, Roman, 251
fore, 205, *b*
Foreseen action, 235, 236
forgetting, verbs of, 107
frētus, 143, *a*
Future, *see* Tenses
Future perfect, *see* Tenses

G

Gaul, Hither and Transalpine, 498
Gender, 107, 13, *and see rules under each declension*
Generalizing, relative, 60, *a;* cum clauses, 241, *b*, 242, *b;* relative clauses, 250
Genitive, *see* Cases
Gerund, 408-410, 187, 287, 289-294
Gerundive, 408-410, 187, 285, II, 288-294

H

Helvetians, p. 12
hic, 201, 54, 168, 170, *a*
hindering, verbs of, Ch. 17, 6, 228, *c*
Historical infinitive, 281; present, 190, *a*, 204; tenses, 203
hoping, verbs of, 280, *c*

I

i, consonant and vowel, 7
i-stems, 133-137, 144, 24-26, 36-38
idem, 429, 58
Ides, 536
if, 250; *if only*, 260; *as if*, 261
ille, 56, 170
Imperative, *see* Modes
Imperfect, *see* Tenses
Impersonal, 697, 87
Implied indirect discourse, Ch. 27, 7, 273
in, 106, 154,
Indefinite pronouns, *see* Pronouns
Independent sentences, 206-221
Indicative, *see* Modes
indīgnus, 149, *a*
Indirect discourse, 511, 512, 535, 265-273
Indirect object, *see* Dative
Indirect questions, 556, 630, 262-264
Infinitive, 186, 275-281; subject of, 123; tenses of, 509, 510, 205, 266, *a;* periphrasis for future, Ch. 20, 12, 205, *b;* in indirect discourse, 266, 268, II, 269; complementary, 277, 275; as direct object, 275, 279, 280; as subject, 276, 278; historical, Ch. 16, 2, 281
Inflection, 55
Intensive pronouns, *see* Pronouns
interest, 110
Interrogative particles, 213, 264, *b*
Interrogative pronouns, *see* Pronouns
Interrogative sentences, *see* Questions

ipse, 389, 59, 172
Irregular verbs, 77–85
is, 184, 185, 195, 57, 171
iste, 55, 169

J (I consonant)

i, consonant and vowel, 7
iam diū, iam pridem, 190, *b*, 191, *b*
iubeō, 426, 115, *c*
Judicial action, verbs of, 108
Juppiter, 27

L

lacessō, 143, *a*
Legion, 499
Locative, *see* Cases

M

mālō, 82
Masculine, *see* Gender
memini, 86, 107
Mile, Roman, 251
mīlle, mīlia, 48
Modes, 182–185, *and see* Sentences *and* Clauses
Modes, **imperative**, 185, 216
indicative, 183, 206, 209, 231, 232, 234, 235, *a*, 236, *a*, 237, 241, 244, 246, 253, 254, *a*, 256
subjunctive, of desire, 184, *a*, 210, 216, 221, 224, 228, 260, 263, 267, 268, III; of contingent futurity, 184, *b*, 207, 209, 226, 229, 230, 235, *b*, 236, *b*, 254, 257, 259, 261, 263, 268, III; potential, 184, *b*, 208, 209, 263, 268, III; of fact, 184, *c*, 224, 226, 229, 230, 242, 244, 245, 247, 264, 268, I, 269
modo, 260
Mood, *see* Mode

N

nam, 243
-nam, 61, *a*, 212, *a*
nē, 188, *b*, 225, *b*, 228, *a*, *b*, *c*, 260
nē. . . .quidem, 188, *b*,
-ne, 213, *a*, 264, *b*
necne, 264, *c*
Negatives, 188
neque, 188, *a*
nesciō quis, 178
Neuter, *see* Gender
nēve, 188, *b*
nisi, 250
nītor, 143, *a*
nōli, 219
nōlō, 82
Nominative, *see* Cases
nōn, 188, *a*
nōnne, 213, *b*
Nouns, first declension, 58, 65, 15; second declension, 90, 97, 102, 212, 16; third declension, 124–126, 133–137, 144, 17–28; consonant stems, 18–23; i-stems, 24, 25; mixed stems, 26; irregular, 27; gender of, 28; fourth declension, 245, 246, 29; fifth declension, 256, 30
nōvī, 193, I, *a*, 194, *a*, 195, *a*
num, 213, *c*, 264, *b*
Numerals, 47; declension of, 48, 49; use of, 50

O

Object, direct, 124; indirect, 113–116
ōdī, 86
Optative subjunctive, 184, *a*

opus est, 146
Ordinal numerals, 47
os, 27

P

Pace, Roman, 251
Parenthetical relative clauses, 232
Participles, 396–399, 282–286; present, 38, 284; future, 285; perfect, 316, Ch. 15, 3, 286; tenses of, 205; agreement of, *see* Adjectives
Passive, *see* Voice
Perfect, *see* Tense
Perfect stem, *see* Stem
Periphrastic conjugation, active, 414, 75, 285, I; *and see* Tenses; passive, 525, 76, 118, 285, II, *a*
Person, 81
Personal endings, active, 263; passive, 314
Personal Pronouns, *see* Pronouns
Place, *see* accusative, true ablative, locative ablative, *under* Cases
Pluperfect, *see* Tense
plūs, 34, *a*
Possessive pronouns, *see* Pronouns
possum, 447, 456, 485, 510, 80
postquam, 237
Potential subjunctive, *see* Modes
potior, 345, 111, 145
praesertim, 245
Predicate adjectives, 156, 157, *a*, 2, 275, *a*, 276, *a*; genitives, 103–105; nouns, 159, 160, 95, *a*, 126, 275, *a*, 276, *a*
Prepositions, 71, 72; with abl., 153; with acc. or abl., 154; with acc., 155; verbs compounded with, 116, I, 124, *c*, 127
Present, *see* Tenses
Present stem, *see* Stem
Principal parts, 267, 317, 65
Principal tenses, 203
priusquam, Ch. 19, 11, 236, *a*, *b*, *c*
Prohibitions, 216–220
promising, verbs of, 280, *c*
pronouns, 51–62, 162–178; in indirect discourse, 512, 271
  personal, 51, 162
  reflexive, 299, 388, 52, 163–166
  direct, 164; indirect, 165
  possessive, 390, 53, 167, 172, *a*
  demonstrative, 183, 184, 185, 195, 201, 429, 54–58, 168–171
  intensive (ipse), 388, 389, 59, 172
  relative, 218, 219, 60, 173; generalizing 60, *a*, *and see* relative *under* Clauses
  interrogative, 61, 212, 264, *a*
  indefinite, 534, 62, 174–178
Pronunciation, 1–16, 1–12
propior, 122, *b*
prōsum, 79
Proviso, 260
proximus, 122, *b*
Purpose, *see* Clauses; dative, 291, 293, 295

Q

quam, with comparatives, 139, *a*; omitted, 139, 139, *b*; with superlatives, 276, 497, 161, *a*
quam diū, 234, *b*
quam sī, 261
quamquam, 246
quamvīs, 247
quandō, 244
Quantity, of syllables, 11–13, 8, 9; of vowels, 3, 1–3
quasi, 261
questions, 209–215; answers to. 215; deliberative, 210; double,

214; indirect, *see* Clauses; rhetorical, 211
qui, *see* relative, interrogative, and indefinite *under* Pronouns
quia, 244
quicumque, 60, *a*
quidam, 62, 62, *b*
quilibet, 62
quin, 228, *c*, 229, *d*
quis, *see* interrogative and indedefinite *under* Pronouns
quispiam, 62, 176
quisquam, 62, 177
quisque, 62
quisquis, 60, *a*
quīvis, 62
quō, 225, *a*, 2
quoad, 234, *b*, 235, *a*, *b*
quod, 671, 244, 248, 248, *a*
quōminus, 228, *c*
quoniam, 244

R

Reciprocal expression, 166
rēfert, 110
Reflexive pronouns, *see* Pronouns
Relative clauses, coordinate, 222, *a*, 269, *a*; purpose, 225, *a*, 1; result, 226, 230; characterizing, 230; determining, 231; parenthetical, 232; causal, 245; adversative, 247; conditional, 250
Relative pronouns, *see* Pronouns
remembering, verbs of, 107
Repeated action, 191, *a*
Result, *see* Clauses
Rhetorical questions, 211

S

saying, verbs of, 495, 265
Semi-deponent verbs, Ch. 18, 10, 74
senex, 27
Sentences, 88–91; simple, 89, *and see* Statements, Questions, Commands, Prohibitions, Wishes; compound, 90, 222; complex, 90, *c*, 223–274, 277–280
Separation, *see* dative *and* ablative *under* Cases
Sequence of tenses, 487, 202–204
sī, 250, 264, *b*
similis, 106, *b*, 122
simul āc, 237
sīn, 250
since, 239
Sounds, of consonants, 6, 6; of diphthongs, 5, 5; of vowels, 4, 4
Stage of progress, 189
Statements, 206–208
Stem, perfect, 265, 64, *b*; present, 264, 64, *a*; supine, 316, 64, *c*
sub, 524, 154
Subjunctive, *see* Modes
Subordinate clauses, *see* Clauses
Substantive clauses, *see* clauses of desire (purpose), of result (fac'), quod, indirect questions, infinitive clauses *under* Clauses
Substantives, *see* Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives used substantively; agreement of, *see* Agreement
suī, suus, 52, 53, 163–166, 167, *a*
sum, 173, 228, 305, 446, 484, 510, 66; compounds of, 77–80
Supine, 187; in **-um**, 615, 295; in **-ū**, 149, 296
Supine stem, *see* Stems
Syllables, 7–10

T

tametsī, 246
tamquam (sī), 261

Temporal clauses, *see* Clauses
Tenses, **189–205**; principal and historical, 487, **203**; sequence of, 487, **202–204**
of indicative, 190–199; in narration, 349, **197–198**; present, 171, 262, 264, 296, **190**; imperfect, 226, 262, 264, 349, **191, 197, 198**; future, 262, 264, **192, 199**; perfect, 171, 262, 265, 349, **193, 197, 198**; pluperfect, 262, 265, **194, 197, 198**; future perfect, 262, 265, **195, 199**
of subjunctive, 360, **200–204**; sequence of, **202–204**; in indirect discourse, **270**;
of periphrastic conjugation, indicative, **196**; subjunctive, **201,** *b*
of infinitive 509, **205, 266,** *a*
of participles, **205**
that, conj., **225, 226, 228, 229, 248, 265, 279**
thinking, verbs of, 294, **265**
Time, expressions of, cases, **130, 148, 152**; clauses, **233–242**; tenses, *see* Tenses
trēs, 421, **49**

U

ubi, 402, **237**
ūllus, 177
until, **235**
ūnus, 211, **32**
ut, 225, *a*, 3, **226, 228,** *a*, *b*, **229,** *a–c*, **237, 247**; omitted, **228,** *a*
ut nōn, 226, 229, *a–c*
ut sī, 261
utinam, 221
ūtor, 435, **145**

V

velut (sī), 261
Verbs, **63–87**, *and see* Agreement, Clauses, Gerund, Gerundive, Infinitive, Modes, Participles, Sentences, Supine, Tenses, Voices
conjugation: first, 84, 174, 227, 262–268, 318, 357, 399, 410, 479, 510, **67**; second, 272–274, 330, 371, 399, 410, 480, 510, **68**; third 280–286, 334, 372, 399, 410, 481, 510, **69**; third in -iō, 291, 292, 336, 374, 399, 410, 483, 510, **71**; fourth, 280–287, 335, 373, 399, 410, 482, 510, **70**
defective, 86
deponent, 242, **72, 73**
impersonal, 87
irregular, 77–85
semi-deponent, 74
vīs, 463, **27**
Vocative, *see* Cases
Voices, 313, **181**; passive, 313–317
Volitive subjunctive, **184,** *a*
volō, 82

W

Watches, of the night, 633
when, **237–242**
while, **234,** *a*
Wishes, **221**